V.C.A.A2.

X 56659

22500857132

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2017 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b29003416

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

EDITED

FROM THE BODLEIAN ASHMOLE MS. 1396
(ab. 1380 A.D.)

AND THE BRITISH MUSEUM ADDITIONAL MS. 12,056
(ab. 1420 A.D.)

BY

ROBERT v. FLEISCHHACKER, Dr.Phil.

PART I.—TEXT.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.
1894.

Price Twenty Shillings.

Lanfrank's "Science of Cirurgie."

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.

Surgery, The E. Medieval

W.E. AA2

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

WELLCOME HISTORICAL MEDICAL LIBRARY

CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for* vndir oon of þese iij entencioun*s* *read* vndir þese iij entencioun*s* (note: both MSS. insert *oon of*)

,, 19, ,, 18, *for* vp on *read* vpon

,, 25, ,, 1, *for* white oute *read* white (note: MS. inserts *oute*)

,, 25, ,, 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*

,, 27, ,, 13, cancel *to* þe *maris*

,, 29, ,, 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and & þe *nucha*, and put a comma after þe *nucha* and after þe *lymes*

,, 30, note 3, *for* fila *read* villi

,, 31, line 7, *for* vunnus *read* vulnus

,, 34, ,, 8, put a full stop after *senewe*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*

,, 38, ,, 10, *for* humourer *read* humoures

,, 39, ,, 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*

,, 43, ,, 10, put a comma after *dric*

,, 46, ,, 17, cancel the inverted commas

,, 49, ,, 6, put a comma after *myȝt*

,, 52, ,, 16, *for* eills *read* ellis

,, 55, ,, 18, cancel the inverted commas

,, 77, ,, 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*

,, 77, ,, 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*

,, 83, ,, 1, cancel note 1

,, 89, ,, 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for* compouuned *read* compou*n*ned

,, 108, ,, 19, cancel the comma after *clepid*

,, 110, sidenote line 1, *for* Tassillus *read* Passillus

CONTENTS.

Ashmole MS. 1396.

[1] **The firste tretis of surgerie** halt wiþinne hi*m* general ruelis & [1 leaf 1]
4 canones, & haþ .iij. techingis / Þe firste techinge of þe firste tretis,
haþ þre chapitlis. ¶ **Caþ. j.** of þe first tretis of þe firste techynge page 7
is of definiciones & of p*ar*ties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / **Caþ. ij.** page 8
is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ **Caþ. iij.** is of page 18
8 intencioun of a surgien / **The secunde** techynge of þe first tretis page 20
is on su*m*me & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
knouleche of þe foorme, & þe complexe*i*ou*n*s, & þe helpingis of
alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnis, guttis, bladdre, lyu*er*e,
12 milte, & alle oþere synguler lymes, & of þe engendri*n*ge of þe child
in þe modir wombe / **The first**[2] **techinge of þe first tretis haþ** page 31
.xv. chapitlis /

¶ Caþ. j. of þe þridde techinge of þe .j.[3] tretis [4]is of a comou*n* [4 leaf 1, bk.]
16 word of wou*n*dis, & olde wou*n*dis / p. 31

[2] *first*, mistake for *þridde*, as below. [3] Chafed: not room for *first*.

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

[5]Assit Principio S*ancta* Maria meo [5 fol. 31 *a*]

Þe ffirste tretys of surgerie halt with inne hy*m* gen*er*alH Rulys
20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. Þe ffurste techynge of þe furste
tretys haþ þre Chapyttles. Caþ. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste
tretys of dyffiniciones & of partyes þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.
Caþ ij. is of q*ua*lite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.
24 ¶ Caþ. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. Þe secunde techynge
of þe ffyrste tretys ys O su*m*me & on ChapiteH of a notamye, þ*at* is
to sugge þe knowlechynge of þe forme, & þe co*m*plexion, & þe
helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnys, guttys,
28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle o*per*e senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
rynge of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe
firste tretys hath xv. ChapyteHs. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,
of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of wou*n*des & olde wou*n*des.

Ashmole 1396.

¶ Cap̄. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleiseh / p. 33
¶ Cap̄. iij of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe / p. 39
¶ Cap̄. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon / p. 47
¶ Cap̄. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge / p. 50 4
¶ Cap̄. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to eoold / p. 54
¶ Cap̄. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest / p. 59 8
¶ Cap̄. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynte and to-broken / p. 62
¶ Cap̄. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde / p. 64
¶ Cap̄. x. of dietynge of men þat ben woundid / p. 72
¶ Capitulum xi^m^ of olde woundis / p. 77 12
¶ Capitulum xij^m^ of a festre[1] / p. 89
¶ Cap̄. xiij. of a eanker I-woundid / p. 92
¶ Cap̄. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis / p. 97 16
¶ Cap̄. xv. of erampe þat eomeþ in a wounde / p. 99

The seeunde tretis is of partieuler woundis of alle lymes of office from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20
[2 leaf 2] tofore þe anatomie [2]of veynes & senewis, & oþere smale lymes.

[1] After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap̄. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.
¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.
¶. Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon. 24
¶. Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytinge.
¶. Cap vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote oþere to eolde
¶. Cap̄. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, oþere a venymouse 28 beste.
¶. Cap̄. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.
¶. Cap̄ ix. of to myche fflux of blod of wounde.
¶. Cap̄. x. of dyotynge of men þat beþ y-woundyde. 32
¶. Cap̄. xj. of olde woundes
¶. Cap̄. xij. off a ffestre
¶. Cap. xiij. of a eanere y-woundyd
¶. Cap. xiiij off eauses þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde 36 woundes
¶. Cap. xv. of crampe þat eomyth to wounde

¶. **þe secunde tretis** is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of
[3 fol. 31 b] office from þe hed to þe [3]ffot, & teehynge þe Anotamye of alle lymes 40
from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of[1] þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

4 ¶ Cap̄. j. of[1] þe seeunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106

¶ Cap̄. ij. is of woundis of þe faee, and of[1] anotamie of þe same face / p. 141

8 ¶ Cap̄. iij. is of anotamie of þe neeke, and of woundis of[1] þe same / p. 145

¶ Cap̄. iiij. of[1] woundis of[1] schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155

12 ¶ Cap̄ v.[1] of[1] woundis of[1] þe brest, & lymes þat ben wiþinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161

¶ Cap̄. vj. of[1] woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of[1] þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166

16 ¶ Cap̄ vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of[1] þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167

¶ Cap̄. viij. of[1] woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171

¶ Cap̄. ix. of woundis of þe ȝerde, þat is, in þi pintil, and 20 anotamie / p. 173

[1] v. above line.

---

to forn þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. 24 Chapyttles. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶. Cap̄. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.

¶. Cap̄. ij. is of woundes of þe faee, & anotamye of þe same 28 vysage.

¶. Cap̄. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.

¶ Cap̄. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, & 32 Anotamie of þe same.

¶ Cap̄. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat betn̄ wiþ ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Cap̄. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of 36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.

¶. Cap̄. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat gotn̄ to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.

40 ¶. Cap̄. viij. of woundes of þe lyffere & the splene.

¶. Cap̄ ix. of woundes of þe ȝerde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396. ¶ Cap̄. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet, and anotamie of þe same / p. 176

sign. ij. *The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

Add. MS. 12,056. ¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4

¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of oþere seknesse, þat beþ noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges:

þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles: 8

¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer. p. 178

¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe. p. 180

¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys p. 188 12

[1 fol. 32 a] ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, [1]Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes p. 189

¶ Cap. v of ȝycchynge & scabbe p. 191

¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe p. 193 16

¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechynge of leprys Man p. 196

¶ Cap. viii of fastnynge a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme p. 199

¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xvij Chapittles 20

¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of generaciones of humour & here lyknesse p. 201

¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes p. 204

¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in children hedys. 24 p. 214

¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere. p. 216

¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote. p. 217

¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole. p. 222 28

¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe. p. 223

¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyth on þe sydes. p. 224

¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe stomak. 32 p. 226

¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyth in þe grynde p. 226

¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyth in þe hanche & þe thyes. p. 227

¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes p. 228 36

¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyth in þe fflessch p. 229

¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is noȝt to-broke, & is cure p. 231

¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyth as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys p. 232

¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of loyntes p. 233

¶ The þridde techynge of þe þridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles Add. MS.
¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyȝen, & Anotamye of þe same p. 240 12.056.
¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren p. 254
4 ¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose p. 258
¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth̄ p. 260
¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wo*m*mans tetys . to grete, to fatte,
[1] oþ*er*e to lene. p. 265 [[1] fol. 32 *b*]
8 ¶ Cap. vi of ciphae þ*a*t is to-broke, oþ*er*e that is to lose p. 268
¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok p. 269
¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre p. 273
¶ Cap. ix of hermofrodite, þ*a*t is to seye, þ*a*t hath̄ þe schappe of
12 Man & wo*m*man, & oþere of wo*m*men þat haþ seyne w*ith*y*n*ne here schape / þ*a*t sche ne may noȝt co*n*seywe þe seed of man
¶ Cap. x of wat*er* of me*n* þ*a*t beþ in þe dropsye p. 281
¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe ȝerde
16 canere fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wou*n*de. p. 287
¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse p. 289
¶ [Cap.] xiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þ*a*t buþ olde sores &
20 olde scabbys on þe schyne. p. 293
¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þ*a*t buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þ*a*t buþ to grete out off kynde of flesch̄ p. 295
¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,
24 & wertys, & oþ*er* schyn lyke flessch̄ p. 296
¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þ*a*t buþ in blod letynge p. 298
¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in bre*n*nynge w*ith* yren oþ*er*e w*ith* gold p. 305
28 ¶ Cap. xviij of helpe þ*a*t is w*ith* bre*n*nynge of fyr*e*, hote watyr & oyle p. 312

¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye techynges, oþ*er*e tweye su*m*mes.

32 ¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles
¶ Chap̄ j of broken bonys an vniu*er*sel word [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of bonys þ*a*t buþ broken of þe face p. 313
¶ Cap. iij of bonys þ*a*t buþ broken of þe breste p. 316
36 ¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þ*a*t buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon. p. 317
¶ Cap. v of Armys þ*a*t buþ broken p. 318
¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende w*ith*onte*n* brekynge p. 321
40 ¶ þe [2] Seeu*n*de techynge off þe ffurþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells [[2] fol. 33 *a*]
¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe seeu*n*de techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte [*missing*]
¶ Cap. ij of dislocacio*u*n of þe cheke bon. p. 314
44 ¶ Cap. iij of dislocacio*u*n of þe rugge bon. p. 322
¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacio*u*n of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre p. 323
¶ Cap. v of dislocacio*u*n of þe þyȝe bon & w*ith*ynne p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The ffyþe tretys is Antidotarie, & hath *with*ynne hy*m* vij chapitells

¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch p. 328 4

¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoynge & makynge nessche p. 333

¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers p. 336

¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres p. 339 8

¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & *con*solidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & *con*souderes, & þe difference of he*m* p. 342

¶ Cap. vj of he*m* þat make*n* nessche hardnesse p. 353

¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge bre*nn*ynge, & opnynge þe extremites p. 349 12

Ashmole MS. 1396.

SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

[1] Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [1 lf. 2, bk.]
my purpos pursuynge ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermynge my
wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ exp*er*iment þat
4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //

Al þing þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iij. maners þat we Capm. jm
moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi
his verri beynge schewynge p*ro*pirte of hi*m*-silf / In þis
8 þre maner we mou*n* knowe surgerie bi expownynge of his name;
for siurge comeþ of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englisch siros Surgery is from Greek *cheir* a hand, and *ergon* work.
is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englisch / For þe ende
& þe p*ro*fite of syurgie is* [of hand-wyrchynge. Of þe Name of
12 a thynge Galyen seyth: he þ*a*t wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing,
bisie hi*m* nou3t to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worchinge & þe
effete of þe same þi*n*g / Therfore he þat wole knowe wh*a*t siurgie is,
he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us It is a medicinal science:
16 to worche wiþ handis i*n* ma*n*nes bodi, wiþ kuttynge or openynge þe

---

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

NOW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynde, y wyl fulfylle
20 my purpos, p*ur*suynge ev*er*y chapyteH by ordere, & *con*fermynge my wordys aft*er* þe Autorite of my*n* Autores, & wiþ exp*er*yment þ*a*t y haue longe tyme y-vsyde w*it*h help of god.

AL thynge þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre man*er*es we mowe
24 knowe, oþ*er*e by hys name ore by hys worchynge, oþ*er*e by hys v*er*rey beynge schewynge p*ro*pirte of hym selff. In þis þre man*ere* we mowe knowe surg*er*ie by expownynge of hys name; ffor syrugie cometh of syros, þ*a*t ys a word of grew3, & in englysschе syros ys
28 an hand, & gyros grew3, þ*a*t ys worchynge an Englysschе; for þe ende & þe p*ro*phyte of surgerye ys* of hand wyrchynge. Of þe Name of a thynge Galyen seyth: he þ*a*t wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a thynge, besye hy*m* no3t to knowe þe name [2]of a thynge, bute þe [2 fol. 33 b]
32 worchynge & þe Effecte of þe same thynge; where fore he þ*a*t wyl knowe surg*er*ie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þ*a*t yt is a medycineal sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche w*it*h handes in Ma*n*nes body, in

cutting, healing, and removing excrescences.

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were toforn, [1]or ellis as nyȝ as a man may, & also in doynge awey þat is to myche skyn: as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hiȝe //

[1 leaf 3]

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe qualitees, maners, and kunnynge of a surgian // 4

¶ Capm ijm

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

NEdeful it is þat a surgian be of a complexcioun weel proporcioun d, and þat his complexcioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouȝt semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners *[& Auicenne: euyle maners] but folowen þe lijknes of an yuele complexioun/ 8
A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakynge, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing þat longiþ to siurgie may not wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie 12

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

in alle þe parties of philofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche; in[2] arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients,

sign. iij. [4 lf. 3, bk.]

negard; be he trewe, vnbeliche,[3] & plesynglicke bere he him-silf to hise pacientis; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannis [4]hous /

[2] Lat.: quod docet dialectica

[3] *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS. 12,056.

kuttynge ore opnynge þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken opere kutte, as þey were to fore, opere ellys as nyȝ as 20
a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn: as wertys, opere wennys, oper flesch to hyȝh.

¶ The secunde Chapitell of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe qualites, maners and cunnynge of a surgien. 24

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouȝt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners; *& **Auicenne**: euyle maners* beþ folwynge þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28
A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale ffyngres, and hys body nought quakynge, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynges of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þynge þat longyth to surgerye may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32
moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureH ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures; in gramere, þat he speke congrulyche; in art, þat techyth hym to preven ys proposiciones with gode resoun; in retoryk, þat techith hym to speke semlyche; be he 36
non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde; be he trewe, vmbelyche [5]& plesynglyche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis; speke he non Rybaudye in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 31. a]

ȝeue he no counseil, but if he be axid; ne speke he wiþ no wo*m*man in folie in þe sik mannes hous; ne chide not wiþ þe sike ma*n* ne wiþ noon of hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in almaner sijknes bihote hi*m* hele, þouȝ þou be of hi*m* dispeirid; but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue he noon harde curis, & enterniete he nouȝt of þo þat ben in dispeir. Pore men helpe he bi his myȝt, and of þe riehe men axe he good reward / Preise he nouȝt him-silf wiþ his owne mouþ, ne blame he nouȝt scharpliehe o*pe*re lechis; loue he alle leehis & elerkis, & bi his myȝt[1] make he no leche his enemye. So eloþe he hi*m* wiþ ve*r*tues, þat of hi*m* mai arise good fame & name; & þis techiþ etik. So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende & þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle þe parties and eeh sengle partie of a medieyn. For if a surgian ne knewe nouȝt þe scienee of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost foree of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not [2]knowe seienee of eoniou*neions*, þat is to seie, medlyngis & complexiou*ns* þat ben nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat ben medlid vndir þe screle of þe moone, ben engendrid of foure

and must in desperate cases even promise recovery, but tell the truth to the patient's friends.

He should make the rich pay for the poor.

He shall not praise himself or blame other physicians.

He must know Physics, Medicine,

[2 leaf 3*]

and the science of mixtures.

[1] *myȝt* in margin.

Ma*n*nes house gif no*n* cou*n*seyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he *with* non wo*m*man in no[3] folye in þe seke Ma*n*nes howse, ne ehyde nought *with* þe seke Man ne *with* none of hys meyne; but curteslye speke to þe syke ma*n*, & in alle mane*re* syknesse behote hy*m* hele, þowȝ þou be of hy*m* dyspeyred; but neue*re* þe lattere seye to hys frendys, þe eas as yt stant. Loue he no*n* harde curys, & entyremete he nought of þo þ*at* beþ in dyspeyre. Pore me*n* helpe he be hys myght, & of ryehe me*n* aske he gode reward. Preyse he nonght hy*m*selff *with* hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought seharplye o*pe*re lechys; loue he alle leehys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he no*n* leehe hys enmye. So cloþe he hy*m* *with* vertues, þ*at* of hy*m* mowe a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik, þ*at* he mowe *with* gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þ*at* techith ffysik. Naþeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe p*ar*tyes in eche sengle p*ar*tye of a medycine, ffor ȝif a surgien knowe noȝt þe seiens of Elementis, whiche þ*at* buþ furst Meverys of naturel þynges & of dyu*er*se lymes, he may noȝt knowe sciense of *con*-iunetiou*n*es, þ*at* ys to seye, medlynges & *com*plexiou*ns* þ*at* beþ neeessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þ*at* alle bodyes þ*at* be*n* medlyde, þ*at* ben vndire þe cerele of þe Mone, be*n* engen-

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3] *no* above the line.

There are four elements: fire, water, earth, and air.

By mixture of their qualities new forms arise capable of being endowed with life.

symple bodies, her lijknes eeh in o*þe*re medlynge; þat is to seie: fier & watir, erþe & eir: þese[1] elementis for þe vttirmeste eende, & þe vtterneste contrariouste of here qualitees were fer drawen from bodilich lijf; but whanne her qualitees, þat is to seie, maner of 4 beynge, comen into medlynge, so þat þe leeste partie of þat oon entre into þe leeste partie of þat o*þe*r *par*tie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexeiou*n* of þe medlynge of her substau*n*ce / Also þe medlynge of 8 qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawen from þe contrariouste of þe same elementis, & so complexiou*n* is ny3 brou3t to a mele; & so þat þat is medlid is more able to reseeiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is fou*n*den i*n* ma*n*nes 12 spirit. But for þat þe qualitees þat wiþ þo bodies of elementis [2]comen into medlynge, & it is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat be*n* foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiou*n*s be*n* bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat be*n* 16 medlid foure complexiou*n*s / Complexiou*n* is no þing ellis but a maner qualite medlid i*n* worchinge & suffrynge of contrarious qualitees þat ben founden in elementis, so þat þe leeste partie of ech element entre into þe leeste p*ar*tie of þe o*þe*re. & for þat ilke 20

The noblest of all these is the human spirit.

sign. iiij. [2 lf. 3*, bk.]

There are 4 qualities and complexions,

[1] *ben* above line.

Add. MS. 12 056.

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in o*þe*re medly*n*g; þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. Þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast *contrar*yousite of here qualites, were*n* fer drawen fro*m* bodily lyffe; but wha*n*ne here [3]qualytes, þat is to 24

[3 fol. 34 *b*]

sugge mane*re* of beyinge, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste partye of þat on entre in to þe leste partye of þat o*þe*re partye, medlynge brekyth here *con*trariosite, & þe*re* of co*m*me a newe forme & a newe *com*plexiou*n* of þe medlynge of here *su*bstau*n*ce. Al so 28 þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn fro*m* þe *con*traryousite of þe same elementes, & so *com*plexiou*n* is ny3h brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyue*n* þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboffe alle bodyes y-medlyde 32 ys y-fou*n*den in Ma*n*nys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat *with* þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites fro*m* bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & *com*plexiou*n*s ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in 36 bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure *com*plexiou*n*s; Complexiou*n* ys noþynge ellys but a mane*re* qualite medlyde in worchynge, & suffrynge of *contrar*iose qualites þat buþ fou*n*den in Elementis, so þat þe leste p*ar*tye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe 40 o*þe*re partye. And for þat þilke foure co*m*plexiou*n*s: hot, colde,

.iiij. complexiou*n*s, hoot, moist, eoold & drie, sumtyme ben y-com-
poned, þat is to seie, medlid, þer eome*n* i*n* hem .viij. as: hoot & drie, hoot & moist, & eoold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of
4 þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viij. su*m*tyme ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj.; & for þilke xvj. aftir sum consideraeiou*n* mou*n* be naturel to su*m*man, & su*m*man v*n*naturel / þer mou*n* be .xxxij. Neu*er*eþelatter among alle þe eom-
8 plexiou*n*s þ*a*t ma*n* mai fy*n*de, þat is eomponed of dyu*er*s qualitees, þ*er*e ne is noon so temp*er*at, as is ma*n*nes complexiou*n*; & hauynge reward to ma*n*nes complexioun, alle o þ*er*e þingis *[ys] I-elepid, hoot, coold, moist, [1] eiþ*er* drie. / Wha*n*ne [2] þ*a*t a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid
12 kyndely heete þat is i*n* man, þ*a*t heetiþ hi*m* nouȝt, ne drieþ hi*m* nouȝt, ne moistiþ hym nouȝt, so þ*a*t ma*n*nes complexiou*n* may not conseyue whe þ*er* it eoldiþ hi*m*, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ hi*m*: it is elepid temp*er*at / & þilke þi*n*g þ*a*t we seie is hoot in þe firste
16 degree, þat is I-heet of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ oure bodies wiþouten greua*un*cis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe secu*n*de degree, which þat is het of our*e* kyndely heete, so heetiþ oure bodi þat he ne myȝte heete us no more wiþoute greua*un*ce /

hot, moist, cold, and dry. By mixing them we get 8; and as these may be either with or without matter, 16; and as they are either natural or unnatural in some men, 32. Compared with men's complexion, [1 leaf 4] other things are hot, cold, moist, or dry. A medicine which does not affect a man's complexion is called temperate. A hot meat or medicine may be hot, in 1 gradu, in 2 gradu,

[2] A mistranslation from the Latin: Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse temperatam, quæ cum *passa fuerit* a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non calefit, etc.

---

20 moiste & drye, su*m*tyme ben y-eomponyd, þ*a*t ys to sugge medlyde, þ*er*e come*n* of he*m* VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & drye, eolde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben componyd. And for þilke VIII su*m*tyme ben w*ith* mater, su*m*tyme
24 w*i*thoute mater, þ*er*e ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, aft*er* su*m* *con*sideraeiou*n* mowe ben nat*ur*eH to su*m* Man, [3]& to su*m* man vn natureH, þ*er*e mowe ben XXXII. Nev*er*e þe latter*e* amonge alle þe *com*plexiou*n*s þ*a*t man may fynde*n*, þ*a*t is *com*ponyd of dyu*er*se
28 qualites, þ*er*e nys no*n* so temp*er*at as ys ma*n*nes *com*plexiou*n*; havynge rewarde to ma*n*nes *com*plexiou*n*, alle o þ*er*e þynge ys* clepyde colde, hote, moyst*e*, o þ*er*e drye. Wha*n*ne þat a mete, o þ*er*e a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þ*a*t ys in Man, & hetyth
32 hy*m* noȝt & colyth hy*m* nauȝt, ne dryeþ hy*m* noȝt, ne moysted hy*m* noȝt, so þ*a*t ma*n*nes co*m*plexiou*n* may noȝt co*n*seyve*n* whe þ*er* yt colde hy*m*, ore hete, dryȝe, o þ*er*e moyste, yt is clepyde te*m*p*er*at; & þilke thynge we sigge is **hot in þe firste degre**, þ*a*t ys y-hatte of
36 kendlye hete, þ*a*t ys in our*e* bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes w*ith*out*en* grevau*n*ce, & þilke we sigge*n* be **hote in þe secunde degre**, whiche þ*a*t ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þ*a*t he ne myȝte hete vs namore w*ith*out*en* greua*un*ce; **hot in þe þridde degre**:

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 35 *a*]

in 3 gradu, in 4 gradu. .Nota. [4 lf. 4, bk.] People of different complexions must be treated differently. 1. For a patient of a hot and moist complexion, use blood-letting, cupping and purging.

þilke we seie to be hoot *in* þe þridde degree, which þat is het of [1]kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuau*n*ce. & þilke is *in* þe fourþe degree, þat is hot of [2]v*n*kyndely heete, distroieþ þe bodi openliche / & in þis same maner ȝe mou*n* knowe degrees þat ben colde / I mai p*r*eue in þis maner, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe complexiou*n*s of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij. me*n* þat ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-wou*n*did wiþ a swerd or a knyf[3] þwert ou*er* þe arm *in* oon hour & in oon place; oon of þe men is of an [4]hoot complexiou*n* & a moist, þat o*þer* of a cold complexiou*n* & a drie. þe comou*n* seiynge of lewid men is þat þei schulden boþe be*n* helid on o maner; but resonable surgerie I-p*r*eued techiþ us, þat þei ne schulde n*o*t boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For he þat haþ an hoot complexiou*n*, & a moist, may liȝtly haue an hoot enpostym—þat is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an hoot feuere. What schalt þou þa*n*ne do? þou must loke, whe*þer* he haþ bled myche blood at his wou*n*de, and þa*n*ne it is weel; ellis lete hi*m* blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis*—of þe oon same side, if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose[5] hi*m* on þe two buttokkis, if þat he be feble. & if he may not schite[6] oones a day, helpe hi*m*

[1] *vn* above line. [2] *rn* in different hand. [3] *ouer* above line.
[5] Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.
[6] Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege.* See below.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of kendlye hete, bryngeþ to our*e* bodye sencyble greuau*n*ce; **hot in þe fourþ degre**: and þilke in þe fourþ gr*e* þat is y-hat of kendly hete, dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same man*er*e ȝe may knowe degrees þat ben colde, & y may p*r*eve in þis man*er*e þat yt is necessarye a surgyne to knowe *com*plexiou*n*s of bodyes, lymes, & of medycynes. ¶ Take two me*n* þat ben off one age, & lete he*m* ben y-wo*u*ndyde w*ith* a swerd o*þer*e a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in one oure & in [7]one place. One of þo me*n* ys of an hote co*m*plexiou*n* & a moyste, þe o*þer*e of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggynge of lewyde me*n* ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o man*er*e. But resonable surgye wel y-p*r*oved, techith ys þat þey ne schulle noȝt boþe ben y-helyde after*e* on man*er*e; for he þat haþ an hot *com*plexiou*n* & a moyst, may lyȝtliche haue an hote enposteme, þat ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an[8] hote ffevyre. What schalton þa*n*ne do? þ*o*u moste loke whe*þer* he haue y-bled myche blod at hys wou*n*de, & þe*n*ne it ys wel, ellys lete hy*m* blod of þe *con*traryose arme, o*þer*e ellys* on þe fot on þe same syde; ȝif strengþe & age acorde, o*þer*e ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he be feble, ȝif he may noȝt go to sege onys a day, helpe hy*m* þereto

[7] fol. 35 *b*]

[8] *an* above the line.

þerto, or *with* clisterie, or wiþ suppositorie. & brynge þou þe *par*ties of þe wou*n*de togidere þoru3 sowynge, or wiþ plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewis—or wiþ byndynge, if' þat' sewynge be nou3t nesses-
4 sarie, & þa*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de, as it is told aftir i*n* þe book. But aboute þe wou*n*de leie a medicyn defensif', of bole ar-
monyac[1], oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat [2]þe medicyn touche
þe brynkis of þe wou*n*de, þat' humouris moun not' haue her cours
8 to renne to þe wounde; & we forbede*n* hi*m* wiyn, mylk & eiren &
fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete
growel maad of' otemele, eiþir of barli mele wiþ almau*n*dis; &
gene*r*aliche he schal vse a streit' dietynge, til þat he be sikir þat he
12 schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we ku*n*ne fende hi*m* fro
a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexiou*n* techiþ us, þat he
may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe o*þe*re of' þe cold complexiou*n*
schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept' i*n*
16 hi*m*, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe
stomak þat' is so feble ne my3te nou3t engendre nessessarie mater of
blood þat longiþ to þe wou*n*de / Ne we drede nou3t i*n* hi*m* þe feuere,
for his complexiou*n* is nou3t able to resceyue þe feu*e*re / We mou*n*

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an vngu*entum* defens*ivum*.

[2 leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet. dieta.

2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.

[1] *Bole Armoniack.* See N. E. Dict.

---

20 o*þe*re wit clysterye, o*þe*re *with* suppositorye; & brynge þou þe
p*ar*tyes of þe wou*n*de to-gedire, o*þe*re *with* sowynge, o*þe*re wiþ plu-
maciolus—þat beþ smale pelewys—o*þe*re *with* byndynge, 3if þat
sowy*n*ge be no3t necessarie. And þe*n*ne worche aboute þe wou*n*de,
24 as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboue þe wou*n*de leye a
Medycine defensiue, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litel
vynegre, so þat þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe wou*n*des, þat
humours mowe no3t haue*n* here cours to re*n*ne to þe wou*n*de. And
28 we forbyde hy*m* wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fyschē, þat engendrithē
myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete gruell y-made of ote
Mele, o*þe*re barly mele *with* Almau*n*des, & gene*r*aliche he schal vse*n* a
streyt [3]doynge, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue no*n* enposteme.
32 And 3if þat we cu*n*ne dyffende*n* hy*m* fro*m* a ffevyre & apo*s*teme, þe
science of hys *com*plexiou*n* techythē vs þat he may of hys seknesse
sone be hol. ¶ þe o*þe*re of þe colde *com*plexiou*n* ne schal no3t be
leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in he*m* as for
36 tresoure; forbyde hy*m* neiþ*e*re wyn ne flesch; for þe stomak þat ys
so feble, ne my3te nou3t engendre necessarie mater of blod þat
longythē to þe wou*n*de; ne we dredythē no3t in hy*m* þe ffevyre, for
his *com*plexiou*n* ys no3t able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 36 *a*]

vitriol has a different effect on different complexions.

[2 lf. 5, bk.]

fynde a medicyn maad *in* oon maner þat worchiþ dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyu*ers* co*m*plexiou*ns* / Greue vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexiou*n* engendrith fleisch[1]; & if þou leie [2]hi*m* on moist complecciou*n*, he greueþ nouȝt oonliche, but corrodith it; and neþeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouȝ þ*at* he worche dyuersliche *in* dyuers complexiou*ns* / Riȝt as þe worchinge of þe su*nne* is dyuers, nouȝt for þe su*nne*, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchiþ / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche myche: *in* drie bodies he defendiþ[3] þe smale lymes myȝt[4] to aȝenstonde his miȝt, wh*er*fore he may nouȝt but drie þe sup*er*fluytees þ*at* he fyndiþ *in* þe wou*n*de; & wha*n*ne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. *In* moiste bodies, for þ*at* þe smale lymes ben feble & mou*n* no*t* wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þ*at* is seid of dyuers complexiou*ns*, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galieu*n* seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & þe oþ*er* a moist lyme, þ*at* þ*at* is þe drie lyme nediþ þe moister medicy*n* / And if þ*at* .ij. lymes leeue[5] ben I-wou*n*did þ*at* ben lich

Galien

Limbs of different complexions must be treated differently.

[1] *fleisch* in margin. [3] *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.
[4] *myȝt* for *myȝty*; see below. [5] *leeue* for *leche?*

Add. MS. 12,056.

fynde*n* a Medycine made in o manere þ*at* wirchith dyu*er*se effect*is*, & he be y-leyde to dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*ns*. Greue vytreole, & he be done to a Man of dryȝe *com*plexiou*n*, engendrith flessch; & ȝif þou legge*n* hy*m* on a moyste *com*plexiou*n*, he greuyth noȝt oulyche, but coroduþ yt. And naþeles vitreole haþ but one mane*r*e wyrchinge, þouȝ he wirche dyu*er*slyche in dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*ns*, ryȝte as þe wirchynge of þe so*nne* ys dyu*er*se—noȝt for þe so*nne*, but for þe wyrchynge of dyn*er*se bodyes in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wond*er*lyche muche, & in dryȝe bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stonde*n* hys strengþe. Wherefore he may nought but drye þe sup*er*fluites þ*at* he fynte in þe[6] wou*n*de: & whe*n*ne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flesch. In moyste bodyes, ffor þ*at* þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe noȝt wi*th*stande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flesch meltyth vndire yt, & so be þe vitreole þe flesch rotyth; & þ*at* þat ys seyde of dyu*er*se *com*plexiou*ns*, ys y-seyde of dyv*er*se lymes. **Galyen**: ȝif þ*at* tweye wou*n*des [7]ben evyne i quyt*er*, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe oþ*er*e in a moyste lyme, þ*at* þat is in þe dryore lyme nediþ þe dryore medycine. And ȝif þ*at* two lymes ben y-wou*n*ded þat ben lyche in

[7 fol. 36 *b*]

[6] *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in* þe and re-written.

in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nediþ to han þe drier medicyn /

[1 lf. 6]

Iohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / Galienus: a kyndly þing schal be kept wiþ a þing þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is azen kynde schal be doon awei with þing þat is contrarie þerto / If þat a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal nouȝt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askiþ. A surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dynersitees & þe profitis & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche moun bere a strong medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failiþ in ony lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis schal nouȝt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but naturelis, & þei [2] ben but techinge of medicyns speculatijf /

Galienus

nota

A Surgeon must know the generation of the Humours, and the different offices of the Limbs.

[2 lf. 6, bk.]

He must also know the things which are not

Also he muste haue knoulechinge of þingis þat ben not naturels, þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ

---

complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe oþere lyte, he þat haþ myche quyter nedyth to haven þe dryere medycine. Iohannes damacenus: Medycines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. Galienus: a kendlye thynge schal be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to; and þat þat is azeyne kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. ȝif þat a surgien knowith noȝt complexiouns of lymes & of bodyes, he schal noȝt kunne to chaungen hys medycines aftere þat kynde askeþ. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours. ȝif he wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben declared in þe tretys of apostemes; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite, & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what lymes han grete wyrchynge in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medycine; & þe vertues of lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchynge of enye vertue fayleþ in enye lyme. þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same lyme faylinge. And ȝif he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe sciense of spiritus ne schuth noȝt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese þynges before seyde beþ naturelis, & þey beþ techynge of medycine speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ noȝt naturelis, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

Add. MS. 12,056.

natural, as the effect of the air on a wound.

a boch[1] / Wou*n*dis mou*n* not be[2] dried in a moist eir & a vapouris, but þei þat ben wou*n*did musten ben chau*n*gid fro þ*a*t moist eir to a swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wy*n*tir he muste kepe hi*m* fro cold;

nota

for no þing[3] greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold[3] þat ben I-wou*n*did / & i*n* somer he muste haue temp*er*able eir. It is nessessarie þ*a*t he ku*n*ne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle i*n* þe same chapitle of dieti*n*ge / also he muste ordeyne meuynge & reste,[4] as it nediþ to þe same sijk ma*n* / for if þ*a*t he be wou*n*did i*n* þe heed eiþ*er* haue ony p*u*ncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he reste & dwelle i*n* stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre ony traueile of his lymes / But if þ*a*t olde wou*n*dis wiþout akynge were*n* in his armes, it were good to hi*m*, þat is sijk, to walke on his feet, & lete his arme be bou*n*de to his necke; & if þ*a*t þe wou*n*de be in hise schynes & i*n* hise feet, it were good þat he lay & traueilide wiþ hise hondis / Also a [5]surgian, in al þ*a*t he myȝte, he muste temp*er*e a sijk ma*n*nes slepi*n*ge; for to myche slepinge engen*d*eriþ superfluyte & feb liþ his v*er*tewes, & coldiþ & lesiþ al his bodi / To myche waki*n*ge dissolueþ & confoormeþ[6] hise spiritis &

He must know how to prescribe moving or rest.

[5 lf. 7]

Nota

He must regulate the patient's sleep,

[1] *boch*, Latin apostema; M. E. botch. See N. E. Dict.
[2] *heelid* cancelled.
[3] *as cold* misplaced; see below. [4] *to* cancelled after *reste*.
[6] *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig.: dissolvunt et consumunt.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 37 *a*]

o*þer*e ellys haþ a bocche. Wou*n*des mowe noȝt ben y-dryȝed in a [7]moyste eyr*e* & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-wou*n*dyde most bene y-chau*n*gyde fro*m* þ*a*t moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryȝe. In wyntere he moste kepe hy*m* fro*m* colde, ffor noþinge grevyth so myche bonys & synwes þ*a*t buþ y-wou*n*dyde as colde. And in somer*e* he moste han a temp*er*able eyr*e*; hit ys necessarye þ*a*t he ku*n*ne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tell*e*n in þe same ChapyteH of dyotynge. Also he moste ordeyne moffynge & reste, as yt nedeþ to þe same syke man; ffor ȝif þ*a*t he be wou*n*dyde in þe hed, o*þer*e haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he suffre*n* enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but ȝif þ*a*t olde wou*n*des, wiþoute*n* akynge, were*n* in hys Armes, hit were gode to hy*m* þat ys seke to walke*n* on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bou*n*de*n* to hys nekke; & ȝif þ*a*t þe wou*n*de be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit were gode þ*a*t he leyȝe & trauellyde w*ith* hys handes. Also a surgien, in alle þ*a*t he myghte, he moste ate*m*pre a syke Ma*n*nes slepynge, ffor to myche slepynge engendreþ sup*er*ffluyte, & feblyth his v*er*tues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakynge dyssolfiþ & *con*sumeþ hys spirites, & makyth scharpe hys humores,

makiþ scharpe hise humouris; it bryngiþ vnkindly drowþe to woundis, & is cause of akynge / Also he muste kunne evacuener him þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat is waastid, þat he brynge sike men to good temperaunce; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he þe herte of him þat is sijk, for to greet wraþþe. makiþ þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of swellynge; to greet drede, ouþir vttereste[1] of heelþe of his wounde, holdiþ þe spiritis wiþinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,[2] which techiþ a man speculatijf of leche craft.

free the patient from evil humours

and take care that the heart is temperate.

He muste knowe þe sijknes: as olde wounde, festre, cankre & alle opere soris, þat he traueile not in veyn & brynge þe sike man to his deeþ / For ech dyuers soor nediþ dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is [3]maad wiþ a sword eiþer a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he þat is maad wiþ stoon eiþer fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wiþ an hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood hound; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe book herafter / & he muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued awey / accidentis is

He must know the different kinds of wounds,

Nota

[3 lf. 7, bk.]

and the accidentes which befall a wound.

[1] *uttereste*, only known as an adj.: extremus, erroneously for *untryste*. See below.

[2] Lat. quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ.

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowþe to woundes, & ys cause of akynge; also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, & fulfylle hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode temperaunce; ellys a wounde may noȝt ben helyd; entempre he þe hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makyþ þe spirites renne to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge; [4]to grete drede, opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdiþ spyrites withynne hys body, þat mater may nouȝt come to hele þe wounde. þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnaturell, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveylle noȝt in deveyne, & bryngе þe seke man to hys deþ: ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse helpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde; ffor a wounde þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in þe boke hereaftere. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal nevere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben remevyde awey. Accidentis ys a þynge þat falliþ to þe wounde out

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 37 b]

a þing[1] þat falliþ to a wounde out[1] of[1] kynde as hoot, eold, drie, eiþer to myche moistnes, crampe & oþere þinges azens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietynge in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of[1] dietynge; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste zeue dyuers drinkis / 4 Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat[1] han olde rotid woundis & stynkynge / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel se þat[1] it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oþer dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

He must know how to prescribe appropriate diet.

Galien.

¶ þe .iij c°. of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian / 12

[1 lf. s] ¶[Capm 3m ¶ .1. .2. .3.

1 A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on* [of] þre maners / þe first is vndoynge of[1] þat[1], þat is hool / þe seconde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iij. is remeuynge of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of[1] þese .iij. entencioun*s*, or ellis vnder oon of[1] hem. A surgian vndoiþ þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiþer garsiþ,[2] eiþer brenneþ, eiþer settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a

A surgeon 1. either undoes what is whole,

[2] garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

Add. MS. 12,056.

of kynde, as hete, eolde, drowþe oþere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 oþere þynges azeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetynge in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetynge. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote zyve dyverse drynkes. **Galien**: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is somnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a medycine, he may wel se [3]that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28 ffysyk and oþere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

[3 fol. 38 *a*]

¶ The þridde Chapitele of þe furste techynge is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 *of þre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoynge þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpynge of þat þat is tobroke: þe þridde ys remevynge of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis þre entensiou*ns*, oþere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndoþ þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyth blod ore garsyth oþere brenneþ, oþere setteþ on waterlechys,

surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galion & Rasis diden it with her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknes of þe yȝen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisynge / Þe seconde entencioun is to hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festris, cankris & in bringyng to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / Þe .iij. intencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as [1]serofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe bodie / cataractis[2]—is a watir þat comeþ bitwene þe white of þe iȝen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whiȝt of þe iȝen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he kenere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe iȝe & oper siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge awey polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wiþinne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wiþoute, emerawdis[3] & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

Nota. G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j [1 lf. 8, bk.]

as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

[2] cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.
[3] The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

---

ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride have y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wiþ here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndoþ þat þat is hol, wheme þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, & makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyȝen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysynge. Þe seconde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is tobroke as: woundes, olde woundes, ffestres, Caneres, and in bringynge to here place Ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroken. Þe þridde entencioun is to remevyn þat þat ys to myche as scurffyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere partyes of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth bytwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, [4]þat ys a thynge þat bygynneþ by þe nese & goth overe þe eyȝe, tyl he keffere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & opere seknesse of þe eyȝe, & in doynge awey polippes þat is fleseh þat growiþ with ynne þe nese, wertys & wennys, fficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed withouten, emerauds & a schyn

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 38 b]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of generacioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /[1]

de anotho-[m]ia.

A Surgeon must know Anatomy.

GAlienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamie; ne leeue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle into errour / þerfore I penke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the [2]foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seiþ / knoulechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membriorum consimilium*, þat is to seie, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe generacioun of embrioun: þat is to seie, how a child is I-gete in þe modir wombe / Galion & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem worche in oþir & suffre in oþir, embrioun is bigete / But the worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

Auicen. [2 lf. 9]

†The Embryo .G? is engendered of the seed of man and woman.†

[1] See *Vicary.* ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat enclosyth a wommans prive membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, and manye superfluytes þat beth nought semlye to mannys body.

¶ The ffurste ChapiteH of þe secunde tretys ys an universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder wombe.

GAlien seith þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte fallen in erroure. þerefore i þynke to ordeyne a ChapiteH of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene seith, knowlechynge of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þerefore we mote knowe þe cause membrorum consimilium: þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & womman—wirchynge & sofferynge togedires, so þat iche of hem wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrion ys bygete. But þe worchynge of Mannes kynde is more myȝtyere, & wommans [3]kynde

[3 fol. 39 a]

more febler / For riȝt as þe rou*n*deles[1] of[1] chese haþ bi hi*m*-silf wei of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generaciou*n* of embrio*n* ma*n*nes sp*er*me haþ hi*m*[2] bi wei of[1] worchi*n*ge & wo*m*mans
4 sp*er*me bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt[1] as þe ru*n*delis[1] & þe mylk maken a chese, so boþe þe sp*er*mes of man & wo*m*ma*n* maken generaciou*n* of embriou*n*. Þouȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child ben I-geten of[1] boþe two sp*er*mes, neþeles, to cloþe he*m* w*ith* fleisch
8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to he*m* menst*r*ue [3]blood / þe maris[4] of[1] wo*m*man haþ an able complexciou*n* to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ þe spermes to þe deppest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir mouþ, þ*a*t þ*er* myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þa*n*ne þe
12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ & diuidid eu*er*y p*a*rtie of[1] þese sp*er*mes in her kynde, til þ*a*t þe child be born / Vndirstonde þ*a*t þe fleisch & þe fatnes is m*a*d of menstrue blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,
16 veynes, pa*n*niclis—þ*a*t be*n* smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid of boþe þe sp*er*mes, as auicen & oþ*er*e auctouris tellen / If þ*a*t ony of þe lymes þ*a*t ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon awey *[he] mou*n* neu*er*e v*er*iliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sp*er*me of þe

†And as rennet curdles milk and the two make cheese, so does the seed of man and woman make the Embryo.†

sign. ²ij [3 lf. 9, bk.]

The flesh and the fat are formed from the menstrual blood.

The Matrix closes itself after having conceived.

The whole body is developed in the Matrix (except the flesh and fat) from the seed of the man and woman.

Auic*en*

[1] *roundeles, rundelis.* Add. MS. *rendelys,* coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, *renlys, or rendlys.* Comp. O. Du. rinsel, runsel.

[2] *mannes sperme haþ him,* Lat. ita sperma viri se habet. [4] *maris,* matrix.

---

20 ys more ffeblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hy*m* by weye of worchynge, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe generaciou*n* of embrion, Ma*n*nes sperme[6] hath̄ hy*m* be weye of worchynge, & wo*m*mans sperme[6] be weye of suffrynge, & ryȝt as þe
24 rendles & þe mylk makyth̄ a[5] chese, so boþe þe spermes[6] of ma*n* & wo*m*man makyþ þe gen*er*aciou*n* of embrion. Þowȝ þ*a*t alle þe smale lymes of a childe be y-geten of boþe two spermes,[6] naþeles to cloþe he*m* w*ith* fflesch̄ & w*ith* fatnesse comeþ to he*m* menstrewe blod. þe
28 marys of a wo*m*man haþ an able complexiou*n* to conseyve*n*, & of here kynde sche castyth̄ þe spermes to þe deppeste place off here, and of here nature sche closyth̄ hire mouth̄ þ*a*t þ*er*e myȝte nouȝt entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þe*n*ne þe formal v*ir*tue whiche
32 þ*a*t almyghty god haþ ȝeue*n* to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ e*v*e*r*y party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þ*a*t þe childe be*n* ybore. Und*er*stande þ*a*t þe flesch̄ & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of menstrewe blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,
36 Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þ*a*t buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & oþ*er*e Autores tellyn. ȝif þ*a*t enye of þe lymes þ*a*t buþ engendrede off[1] the spermes be don away, *he may nev*er*e v*er*relyche be*n* restoride, ffor þe mater*e* of

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6] Above line. [6] MS. *spernes.*

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale lymes han dyners foormes, complexciouns & helpingis aftir þe dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad of[1] / for þouȝ þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater, I-medlid, nebeles in ech of þe smale ly[1]mes þer is a dyners proporcioun of mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers helpingis. Almyȝti god ȝeueþ to ech þing[1] of his foorme after þat his mater is* proporciound disserueþ /

[1 lr. 10]

*consimile membris.*** 1st Member The Bone. Its functions: to move limbs, protect them, support the body, and fill the hollows of joints.

Þe boon is þe first of[1] þe consimile membris—þat is oon of[1] þe smale lymes; þe which ben[2] cold & drie & he haþ dyners foormes in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it[1] is nede to meeue oon lyme withouten anoþir & þat were impossible, if[1] þat al þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoþer cause whi þer ben manye boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe brayn scolle from[3] þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben foundementis, as þe boones of[1] þe rigge & of þe schenes & of[1] þe armes / summe ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet;

[2] *ben* for *is*, see below. [3] *from*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verreliche be restoryde. Þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun, & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater whiche þat þey ben [4]mad of; ffor þowȝ þat alle the lymes be mad of on matere y-medlyde, nabeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a dyverse proposiciou[n][5] of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye þynge of[1] hys forme after þat hys matere *proporcioned deservyt.

[4 fol. 39 b]

Þe bon is furst of consimile membris þat is on off smale lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,[6] ffor summ tyme it ys nede to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were impossible, ȝif in alle þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many bonys; for summ diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe brayn scolle þe brayn of[1] þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, & somme fulfylle þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe

[5] read "proporciou*n*." [6] *is* above line.

& summe þer ben þat þe roundnes of þe boon myȝte entre into þe holownes of þat oþer boon / & non les schulde not[1] lacke his meuynge as þe schuldre boones & þe hipe boones. Þou maist fynde how manye boones þer ben in þe .ij. tretis, [1]where schal be told pleynlier þe anotamie of consimile membris of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot. sign. ²iij [1 lf. 10, bk.]

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan þe fleisch, and in þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpingis / þe firste, þat þat schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttir ende of þe hard boon & þe neische fleisch / þe .ij. þat þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische, nameli in þe tyme of[1] compressioun, & in þe tyme of smytinge / þe .iij. þat þe eende of þe boones whiche þat ben in þe ioyntis schulden haue a softere confutacioun[2] in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, þat he schulde fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuynge a membre þat haþ noon boon, as þe ouer lid of þe iȝe / þe fifþe: for it is nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, þat is nouȝt ful hard as þe þrote bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,[3] þat is foldynge, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis & þe gristile of þe eere. 2nd Member, The Gristle; the six uses of Gristle. .1. .2. .3. .4. .5. .6.

[2] *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.
[3] *applicacioun*. Read *a plicacioun*.

---

fete, & somme þere ben þat þe roundnesse of on bon myȝte entre in to þe holwenesse of þe oþere bon & naþeles scholde noȝt lakken hys meffynge, as þe schulder bonys, & the hepe bonys. Þou maiste fynde hou many bonys þere ben in þe secunde tretys where schal be tolde plenerliche—þe Anotamye of consimile membrys of alle [4]þe body, from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyH ys cold & drye, & is nesschere þenne a bon, & hardere þanne þe flesch, & in þe fleschi hathi vi helpynges. ¶ Helpynge þe grustel. The ffurste þat þere scholde be a Mene, bytwene þe vtter ende of þe hard bon, & þe nesschi flesch. ¶ þe secunde, þat þe harde scholde noȝt hurt þe nessche, namlyche, in þe tyme of comprission, & in þe tyme of smytynge. ¶ The þridde, þat þe ende of þe bonys, whiche þat ben in þe Iunttes scholde han a softere confricatioun in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, þat he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meffynge, a membre þat haþ non bon, as þe overe lyd of þe eyȝe. ¶ þe v. for his necessarie a grustyH to be[5] in a place þat ys noȝt ful hard, as þe þrote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe þrote bolle ys grustlye. ¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun & a plicacioun, þat is a foldynge, to be streynde & drawen abrod, as þe nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere. Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 40 a]

[5] *noȝt* above line.

3rd Member, ligamentis. [1 lf. 11]

The four uses of Ligament. .1. It binds the bones together,

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & haþ þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he feliþ nouȝt; & he [1]haþ foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttiþ oon boon wiþ anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat many boonys myȝten make oon bodi as oon boon, & nenerepelatter ech membre myȝte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as bowable & incensible / for if þat it hadde be censible, þei myȝten nouȝt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuynge of þe ioyntis / & if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comeþ of, oon lyme myȝte not han meued wiponten anoþer / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restynge place to summe senewis / þe fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangynge.

.2. it joins with Sinews to make *Cordes*, i.e. Tendons and Muscles, .3. it is a resting-place for Sinews, .4. it sustains the parts within the body. 4th Member, Sinews (Nerves). They start from the brain or Spinal Cord. sign. [2]iiij [4 lf. 11, bk.]

A corde[2] is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiþer from þe mucha[3]; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe [4]brayn & nucha, haþ

[2] There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

[3] *mucha*, an error for *nucha;* med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & haþ þe forme of a ȝenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he feliþ noȝt, & he haþ iiij helpynges. Þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an opere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte with an opere, þat manye bonys myȝte make on body as on bon, & nevere þe later eche membre myȝte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & insensible; for ȝif þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myȝte nouȝt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iunttys; and ȝif þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ of, [5]on lyme myȝte noȝt han meffyde withouten an opere. Þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with ȝenewys to make cordys & brawne. Þe þridde helpynge ys, þat he scholde ben a restynge place to summe senewys. Þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongynge.

[5 fol. 40 *b*]

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyth from þe brayn opere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marye of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible ȝenewys, from þe nuca þere comyth xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selffen & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyth of þe brayn, & þe nuca

bope felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong & tow3. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long & dyuydiþ[1] alle þe parties of þe senewis
4 *[in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of 3enewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membris
8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt, an hand, eiþer a foot *[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoote nou3t of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben
12 colde & drie & þei han two cloþis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnynge is in þe lift side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & haþ
16 but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he my3te brynge from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie[2] is [3]y-clepid venales. & it [[3] lf. 12]

5th Member, *Arteries* spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[1] & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

[2] *Arteria venalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

---

20 habbeþ bope felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow3; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of 3enewes; *in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of
24 3enewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a
28 fote *ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, no3t for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye clopes, outsepte on þat goth to þe
32 longes. þe innore cote [4]is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe withholde a Mevable matere & an hote. & here bygynnynge is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & haþ bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth
36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-noryssehyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he my3te brynge from þe longe eire[5] to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[[4] fol. 41 *a*]

[5] MS. *eiþere*.

save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

is a maner veyne, for as mycho as he ne haþ but[1] oon coote, and
*þer*fore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abrood þoruȝ out[1] alle þe
lu*n*gis; & also þat þe blood þat norischiþ þe lu*n*gis myȝte liȝtly
swete out[1] of[1] þis arterie / þe to*þer* arterie þat comeþ out of þe lift- 4
side of[1] þe herte haþ two cootis, bi cause þ*a*t oon myȝt not aȝenstonde
þe strenkþe of[1] þe spiritis; & also þat, þ*a*t is wiþi*n*ne þe arterie, is

The uses of Arteries: .1. to bring cold air to the heart; .2. to cast out the fumosity; .3. to carry life to the whole body.

ful derworþe & nediþ greet kepi*n*ge / þer ben þre helpingis of[1] þe
arteries: oon is þ*a*t cold eir myȝte bi he*m* be drawe & I-brouȝt to 8
þe herte wha*n*ne þe arterie is drawe abrod. Þe secu*n*de is, þ*a*t þe
fumosite myȝte be cast out wha*n*ne he is constreyned / þe þridde is,
þ*a*t þe spirit of[1] lijf myȝte be brouȝt bi he*m* to al þe bedi / þese
arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysiou*n*s ma*n* mai nouȝt[1] 12
conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouȝt dredful to[1] surgiens craft[1],
but wha*n*ne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee i*n* her
placis /

6th Member, vaynes. [2 lf. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of[1] her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16
blood þ*a*t is w*ith*y*n*ne he*m* þei ben deemed hoot[1]; & alle þe veynes han
her bi[2]gy*n*nynge at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigy*n*nynge / oon veyne bigy*n*neþ of[1] þe holowȝ side of[1] þe lyuere.
& is clepid porta[3]—þat is a ȝate / & her office is to drawe *[Chilum] 20

[1] *a* erased. [3] *Vena Porta.* See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

venalis, & yt is a mau*er*e veyne, ffor as mycho as he may haue
but o cote, & þ*er*efore he is þe more obedient to be drawen abrod
þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þ*a*t norysschiþ þe
longe myȝte liȝtlokere swete out of þis arterie. Þe o*þer*e Artery, þ*a*t 24
comyþ out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, haþ two cotys, because þ*a*t
on myȝt noȝt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þ*a*t
þat is wiþy*n*ne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nediþ gret kepynge.
Þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þ*a*t colde eyr*e* by hem 28
myȝte be drawe & y-brouȝt to þe herte, whe*n*ne þe arterye is drawe
abrod; þe secu*n*de ys þ*a*t þe fumosite myȝt be caste out, whe*n*ne
sche is *con*streynyde; þe þridde ys þ*a*t þe spirite of lyf myȝte be
broȝt by hem to alle þe body. Þese Arteries beþ devydyde many 32
weyes, whose divisiones Man may noȝt *con*seyve by hys wyt, ne þey
ne beþ noȝt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whe*n*ne þ*o*u schalt drede
þe arterye i schal telle*n* þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodyes beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36
for þe blod þ*a*t is w*ith*y*n*ne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe
[4 fol. 41 *b*] veynes han here [4]bygy*n*nynge of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two
veynes han pryncipal begy*n*nynge. On veyne bygy*n*neþ of þe holwe
syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þ*a*t ys a ȝatte, & here ofyce 40
is to drawe **chilu***m* fro*m* þe stomak*e* & þe guttes by mene of þe

fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraic*es*[1]; & þilke chilu*m* spredi þoru3 al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares / Chilu*m*[2] is þe licour of þe mete, wha*n*ne it goiþ out of þe stomak & 4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak[1] be*n* smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a ma*n*nes heed / — The Mesaraic veins bring Chilum to the Portal Vein.

After hem comeþ pa*n*niclis—þat is to seie smal cloop, þat is maad 8 of sutil þredis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wh*er*fore þei ben colde & drie & censible / & þei ha*n* þre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei mou*n* bynde manye þingis i*n* oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed byndiþ seuene boones / þe secu*n*de Iunament is: þat þei haugen & 12 bynden su*m*me membris wiþ o*p*e*r*e as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris[3] to þe rigge / þe þridde helpi*n*ge is: þat þe mem- [4]bris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe pa*n*niclis þat wrieþ he*m* velen bi accident: as þe lu*n*gis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes. 16 Þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pa*n*nicle þat wrieþ he*m*. — 7th Member, panikelles. the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle. .1. .2. .3. [4 lf. 13]

Þe[5] fleisch is not hoot, b*ut* it is moist & haþ þre maner lijknes: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis — 8th Member Flesh. 3 Maner of fleisch.**

[1] *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.
[2] *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.
[3] MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.
[5] Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

---

20 **veynes miscraykus**; þilke chylu*m* spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by mene of **veynes Capillares**. **Chilu***m* ys þe licour*e* of mete & of þe drynke, whe*n*ne yt goþ out of þe stomak*e* & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comytli out of þe veyne þat is 24 y-clepyde **porta**, & clevytli on þe stomak*e* & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Ma*n*nes hed. — Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ After he*m* comytli pa*n*nyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal clotli, þat ys mad of sotyH þredys of synwis veynes & arteries, where 28 fore þey ben colde & dry3e & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges. Þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pa*n*nicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secu*n*de Iuvament is þat þey hongen & bynden so*m*me me*m*brys w*ith* o*p*e*r*e, as þe reyns to þe 32 rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon; þe prydde helpynge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pa*n*nycles þat wreyeþ he*m* ffeliþ by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde haþ no*n* felynge, but what 36 þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pa*n*nycle þat wreyeþ he*m*.

Þe flesch̄i is no3t hot, but yt is moist, & haþ þre mane*re* lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfylle þe voyde placys

.1. Simple flesh fills up hollows.

.2. Glandulous flesh turns blood into milk, and makes sperm into spittle.

.3. Brawny or muscular flesh.

[4 lf. 13, bk.]

of[1] smale lymes to bryngе hem to a good schap, & þat eeh hard lyme
schulde nou3t hirte oþer wiþ confucacioun[1] togidere / Anoþer maner
fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat[1] is as it[1] were accornis,[2] & his
Iuuament is þat[1] he turne[3] humedites, þat[1] is to seie moistnes to her 4
heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat[1]
turneþ þe blood þat[1] is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe
glandelose fleisch of þe balloekis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme /
& þe glandelose fleisch of[1] þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8
maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn
fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þredis of eordis, as I schal telle
after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe [4]anotamie of[1] þe brawn.

9th Member, Skin. It is temperate.

At[1] þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it[1] 12
is maad of[1] smale þredis of[1] veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makiþ
him censible, & 3eueþ him li3f & worchinge, þat ben gouernouris of[1]
al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot,
coold, moist, & drie, soft[1], hard, scharp, & smoþe / & if[1] þat þe skyn 16
were as sencible as a senewe, þanne a man my3te not dwelle in erþe
ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of[1] þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is
more temperat þan ony oþir skyn of[1] þe bodi ne schulde nou3t be a

[1] *confucacioun.* Addit. *confricacioun.* See page 23, note 2.
[2] *accornis*, glandes.
[3] Latin: eius juvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorem.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 42 *a*]

of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20
lyme [5]ne scholde nou3t hurten oþere with confricacioun togedire.
An oþere manere flesch̄ ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were
acheharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyth̄ vmydites to here
hete: as þe glandelose flesch̄ of wommans brestys, whyche þat 24
turnyth̄ þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glan-
delose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth̄ þe blod into sperme, & þe
glandelose flesch off[1] the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. Þe þridde
manere of flesch̄ ys a flesch̄ þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28
brawny flesch̄, ffor he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl predys of eordys, as y
schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye
of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is 32
y-mad of smale predys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym
sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschynge, þat he be governoure
of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe
hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & 3if þe 36
skyn were as sensible as a 3enewe, a man my3te no3t dwellen in
colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche
þat ys more temperat þenne eny oþere skyn of þe body, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiþ*er* neische.

Brawnes þou3 þ*a*t þei be m*aa*d of mat*er* medlid, neþeles þei be*n* rekened among me*m*bris consimiles, for þei comen to þe maki*ng* of membris officials / Brawn is m*aa*d of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrument voluntarie meuynge. þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid wiþ a ligament / & wha*n*ne þe senewe & þe ligament ben medlid togidere, it is clepid a corda / & þe corde is m*aa*d for þre skilis. þe firste[1] for a symple sinewe is to cen[2]sible; þe senewe bi hi*m*-silf my3t not suffre gret traueile & meuy*n*ge, but þe felowschipe of þe ligament þ*a*t is incensible lettiþ þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringiþ hi*m* to a profitable te*m*pera*u*nce / þe senewe haþ .ij. oþ*er*e defautis: neischenesse and li3tnesse. But þo .ij. defautis þe medlynge of þe ligament fulfilliþ[3]; for þe neischenes is temp*er*id & strenkþid, & þe litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes comeþ of þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þ*a*t þ*a*t is m*aa*d of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, wha*n*ne þat it is schortid

9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,

[2 lf. 14]

the Sinew alone being too sensible,

too soft,

and too small.

cordis.

[1] *þe firste* in margin.
[3] *fulfilliþ*, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, *to Fulfylle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

---

no3t be*n* a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard oþ*er*e scharpe, softe oþ*er*e nessche.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Brawnys þow3 þey ben mad of mat*ere* y-medlyde, nev*er*e þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge me*m*brys *con*similes, for þey comen to þe makynge off Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of fflesch, [4]3enewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off volu*n*tarie mevynge. þe 3enewe þat comyth fro*m* þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meve the lymes, ys y-medlyde wi*th* a ligamente, & whe*n*ne þe 3enewe & þe ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe 3enewe by hy*m*-self ne my3te no3t suffre*n* to grete tr*a*vaylle & mevynge, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þ*a*t ys insensible, lutliþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a pr*o*fitable temp*er*au*n*ce. þe 3enewe hadde tweyne oþ*er*e defautes: nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the nesschenesse ys entempred & y-strengthyde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyth of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þ*a*t þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þ*a*t meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

[4 fol. 42 b]

Muscles are made from cords and flesh.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[2 lf. 14, bk.]

When the Cords enter the Muscles, they are divided into many threads.

ouþ*er* drawe*n* aft*er* þ*at* þe lyme bouwiþ. To þis[1] corde, þer is asocied a symple *[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre *pro*fitis / þe firste *pro*fiȝt þ*at* is in drawynge & wiþdrawynge of þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myȝt reste / þe secu*n*de, 4 þ*at* þe fleisch þ*at* is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat he drie nouȝt in her menynge / þe þridde, þ*at* þe makynge of lymes were þe more schaploker./ Þe brawn is m*aa*d bowynge as a bowe þ*at* is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexiou*n*, he cloþide 8 [2]þe brawn wiþ a pa*n*nicle / þe corde wha*n*ne he entriþ into þe brawn is departid into many smale þredis, & þei ben clepid villes[3]—þat is to seie wrappingis. & þese villes be*n* of .iij. man*er*: in lenkþe bi þe which v*er*tu, þat drawiþ haþ myȝt, in brede, bi þe which v*er*tu 12 þ*at* castide out haþ myȝt / in þwert ouer bi þe which v*er*tu *[þat] w*ith* halt haþ myȝt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn þilke þredis ben gaderid togidere to make a corde, aftir þ*at* it is nessessarie / many cordis eiþ*er* brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membris be*n* m*aa*d of 16 þese consimile membris, þe whiche þat be*n* instrumente*s* to resonable soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes of office.

[1] Lat.: Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.
[3] *villes.* Lat. fila.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 43 *a*]

whe*n*ne þ*at* it is schortid oþ*er*e y-drawe, after*e* þ*at* þe lyme bowyth 20 to þis corde. ffor þ*er*e ys Asosyed a symple *fflesch forto maken a brawne for þre *pro*ffytes: þe furste profyt, þ*at* boþe in drawynge & wiþdrawynge of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on whom he myȝte reste; þe secu*n*de cause, þ*at* þe flesch þ*at* is nessche 24 & moyst schulde kepe*n* þe corde, þat [4]sche dreyȝede noȝt in here mevynge; þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes were þe more schaplokore. Þe brawne is made bowynge, as a bowe þ*at* ys y-bent; & for þ*at* kynde wolde kepe þys *com*position*n*, he clothyde þe brawne 28 wyþ a pa*n*nycle. Þe corde wh*e*nne he entritli in to þ*at* brawne, ys departyde in to many smale þredys, & þey ben clepyde vylles, þ*at* ys to sugge, wrabbynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in lengþe—by whom vertue þ*at* drawe*þ* haþ myȝt, in brede—by whom 32 vertu þ*at* castyth out haþ myȝt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu *þ*at* wiþhalt haþ myȝt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke þredys beþ gadride to gedre to maken a corde, aft*er* þ*at* it is necessarie, many cordys oþ*er*e brawnys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36 y-mad of þese *con*simile me*m*brys, whiche þat beþ instrument to resonable sowle. And in þe secu*n*de tretys y wyl tell*e*n þe anotamye of lymes of office.

The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iij. techinge is of[1] difference of wonndis & of general curis / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre & cankre woundid, & boon out[1] of[1] ioynte, & a boon to-broken, & apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoynge of[1] þat þat is hool. & alle þese sijknessis, & many oon oþir as weel, moun falle to consimile membris as to official membris / vunnus is a newe wounde / vlcus is an old rotid wounde. [1]I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of[1] festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid vulnus, as ypocras seiþ / vulnera anua necesse est in eis os taliefieri[2] & cicatrices concauas fieri: þat is to seie, it is nedful[3] þat þe boon in an oold wounde to be rotid & þe cicatrices to be holow3 / Cicatrice is þe place of[1] þe schynboon[4] þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not[1] lost[1] of[1] fleisch / anoþer maner for he haþ noon oþir sijknesse wiþ him, ne is nou3t distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or

de vulneribus

[1 leaf 15]

ypocras

Wounds are either woundis sempell or compound,

[2] Read *tabefieri.* [3] *it is nedful* in margin.
[4] *schynboon*, read *schyn above.* See below.

The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of difference of woundes & olde woundes & off generall cures.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese ben y-clepyde vndoynge of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse & manye oþere as wel mowe fallen to consimile membrys. as to oficial membris. Vulnus is a newe wounde. Vlcus ys an olde rotyde wounde. I schall [5]tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde; and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde Vulnus, **as Ipocres seiþ:** *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri & cicatrices concavas fieri.* ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe Cicatrices to be holwe. Cicatrice ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben componyde. In tweye manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ no3t leste of flesch; an oþere maner, for he haþ non oþere seknesse with hym, ne is no3t distempride. A wonnde componed ys y-clepyde contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

[5 fol. 43 b]

and have different causes, both internal

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wiþinne of þe maliee, eiþer of to greet multitude of humouris. *[forto gret multitude of humores] oþirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wiþholdiþ & woundiþ him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wiþoute mater makiþ no wounde, but selden with [1]mater, but he drawe þe lyme to brode. & also þe cause wiþoute[2] mai be dyuers oþirwhile wiþ a swerd eiþir wiþ a þing þat kuttiþ along, oþerwhile wiþ a knyf or wiþ a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wiþ a staf or wiþ a stoon eiþir wiþ fallynge, & summe ben maad wiþ bitynge of an hound ouþir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite of her eausis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe eonsimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon awey: as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe eause of her generaeioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi eause

[1] lf. 15, bk.]

and external.

The object of healing is to close a wound, and to restore what has been lost.

Nota

Bones, ligaments, and similar parts cannot be restored;

[2] *The cause wiþoute*, causa exterior.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch opere in þe synwe oper in bon, opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wiþynne of þe malice, opere of to gret multytude of humores; *forto gret multitude of humores opere while tobrekyth̃ þe membre, þat wiþholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wiþout may be dyverse, operwhyle with a swerd, ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, operwhile with a knyff, opere a spere, opere an arwe þat [3]prykeþ, & somme ben made wiþ a stafe, opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytinge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may noȝt overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey mowe nevere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don awey: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generaeioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thynge þat is lore, kynde restoryth̃ þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the fleseh̃ may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

[3] fol. 44 *a*]

þat[t] þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of[f] þe fleisch / & su*m*me seien *þat* veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not[t] be restorid as þei were*n* tofore; but þei mou*n* [1] be restorid as boonys be*n* / But Galion and Auicen & I *þat*[t] am expert[t] here seiynge,[2] we[3] seie *þat*[t] þei mou*n* be restorid wiþ ve*r*i consolidaciou*n*, wha*n*ne *þat*[t] her kuttynge is litil, & wha*n*ne *þat*[t] þe senewis *þat*[t] ben newe kutt[t] &[4] soude aȝe*n*; bu*t*[t] þei mou*n* not[t] be consoudid, wha*n*ne *þat*[t] her kuttynge is myche & greet[t]; & resou*n* grau*n*tiþ it[t] / Senewis bi kynde be*n* neische & viscouse; & þe*r*fore þei mou*n*[5] ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries mou*n* be consoudid bi resou*n* of[f] þe blood *þat*[t] is i*n* he*m*. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi hi*m*-silf[f] afte*r* þe dyuersite of[f] lymes & of[f] placis, þe whiche *þat*[t] þei ben maad y*n*ne / & I wole bigy*n*ne at[t] a symple wou*n*de m*aa*d in fleisch /

[1 leaf 16]

G. A.

vaynes & arteres may be consouded but not senewis.

þe secunde chapitle of þe þridde techinge / ij°. c°.

Of wou*n*de m*aa*d in fleisch.

NOw we wolen trete of[f] a wou*n*de maad in fleisch. We wolen bigy*n*ne at[t] a symple wou*n*de maad wiþ knyf[f] or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony oþir þi*n*g[g] semblablele to he*m*.

[2] *I þat am expert here seiynge.* Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

[3] *we*, added above line. [4] *&*, mistake for *ben*.

[5] *not*, erroneously added above line.

---

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch; & som*m*e suggen þat veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be *re*storyde as þey were tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I *þat* am expert here suggynge, suggen *þat* þey mowe be restoryde *with* verrey *con*solidaciou*n*, wha*n*ne þat here kuttynge ys lytell, & whe*n*ne *þat* þe synwys *þat* buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde aȝeyne; but þey mowe noȝt be *con*souded, wha*n*ne *þat* here kuttynge ys gret & myche; & resou*n* grau*n*tyth yt. Synwys by kynde buþ nessche and viscose; & *þe*refore þey mowe ben *con*souded. Þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be *con*souded by resou*n* of þe blod þat ys in he*m*. I þynke to ordeyne*n* eche Chapitell [6] be hy*m* selven, aftere þe dyv*e*rsite of lymes & of placys, whyche *þat* þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begy*n*ne at a symple wou*n*de y-mad in flesch.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 41 b]

¶ þe secu*n*de Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the ffurst tretis is of cure of a wou*n*de y-mad in fflesch.

Now we willen treten of a wou*n*de y-makyd in fflesch. We wylle begy*n*ne at a symple wou*n*de, y-mad wiþ knyff[f] o*þe*re wiþ sword ore spere, o*þe*re *with* arwe, o*þe*re *with* enye o*þe*re thynge

Simple wounds, if painless, will close if only bandaged,

Bynde togideris þilke wounde *with* a boond þat[1] closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe þilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whiȝt[1] of[1] an ey leid aboue þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be *in* reste; & *þer* nediþ noon

[1 lf. 16, bk.]

oþ*er* cure, namely, [1] wha*n*ne þe wou*n*de is wiþoute akynge; but, & *þer* be in þe wounde greet akynge, þa*n*ne it is a tokene, *þat* *þer* is a senewe prickid vndir þe wou*n*de, eiþ*er* a pa*n*nicle *þat* is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þa*n*ne *þer* is anoþ*er* cure, as I schal telle *in* þe chapitle of pu*n*cture of[1] a senewe *þat* I haue heelid a man *þat*[2] was *[sefenty ȝere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruȝ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, *[& more] but þilke wou*n*de touchide no senewe, & *þat* I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akynge / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, *þat* I myȝte wite, if[1] *þat* he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comau*n*dide hi*m* to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflaciou*n* ne akynge; & þa*n*ne I took awey þe tent & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so comau*n*dide I hi*m* to reste þe secu*n*de dai / I*n* þe þridde day he was hool. & if a wounde were m*aa*d wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony *þing*[1] *þat* bitiþ *in* lenkþe, anoo*n* þou must loke if[1] þe wou*n*de be so litil *þat* he nede no sowynge, & þa*n*ne brynge þe pa*r*ties of þe wou*n*de togideris, *þat* it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboue þe wou*n*de a pou*n*dir m*aa*d oon p*ar*tie

Naracio.

Ego ourauy homo.

as has been shown in the case of an old man.

Treat slight wounds with puluis *consolidativus*

[2] *þat*, scribal insertion.

Add. MS. 12,056.

semblable to he*m*. Bynde togedyre þilke wou*n*de *with* a band *þat* close þe wou*n*de to gedire, & kepe þe wou*n*de fro*m* swellynge, *with* þe whyte of an eyȝe y-leyde aboue þe wou*n*de, & lete *þat* wou*n*de ben in reste, & *þere* nedyth none o*þere* cure, namlye, wha*n*ne þe wou*n*de ys *with*outen akynge; but and *þere* be in wou*n*de gret akynge, þa*n*ne *þere* is a tokne *þat* þere ys a synwe *prikyde* vndire þe wou*n*de, o*þere* a pa*n*nicle *þat* ys betwene þe flesch & þe bon, & þa*n*ne *þere* ys al an o*þere* cure, as y schal telle in þe chapitell of the pu*n*cture of a synwe. And y haue helyd a ma*n* *þat* was *sefenty ȝere olde, *þat* was y-smyte*n* *wiþ* a spere *þ*orwe þe flesch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote *& more, but þilke wonde touchyde no*n* synwe; & *þat* y wiste sykerliche, for he had no*n* akynge; y helde the wou*n*de opyn al a day, *with* a lyte smal tente & a schert *þat* y myȝte wyte, ȝif *þat* he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comau*n*dyde hy*m* to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde no*n* inflacion ne akynge, & þe*n*ne y caste aweye þe tente & lete þe wou*n*de closen, & so y comau*n*dide hy*m* to reste, & wiþy*n*ne þe þridde day he was al hol. And ȝif *þat* a wou*n*de were mad wiþ a swerd, o*þere* *wiþ* eny *þ*ynge *þat* [3]kutteþ in lengþe, a ma*n* most loke ȝif þe wou*n*de be so litel *þat* he nede no*n* sowynge, & þe*n*ne brynge þe parties of þe wou*n*de togedyre, *þat* it may wel ben y-joynede, & leye above þe wou*n*de a poudere y-mad of on partye of ffranke-En-

[3 fol. 45 *a*]

of frankencense, & of two parties[1] of sandragoun,[2] & of þre parties of quyk lym, & lete nouȝt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde but aboue, for þer schal no þing entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat ben brouȝt togidere wiþ a plumaciol[3] .iij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner: ◁ oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed[4]: ◁ ⊢ ▷ & ioyned togidere as it was ioyned arst, or it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnen clooþ & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oile of rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue þe wounde þat is brouȝt togidere, for to kepe þe[5] poudre; & do nouȝt awey þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but if þat þe wounde ake or be to-swollen. & þanne bynde þe wounde as it was biforn wiþ þe white of an ey; oile, poudre, & plumaciols. But if þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouȝt suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myȝt nouȝt wel be [6]brouȝt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioyne þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oile *[ne dust] ne no þing ellis, þat lettiþ consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

[1 leaf 17]

Way of dressing a wound with compresses.

Nota

Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched

[6 lf. 17, bk.]

[2] *Sandragoun.* Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706. See Notes. [3] *Plumaceoli:* Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.
[4] *iclosed*, inserted in margin. [5] MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

---

sence, & of two partyes of sancdragoun & of þre parties of quyke-lyme, & lete noȝt þe poudre entre wiþynne þe wounde but above, for þere schal noþynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat buþ brouȝt togedire with a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes oþere towȝ in þis manere ▷ on be þe sydes of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus y-closyde ◁ | ▷ & joynde togedire, as yt was joyned ere þenne yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togedire aboue þe plumacioles, with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnen cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyȝe, & in on partie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles abofe þe wounde, þat ys y-browȝt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do noȝt awey þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but ȝif þat þe wounde ake, oþere ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wonde as yt was toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyȝe, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But ȝif þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde noȝt suffice, oþere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe partyes of þe lyme myȝt noȝt wel be browȝt togedire, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togedire, & ware þat non oyle *ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene

Add. MS. 12,056.

with an acus triangulum.

Way of stitching a wound.

wounde, & haue a nedle þre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid on
boþe sidis, so þat þe þred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holowȝ
place, & þilke þred schal be twyned, & wiþoute knotte, & I-wexid,
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal 4
be knytt wiþ two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place
wiþ oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,
& ech poynt schal be from oþir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &
streyne þe wounde with knottynge & þe sewynge of þe lippis of þe 8

Number of the stitches and their distance from each other.

wounde togidere þat he ake summwhat, but nouȝt to myche. & if þat
þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde
poyntis. as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toþir poynt 12
schal be at þe oþir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,
[1 leaf 18] þanne schalt þou [1]bigynne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye
poyntis on boþe sidis as it is nede, til þou come to boþe eendis / For 16
bi þis maner of sowynge neiþir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat *[ȝif] þe wounde be

The stitches must be deep enough

not depe, þi sowynge schal be nouȝt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,
þi sowynge schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 45 b]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle [2]þre kornerde, whose eyȝe
scholde be holyde on boþe sydes, so þat þe [3]þrede þat is in þe nedle
may ligge in þe holwe place, & þilke schal be twynede, & withoute
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde 24
togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from opere by þe
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wiþ knettynge, & þe 28
sowynge of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake summwhat,
but noȝt to myche, & ȝif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen
two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, opere seuene;
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32
[4]brede of a litel fyngire, & þe opere puncte schal be at þe opere ende
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddul of þe
wounde; & ȝif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on boþe þe sydes, as 36
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boþe endys; ffor by þis manere of
sowynge neiþere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere
ben restoryde. And euereme take hede, *ȝif þe wounde be noȝt
depe, þy sowynge schal be nouȝt depe. And ȝif þy wounde be depe 40
þy sowynge schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

[3] *þridde* cancelled before *þrede*. [4] *sp.* cancelled before *brede*.

be ioyned / For if þe wou*n*de were deep, & þi sowynge not[1] deep, nede þ*er* muste be i*n* þe deppe of[1] þe wou*n*de a greet[1] holownes, to þe which holownes blood & quyttere schulde be cast[1]; & þilke quyttere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of[1] þe wou*n*de. & þe poudre þ*at*[1] is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe same wounde; & þou schalt[1] kepe þe sewynge & þe p*ar*ties of[1] þe wou*n*de þ*at*[1] I brou3te togidere wiþ plumaciols þre cornerid, & wiþ alle þe op*er*e þi*n*gis þ*at*[1] ben i*n* þis chapitle tofore seid / And if[1] þ*at* a wou*n*de haþ be to longe i*n* þe eir open, which þ*at* is þe cause of[1] quytt*er*e þ*at*[1] lettiþ consolidaciou*n*, þa*n*ne we musten cle*n*se þe wo*n*de wiþ þis mu*n*dificatif[1] þ*at*[1] is maad of[1] flour of[1] whecte & hony & wat*er* & mel roset[1], [1]I-colat, þ*at* is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of barly mele / Of[1] þese mu*n*dificatyues þou schalt[1] haue a ful techi*n*ge i*n* þe laste tretis /

To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.

a mundificatif.

[1 lf. 18, bk.]

But if þe wo*n*de be compou*n*d, a leche muste haue as manye intenciou*n*s as þer ben accidentis to þe wou*n*de / I sette an ensau*m*ple. I suppose þat a wou*n*de be compou*n*d wiþ holownes & lesy*n*ge of[1] fleisch & of[1] skyn, & þ*er*e be myche quytt*er*, & also þ*at* þer be apostyme, & þer be a greet akynge; al þis is clepid a wou*n*de compou*n*d / þa*n*ne schule*n* we nou3t onliche take hede to consolidaciou*n* of[1] þ*at*[1] wou*n*de: þ*at* is to seie, helynge; but first[1] we schulen aswage

Nota

If pus and pain come on,

---

be joyned togedire. Ffor 3if þe wou*n*de were depe, & þy sowynge were no3t depe, nedys þ*er*e moste be*n* in þe deppe of þe wou*n*de a gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyt*er* scholde be cast; & þilke quyt*er* & blod scholde lette þe [2]helynge of þe wou*n*de. And þe poudre þ*at* ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepe*n* þe sowynge & þe parties of þe wou*n*de, þ*at* buþ brou3t togedyre, w*ith* plumaciolcs þre cornelyd & w*ith* alle op*er*e þynges þ*at* beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And 3if þ*at* a wou*n*de haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þ*at* ys cause of quyt*er* þ*at* latteþ co*n*solidaciou*n*, þe*n*ne we moste clense þe wou*n*de wit*h*[3] þis mu*n*dificatyff, þ*at* is mad of flour*e*, of whete & hony & watyr*e* op*er*e mel rosate, & colat þ*at* ys y-clansed fro*m* þe roses, & of barly mele. Of þese mu*n*dyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful techynge in þe laste tretys. But 3if þe wou*n*de be y-co*m*poned, a leche moste han as manye intensiones as þ*er*e ben accidentys to þe wonde. Y sette ensau*m*ple: y suppose þ*at* a wou*n*de be co*m*poned *with* holwenesse & lesynge of fflesch & of skyn, & þ*er*e be myche quyt*er* & al so þ*er*e be a posteme & þ*er*e be grete akynge, al this ys clepyde a wou*n*de co*m*ponyde. Þa*n*ne we schulle no3t only take hede to co*n*solidaciou*n* of þilke wou*n*de, þ*at* is to sigge helynge, but firste we

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 46 *a*]

[3] MS. þ*at*.

deal with the symptoms separately,

akþe & apostymes, as it schal be teld *in* þe chapitle of an enpostyme & of akynge / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regene*re* fleisch, & at þe laste brynge ou*er* cicat*rice*. In alle þe worchingis of medicyns, where þ*at* akþe is, first we schulen aswage akþe, for aboue al oþir þing strong akynge ou*er*comeþ myȝt of *ver*tu & strenkþe / & also resou*n* telliþ; membris[1] þat han akþe, þilke akþe is cause of drawynge from þe oþ*er*e placis to þe membre þat akiþ þe worste [2]þi*ng* of þe humouris / Auicen seiþ: humou*r*is ben drawen to lymes þ*at* aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde *[& Spiritus and humourer re*n*myth þedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis re*n*nen to þe feble lyme / þe swellynge schal cer be heelid þa*n* þe wou*n*de / Galion & Auicen tellen: þ*at* al þing þ*at* consowdiþ þe wou*n*de greueþ þe wou*n*de, if þ*at* þ*er* be apostyme wiþ þe wou*n*de / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie ony regeneratijf to holowȝ wou*n*dis. Auicen telliþ þe cause, whi þ*at* yuel fleisch growiþ i*n* a wou*n*de / If þ*at* a leche wolde bisie hi*m* wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch *in* a wou*n*de, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & wha*n*ne þ*at* þe wounde is clensid, þa*n*ne we schulen fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þ*at* þe won*n*de be

and *first* relieve pain.

nota.

Auicen

[2 leaf 19]

G. & A.

A purulent wound must be cleansed, before closing it or putting on a "regeneratif."

[1] Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS. 12,056.

schul aswage*n* akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle of aposteme & of akynge; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyt*er*, & aftere þ*at* regenere fflesch, & at þe laste brynge ou*er*e a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þ*at* akþe ys, ffirste we schulle aswage*n* akynge; ffor abouen alle oþ*er*e þynge stronge akynge, ou*er*e comeþ myȝte of vertu & strengþe, & also resou*n* tellyth; membrys þ*at* han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawynge fro*m* oþ*er*e places to þe me*m*bre þ*at* akeþ[3] þe worste þynge of þe humoures. Avicene scyth̄ humours beþ drawe*n* to [4]lymes þ*at* aken for two causes: On cause, for kynde *& Spiritus and humoures re*n*myth̄ þedyre; þe secu*n*de cause, for akþe feblyth̄ þe lyme, & humours *& spirit*is* re*n*ne to þe feble ly*m*me. Þe swellynge schal ere ben y-helyde þe*n* þe wou*n*de. Galien & Avycene telle*n* þ*at* alle þynge þ*at* *con*soudeþ þe wou*n*de, grefyþ þe wou*n*de, ȝif þ*at* þ*er*e be aposteme w*ith* þe wou*n*de, & þe quyt*er* schal ben y-clansyde, ere þe*n*ne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe wou*n*dys. Avicen*n*e tellyth a cause, why þ*at* yvele flesch̄ growith̄ in a wou*n*de, ȝif þ*at* a leche wolde besy hy*m* w*ith* a medycin regene*r*atyff to engendre flesch̄ in a wou*n*de, ere þanne þe quytire were clansede. And whe*n*ne þ*at* þe wou*n*de ys clensyde, þe*n*ne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse w*ith*

[4 fol. 46 b]

[3] MS. *akþe*.

heelid, lest perauenture[1] þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wounde, whanne þat he is helid, in whom þat quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith[2] ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, &
4 so we moten be constreyned to opene anoþir tyme þat, þat was heelid tofore / þou maist fynde in þe chapitle of woundis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & in þe .vj. chapitle of þis techinge [3 lf. 19, bk.] þou schalt fynde þe cure [3]of a wounde þat haþ a swellynge, & is in þe c°. of olde woundis in þe antedotarie.
8 out of kynde distemperid; & þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundis, how þou schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

The þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe / ¶ 3°. c° De vulnere incarne.

12 Almyȝti god hath ȝeue to senewe greet felyng, & if þat he be hirt, he suffriþ greet akynge / Galion seiþ: a senewe þat is more Galion felynge þan anoþer *[lyme]; it is nessessarie þat he haue grettere akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad in a senewe, mai not be
16 wiþoute akynge. Ne[4] woundis þat ben maad in senewis, ouþer þat ben in lenkþe or in brede / þe woundis þat ben maad in lenkþe of A wound cutting the nerve lengthwise, a fissura, is less dangerous than one crossing it, a sissura. þe[2] senewe, ben lesse perilous þan[5] þo þat ben maad in brede of þe

[1] *perauenture.* See N. E. Dict., adventure, 1. b.
[2] *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which.*
[4] *no*, scribal error for *þe.* [5] *þan* erroneously inserted.

---

flesch, ere þanne þat wounde ben y-helyde; leste þat þere dwellen an Add. MS. 12,056.
20 holwnesse vndire þe wounde whenne þat he ys helyde, in whom þat quyter scholde be engendryde, þe whiche eche day scholde augmente þilke holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an opere tyme þat, þat was helyde tofore. Þou mayste fynden aftere in þe
24 chapyteH of woundys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techynge þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, þat hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt have in þe chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt
28 clense, quytyre, and regendre flesseh //

[6]Cap. iii. of the þridde techynge of the ffurst tretis is of helynge of a wounde y-makyde in synwe. [6 fol. 47 a]

Almiȝtie god hath ȝife to synwe gret felynge, & ȝif þat he be
32 hurt he suffrede grete akynge. Galien: a synwe that is more felynge þen anoþere *lyme; yt is nessessarie þat he have gretter akynge. Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is y-makyde in a synwe, may nouȝt ben wiþouten akynge. The woundes þat beþ y-makyde
36 in synwe, oþer þey ben in lengthe oþere þey beþ in brede. Þo woundes þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse perylous,

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

senewe ben moost perilous / Oþerwhile a senewe is kutt al atwo / & þanne þilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuynge & þe felynge, þat þilke senewe brouȝte to him from þe brain. & þilke senewe oþirwhile is not kutt al atwo, but he is I-preickid, & þanne it is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of þe senewe þat is kutt or prickid; & bi þe [1] partie of þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of þese þre or of oon bi him-silf mai come a drawinge togidere of a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in bigynnynge of a brawn. Þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is *[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of þe crampe, & also o. drede of felynge, lesynge & meuynge / & [2] þerfore be-war in þe cure of a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer þat it be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert, or ellis be kutt oonly bi his lenkþe. If oonly he be prickid þe wounde of þe skyn is hool, & þanne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiþer þe wounde is open, & it is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it is

If the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp. Spasmos. [1 leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe, corde & Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

[2] *&*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Opere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & penne þilke lyme to whom þilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menynge & þe felynge þat þilke synwe brouȝt to hym from þe brayn. Opere while þulke synwe is nouȝt y-kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and penne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entrith in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oþer priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouȝt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wonnde by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oþer rotynge. Of þese þre opere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawynge togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynninge of a brawn. Þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is *to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesynge, felynge, & menynge, & þerfor be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat here be a prikynge, opere þat þe synwe be y-knt twartofere, oþer ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. ȝif only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & penne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oþer þe wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikynge. In a blynde

nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as hoot as he mai suffre, hoot oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is maad of oile de oliue þat is nouȝt ripe, til al þe wonnde be ful. & aboue þe wounde leie whiȝt terebentine[2] I-drawe abrood bitwene two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wonnde wiþ hoot oile of rosis maad þicke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a lynnen clooþ I-het aboue, & aftir þat a good quantite of tow I-tosid, & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wiþ þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte tymes in þe dai & in þe nyȝt / & if þe prickynge be in þe foot, anoynte þe grynde[3] wiþ hoot comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis & in þe necke pitt, if þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis enoynture rarefieþ & euenep þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe brain, & it lettiþ drawynge togidere of þe senewe / & þouȝ þat þou seest nouȝt þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist, neuer-þe-latter chaunge not þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere medicyn. But if þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist aboute þe wounde. Þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin and apply hot oil, R and dress the wound. [1 lf. 20, bk.] N

If the pain endures renew the dressing frequently, N

and add opium to the ointment. N R

[2] *terebentine*, from Pistacia Terebinthus, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testament, and the τέρμινος of Theophrast.; now almost obsolete.

[3] *þe grynde*, inguina. *W. Wr.*, p. 589. 39, 15th cent.; inguen, the grynde.

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 47 b]

prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to þe hole, as [4]hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge, þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouȝt rype tyl þe wonnde be al ful. & aboue þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & after þat leye a lynne clothe y-hat aboue, & after þat a gode quantyte of towȝ y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme[5] softlyche wiþout streyninge; & ȝif þe akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nouȝt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyȝt, & ȝif þe prikynge be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe Arme holys & in þe nekputte, ȝif þat þe prikynge be in þe hande. For þys vncture ratefieþ & efenyþ þo placys by whom akþe goth to þe brayn, & it lattiþ drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þowȝ þat þou sest nouȝt akþe, sese in some men, as hastly as þou woldyst, nevere þe later chaunge nouȝt þy medycine, for þere may be no bettere medycine. But ȝif þat akþe dure onere longe yt is nouȝt efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak, þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. Þe seke man most reste, & by

[5] MS. lynne.

schulde nouȝt be wroþ; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, &
[1 lf. 21] smoþe, & þat he [1]myȝte haue reste / Whanne þat[1] þe akþe aswagiþ
& þe wounde ȝeueþ sum quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf[1] from al
Ypocras. maner perel, but[1] if he do ony newe errour / Of[1] þis wounde Ypocras 4
It is a bad sign if no pus is discharged. N spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat
is to seie: in yuel woundis and strong[1] woundis, if[1] no quytture
appere it[1] is yuel / Strong[1] woundis ben clepid woundis þat sore
aken / Yuel woundis ben þo, to whom scharpe humouris rennen 8
& ben nouȝt obedient[1] to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-
Ypocras. ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akynge & quytture
appereþ it[1] is a tokene of[1] heele / þe þridde signe a man muste
Laymen frequently apply a wrong ointment, which causes cramp, or put the injured limb in hot water, Galion. knowe in þis place, þat lewide men, seyinge akynge & swellynge 12
in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of
cerbis & swynes grecce & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe
lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of[1] þe crampe / For Galion seiþ:
þat a senewe is maad of[1] moist[1] mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16
rotiþ of[1] heete and moistnes / Also summen. for to aswage akþe as[2]
nota. a senewe þat is prickid, puttiþ þe lyme in hoot watir *[oþer ellys
[4 lf. 21, bk.] Galion. caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater[3] is þe moost greuaunce [4]to
þe senewe / Galion seiþ / Hoot watir, þouȝ it[1] aswage akþe to þe 20

[2] *as*, error for *of*; see below. [3] *mater*, error for watir.

Add. MS. 12,056. no weye he scholde nouȝt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe
euene & smeþe þat he myȝte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe
aswagyth & þe wounde gyueth sum qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf
from al manere peryle, but ȝif he do enye newe error. Of þis 24
wounde ypocras spekiþ: In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non
aparente malum, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge
woundes, ȝif no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben
y-elepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes beþ þo, to whom 28
scharpe humores rennyth & beþ nouȝt obedyent to kyndlie hete to
ben turnyde into quyter & þerefore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat
akynge sesyth & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde
[5 fol. 48 *a*] signe a man moste [5]knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne 32
akynge & swellynge in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þereto a maner
potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete,
corupyn þe lyme, & þilke corupcioun is cause of þe crampe; for
Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36
rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also sum men forto aswage þe akþe
of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,* oþer
ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,[6] þe whiche water is most grefes
to þe synwe. Galyen: hote water þowȝ it aswage akþe, to the 40

[6] hot water, insertion.

prickynge of a senewe is most greuannce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. part of his auforismus: cold is bityngе & greuous to senewis & woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowynge, but it be in a crampe wiþoute wounde / Galion seiþ in þe eende of his coment: coold is moost grenous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ[1] þanne þat an hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medicyn, lest peraunture þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wiþ stipticte, an auntre if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galion seiþ: þat it is yuele to close þe poris of a lyme þat is pricked. þe medicyn þannc muste be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to drie bodies he muste be medlid wiþ a litil enforbium, azafetida[2] is best medicyn if þou make of him enplastre, scrapinum,[3] & þe fecis[4] of a litil wex, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt [5]ech of hem bi him-silf or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis book / þou schalt nouȝt close a

Ypocras.

and the heat is as dangerous as great cold.

Galion.

Galion

N.

The pores of a wounded limb must be kept open.

R

[5 lf. 22]

[1] *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.

[2] *Asa fætida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.

[3] *Serapinum* = Sagapenum . . . A gum resin obtained from the Ferula Persica. See *Notes*. [4] *fecis*, Lat. fæces, dregs.

---

prikynge of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyth̄ sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe partyc of his Amphorismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chapitell nexte folwynge, bot it be in a crampe wiþ out wounde. Galyen seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouȝt wiþ stipticite, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galyen seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medicyne þenne most ben hote & drye, wiþ subtilite as terbentyne to moiste bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wiþ a lytel euffor-bium. Asa fetida is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym emplaster, scrapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be hymself oþer opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techynge of þese medycines in þe Antitodarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouȝt closen

Add. MS. 12,056.

The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfiȝtly clensid & heelid, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galion telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tisilies[1] clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdynge oynement þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do[2] comen out quytture wiþ hoote medicyns sotil & driynge, & nouȝt wiþ moist medicyns, þat man schulde not haue be deed /

.Galion.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þouȝ þat Tedericus[3] & summe opere seien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow [4]sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis[5]—þat ben wormes

Tederik.

[4 lf. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

[1] Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

[2] Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

[3] Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

[5] *maddock*, O.E. maðek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. 12,056.

a wounde, where þat þe prikynge of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfitlye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place schal nouȝt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of [6]Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to þilke prikynge a consoudynge oygnement þat was more acordynge to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatyif plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & ȝif þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreying, & noȝt wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nouȝt haue ben ded. ȝif þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þawȝ þat tedericus & summe opere sigge þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowynge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

[6 fol. 48 b.]

of[1] þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wou*n*de þe poudre þ*a*t
kepiþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ
plumaciols .iij. cornerid, & wiþ byndy*n*ge, & kepe þe lyme from
4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of[1] a senewe þou maist[1] con-
sowde þe senewe aȝen ; for þe lyme schulde han be lost[1] i*n* p*a*rtie or
in al, þe meuynge þat was brouȝt vnto hi*m* fro þe braun, for bi þat then the limb may regain
senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restori*n*ge of[1] þe its motor powers.
8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. Þou schalt nouȝt[1] drede of[1] þe
akynge þatt[1] schulde be m*aa*d of[1] prickynge[1] of[1] þe senewe, for þe
akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiynge to eiþ*er* tweyne of[1] þilke
oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt[1] make þe crampe, for þe senewe
12 is al kutt[1] atwo ne no man *[make an] obieccio*u*n wiþ Galion .*Galion.*
wordis, þ*a*t we schulden be war i*n* ioynynge p*a*rties of[1] a wou*n*de Nothing should enter
togid*er*e *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde noȝt entre wiþynne þe into the wound.
lippes of a wounde, þat betþ y-brought togedre] To þilke abiec-
16 c*i*ou*n* we answeren : þ*a*t þe stipticite [2]of[1] þe rosis & þe oile þ*a*t was [[2] lf. 23]
nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of[1] þe wormes of[1] þe erþe remeuen þe akþe
of[1] þe senewis & al þe harm þat[1] schulde come of[1] þe ilke sowynge.

If[1] þ*a*t a senewe were wou*n*did i*n* lenkþe, he mai wel & liȝtliche

[1] *prickynge of þe senewe.* The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

---

20 Maddokkys, þ*a*t beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and Add. MS.
caste aboute þe wou*n*de þe poudre þ*a*t kepyth þe sowynge a day 12,056.
o*þ*er two after*w*ard, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernel-
lyde & wiþ[3] byndynge, & kepe þe lyme fro*m* swellynge, ffor by
24 swyche a man*er*e sowynge of þe synwe þ*o*u maiste consoude þe
synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in p*a*rty o*þ*e*r* in al the
meuynge, þ*a*t was y-brow*w*ȝt to hy*m* fro*m* þe brayn, for by þilke
synwe þ*a*t lyme may rekeue*r*en hys felynge, & so þe restoryng*e* of
28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & faster*e*. Ne þ*o*u ne schalt
noȝt drede of þe akynge þ*a*t scholde be made of þe prekynge of þe
nelde, for þe akþe schal be don awey by one leggynge to o*þ*e*r*e
tweyne of þilke oyle ; ne swyche man*er*e akþe may noȝt make þe
32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an
obiectiou*n* wiþ galyens wordys, þ*a*t we scholde be war*e* in ioyninge
þe p*a*rtyes of a wou*n*de togedre, *þ*a*t non here ne oyle ne scholde
noȝt entr*e* wiþynne þe lippes [4]of a wou*n*de, þ*a*t beþ y-brouȝt to- [[4] fol. 49 *a*]
36 gedre.* To þilke obiectiou*n* we answeren, þ*a*t þe stipticite of þe
roses & þe oyle þ*a*t was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys
of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þ*a*t
scholde come*n* of þilke sewynge. ȝif þat a synwe were wou*n*dede
40 in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtlyche y-soudyde togedire, wiþ

[3] *wiþ* above line.

The wounded limb must be kept from swelling.

be sowdid togidere wiþ ioynynge of lippis, & wiþ þe sowynge & wiþ þe kepinge of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde here in þis place: þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more

Nota.

profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4 & neþeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Neþeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be ȝeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne

If there is swelling, and if the wound is purulent, apply a mundificative, and keep the wound tented.

þat þer is wiþ him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8 of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe puncture were vndir,[1] þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie him abrood on a lynnen clooþ & leie it aboue þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,[2] & 12 þilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir[3] þat,

[4 lf. 23, bk.]

a mundificatif medicyne

þat ilke wounde be [4]weel dried. A mundificatijf medicyn of senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat ℥ .iij. smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem slili þat þei 16 brenne nouȝt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wiþ a spature;[5] & þanne putte þerto ℥ j. of whit terebentyne; & if þou mowe finde noon whiȝt terebentyne, þanne waische oþere

[1] *undir*, mistake for *undo*. See below. [2] *lynynge*, for *declynynge*.
[3] *undir þat*, donec. [5] *spatur*, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ioynynge of þe lippys & wiþ sowynge & wiþ kepynge of þe lym, þat 20 he scholde[6] noȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & naþeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat beþ woundyde from swellynge. 24 Naþeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapyteH of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wiþ hym a swellynge. ȝif a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe 28 punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, & leye hym abrod on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboue þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most declynynge; & þilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32 akþe, vndire þat þat þilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere: R. mel rosat colat ℥ iii smal floure of barly ℥, & medle hem togedre & boyle hem slyȝly þat þey brenne noȝt, & remywe hem from þe 36 fyre & bete hem togedre longe wiþ a spator, & þenne put þere to ℥. of whyte terbentyne, & ȝif þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

[6] *scholde*, error for *swelle*, or it belongs to: *scalle*, *scalde*, *scalled*, *scab*. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne *with* cold watir til it be whiȝt, & whane *þat* be þis medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte *in* þe same medicyn a litil poudre of fra*n*kencense mastik & sau*n*dragou*n*, medle
4 he*m* togid*er*e & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & wh*an*ne *þat* it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex *in* good strong wiyn het hoot til it be p*er*fiȝtli al hool, & if *þat* þ*er* leue ony hardnes *in* meuynge, aft*er* *þat* it is hool, þa*n*ne þou schalt vse þe techinge *þat* schal be
8 ȝouen to þee *in* þe laste tretis *þat* schal be antidotarie *in* þe chapitle of medicyns mollificatyues; þ*er*e þou schalt fynde þe man*er* how þou schalt helpe best lymes *þat* be*n* heelid and mou*n* not riȝt weel meuen /

Any remaining stiffness of the limb may be removed by a mollificative medicine.

Þe firste[1] techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of
12 a wou*n*de m*aa*d *in* boon /

Cm. 4m. Off wounds made yn the bonis

Wha*n*ne *þat* wou*n*dis be*n* so depe *þat* [2]oonly fleisch is not wou*n*did but þe boon *þat* is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þa*n*ne a man muste biholde, wher *þat* þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme
16 it may happe *in* þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys of þe armes. And þa*n*ne þilke wounde is ful p*er*ilous; & nameli if þe boonys of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so *þat* þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes

[2 If. 24]

It is dangerous if the thigh bone or the bone of the upper arm has been cut in two.

[1] *firste*, mistake for *furþe*.

---

20 wassche it wyth̄ colde watyr*e*, tyl it be whyt; & whe*n*ne *þat* by þis medycine þe wou*n*de is almost dryc, þe*n*ne put in þe same medycine a lite smal poudr*e* of franke ensence, mastik*e*, & sank dragou*n*, & medle he*m* to gedre, & leye abone þe wou*n*de tyl it be al hol; &
24 wha*n*ne *þat* it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol p*er*fitlyche. & ȝif *þat* þ*er*e leue enye hardnesse [3]in mevynge, aft*er*e *þat* it is hol, þe*n*ne þou schalt vse the techynge *þat* schal be geue*n* to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal
28 be antitodarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þ*er*e þou schalt fynde þe man*er*e how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, *þat* beþ y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 49 b]

The furþe techynge of þe firste tretys is of helynge of
32 a wou*n*de y-makyde in bon.

Whe*n*ne *þat* wou*n*des beþ so depe *þat* only þe flesch̄ is nouȝt y-wou*n*dyde, but þe bon *þat* is vndire þe flesch̄ & þe synwe, þe*n*ne a ma*n* most byholde whe*þ*ere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes
36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys of þe Arme, & þe*n*ne þylke wou*n*de is ful p*er*ylouse; and namlye, ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, fro*m* þe schuldre to þe elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so *þat* þe marye gon out. But ofte tymes

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt al atwo ouertwert ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt al atwo but sum of his substaunce is don awey, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon awey or ellis he hangiþ togidere / A general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but first pleynerliche bi repeire[1]; for þe boon may neuere be[2] wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir; but in summe children, for þe age[3] is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiþer lost, þat men clepen [4] poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a[5] maner þing þat is restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if þat ilk mater þat is restorid be nyȝ as hard as is þe boon, it is clepid porus sarcoides / & if þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if þat a neische fleisch were & a moist nouȝt regenered vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt atwo altogidere ouerþwert ouer, þat

The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

Nota

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[4 lf. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one:

caro poroides.

[1] *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.
[2] *be* has to be cancelled.
[3] *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.
[5] *a*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

on bon of þe schyne, oþere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo twartofere, & naþeles afterward may be restoryde; oþer a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce oþere he ys don al aweye, oþere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch shal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consouded, for his matere was þe sperne of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for þe nyȝte of tyme þat þey were sperne (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken oþere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoydes oþere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thynge þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch & nesschere þen þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye[6] as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoydes; & ȝif þat þilke mater be nouȝt harde, but sum[7]what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch fflesch & a moist were noȝt regenered vpon bonys þat ben set togedre, a man scholde noȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[7 fol. 50 *a*]

[6] MS. neþe.

þou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowynge, where þou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heelid þat is out of ioynte I-kutt atwo &
4 to-broken / & if a wounde[1] be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if ony pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe oþere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if þou myȝt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristynge doun þilke pece wiþ
8 sum instrument acordynge þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the [2]schap of þe lyme mai dwelle[3] faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece awey & regenere in þe place of
12 þe boon þat þat[4] was lost a repeirement / For þouȝ þat ypocras & Galion tellen þat it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holowȝ eicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but riȝt
16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ℥ ij. flour of fenegrek, .℥. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat þou holde a pleynere repeirement *[& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere
20 brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-

A portion of the bone can either be refastened,

[2 If. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudur incarnatyff[5]

[1] *wounde*, erroneously for *boon*.
[2] *hool*, cancelled after *dwelle*.
[3] The second *þat* has to be cancelled.
[4] *incarnatyff* in a later hand.

---

two al togedre twartofere, þat þou brynge togedre, & bynde the partyes of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyȝte chapyteH folwynge, where þou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat
24 is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ȝif þat a bon be noȝt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ȝif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ȝif þou myȝte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with
28 þrustynge don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordynge þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ȝif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon,
32 do þat pece awey, & þenne regenere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Ffor þowȝ þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe eicatriee to be alwey, naþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese
36 pores may be mendyde noȝt a lytel, but ryȝt myche. Þis is þe poudre: Take ffrank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ℥. ij., flour of ffenngreke, ℥, ß, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue
40 a plenere repeyrment *& a restauracioun. Þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere fflesch ouere þe repeyrment with *generatyffes, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of þe bodi saf þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf // 4

¶ Capm vm Wondis made with conteschoun l. h.

THe fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis of woundis þat ben maad wiþ smytynge of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytynge of an hors, or wiþ ony oþir þing semblable. 8

[1 lf. 25, bk.] must be attended to in a different manner to incised wounds.

All the soft parts are bruised

with or without the skin being divided.

To hem happen greet difference [1]fro woundis þat ben maad wiþ kuttynge, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eiþir arowe prickynge; & in opere maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þoȝ þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & principal entencioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis 12 chapitle it acordiþ nouȝt, for in smytynge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe boon aȝenstondiþ, & on þe ouer part [2]of þe þing þat is smyten knyttiþ nouȝt / Wherfore it is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a 16 wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing

[2] The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: *þe þynge þat smyteþ & kutteþ noȝt.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

dificatyfes, & consolidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst toforn. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe 20 bonys off the hed y schal make a chapytle by hym-selff.

[3 fol. 50 b]

Þe ffye Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of woundis [3]that beth y-mad with smytinge. 24

The woundys þat beþ mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytynge of a staf, opere ston, oþer fallynge, opere wiþ smytynge of an hors, oþer wiþ enye thynge semblable to hem, habbith gret differens from woundis þat beþ y-made wiþ kuttynge: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore 28 arwe prikynge, & in opere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For þowȝ þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe princypal Intencioun of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyth noȝt, ffor in smytinge, þe flesch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; 32 for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon aȝeyne stonde, & on þe vtter part þe þynge þat smyteth & kutteþ noȝt, wherefore it is necessarie, if þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat beþ bytwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth, scholde be brusyde; & 36

þat[1] smytiþ, schulde be brusid, & o*þer*while þe fleisch & þe o*þere* consimile me*m*bris be*n* brusid wiþoute wou*n*de / Wherfore þe curis of[1] boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If[1] *þat*[1] a leche wolde enforse
4 hi*m* to ioyne togid*ere* wiþ consolidatiuis þe wou*n*de *þat*[1] is maad wiþ smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatif[1] muste be vnd*er* þe wou*n*de; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme & brynge hi*m* to putrifacci*o*u*n*, but[1] if[1] *þat* kyn*d*e were so myȝty,
8 *þat*[1] he myȝte eftsoone opene þilke wou*n*de, *þat* was consowdid bi a sori leche[1]; or wiþ[2] a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo[3]sicioun & knowe helpe, wiþ *pro*pre eir[4] to rectifien þe corrupcioun of[1] þilke lyme / What[1] schalt[1] þou þanne do? Þou muste loke whe*þer* *þat*[1] þe
12 bodi be ful of[1] wickide humouris, ei*þer* be clene; if[1] *þat*[1] he be ful late hi*m* blood, if[1] alle p*ar*ticuler þingis acorde*n*, as vertu, age, complexiou*n* & consuetude; & þese þi*n*gis moten alwey[5] taken i*n* mynde, þouȝ alwey þei be not[1] I-nempned & namely v*er*tu; & he be
16 not[1] strong[1] & alle o*þere* þingis acorden, þou schalt[1] not[1] lete blood, but[1] þou maist ventosen, if[1] *þat* it[1] be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] * þe wombe if[1] *þat*[1] he be costif[6]; & if[1] *þat* he be feble, & þe brosure were i*n* þe ou*er* p*ar*ti of[1] þe bodi, voide þe fecis of[1] his wo*m*be bi clisterie. &

Such wounds, when joined too soon, will slough.

[3 If. 26]

If the patient is plethoric use blood-letting;

if he is feeble, cupping and purging.

Nota

Clisterie

[1] *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Dict.*, sorry Laten.
[2] *wiþ*, mistake for *þat*.
[4] *eir*, read *eur*. [5] *be* wanted after *alwey*.
[6] *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

---

20 o*þer*whyle þe flesch & þe o*þere* *con*simele membris be*þ* brusyde wi*t*out wou*n*de, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this chapytle. ȝif *þat* a leche wolde enforce hy*m* to Iune to gedire wi*th* *con*solidatyfes þe wou*n*de *þat* is mad wiþ smytinge, nedys[7]
24 quyt*er* & corupcioun by þilke *con*solidatyff[1], most be vndire þe wou*n*de; þe whiche quyt*er* scholde coru*m*pe þylke lyme & brynge hym to putrefactiou*n*, but ȝif *þe* kynde were so myȝtye, *þat* he myȝte eftesonys opyne þylke wou*n*de, *þat* was *con*sonded by a sorye leche,
28 o*þere* *þat* a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocisiou*n*, & conþe helpe wiþ *pro*pre cure to rettefien þe corupcioun off[1] þilke lyme. What schaltou þanne do? Þ*ou* most loke whe*þere* that þe body be ful of yuell humo*res*, o*þer* be clene; ȝif *þat* he be ful, lete hy*m*
32 blod, ȝif alle p*ar*tikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, co*m*plexiou*n* & *con*suetude; & þese þynges *þou* most alweye taken in þy mynde, þowȝ alweye þey be*n* nouȝt y-nempnyde, & namlye v*er*tue; & he be nouȝt stronge & alle o*þere* þynges acorden, þou schalt nouȝt lete*n*
36 blod, bot þou [8]maiste ventosen, ȝif *þat* it be necessarie, o*þer* ellys lose * þe wombe ȝif *þat* he be costyff[1]; & ȝif *þat* he be feble, & the brosure were in þe ouere p*ar*ty of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[8 fol. 21 *a*]

[7] MS. nedyth.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie partie of þe veyne, bryngyng norischinge to þe lyme þat was hirt; & þilke veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie, þat I hane tauȝt þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is clensid, if þat þe brosour be wiþoute þe wounde, anoynte þe membre þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, & bynde it softly; [1]for ofte-tymes it nediþ noon oþer eir[2] / For þis medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendiþ him fro putrefaccioun. & þoȝ þat þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater from rotynge, neþeles it defendiþ myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe mater mai not be defendid from putrifaceioun, but sum partie þerof pnirifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place. & his eure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes[3] & of exitours / But if[4] þat a brusour were wiþ a wounde, anoynte aboute þe wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place, ne it lettiþ nouȝt þe corrupcioun to spredeu eiþer to be drawen abrood; & it castiþ to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

concussio membri neruosi cura l. h. oile Roses

[1 lf. 26, bk.]

An antiseptic powder.

Treatment of a contusion, if the wound is open.

[2] *eir*, read *eur*.

[3] Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

[4] *if*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wombe by elisterye. & ȝif þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod on þe contrarye party of þe veyne, bryngynge norysschynge to þe lyme þat was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, ȝif þat þou knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y hane tauȝte þe in þis same boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, ȝif þat þe brosure be wiþout þe wounde, anoynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat begynneþ to han a postum, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte tymes it nedyth non oþer eure. For þis medycyne fastnyth þe place, & defendyth hym from putrefacioun, & þowȝ þis medycine mowe noȝt letten alle þe mater from rotynge, naþeles yt deffendyth myche of þe same matere fro rotynge; & ȝif þat al þe matere may nouȝt be defendyde fro putrefactioun, but sum partye þereof putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place. & his eure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures. But ȝif þat þe brosure were wiþ a wounde, anoynte about þe wonde oþere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, & caste aboue þe forseyde poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ noȝt corupcioun to spredyn, oþere to be drawe abrod, & it castith to þe wounde þe corupt mater, þat

place þat is brusid / Wiþinne þe wounde leie þe ȝelke of an ey, wiþ
oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wiþ lint.[1] Leid[2] aboue þe N
wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of
4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R
þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe
quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense [3]þe wounde, aftir þe [[3] 16. 27]
clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a
8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatriȝatiuis /
But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand Treatment of a contusion, if the injured limb is full of nerves, *e.g.* hand or foot.
ouþer þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no
wounde; but þouȝ þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid,
12 leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, & olium Rosarum
aboue þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine
I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnen cloþis. & make
a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat N plaster
16 is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of
humouris ceessen not / & þouȝ þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go
not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe
swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of
20 mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / R

[1] *lint.* *Prompt. Parv.*, schauynge of lynnen elothe.
[2] *leid*, mistake for *leie*.

---

is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wiþynne þe wounde leye þe ȝolke of Add. MS. 12,056.
an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes oþere ellys wiþ lynte; & leye
aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off foure partyes of water & o
24 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe
medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be
aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe
wounde, aftere þe clensynge regenere, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou
28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,
maturatyfes, & ȝicatrisatifes. [4]But ȝif þat þe membre þat was [[4] fol. 51 b]
y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oþer þe fot, þou schalt noȝt
chaunge þy cure ȝif þat þere be no wounde; but þawȝ þat þere be a
32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye noȝt þere þe
potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre
of mirtilles, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe
abrod betwene tweye cloþes lynnen. & make enplastre of pych,
36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot
oþere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours seseþ.
& þawȝ þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go noȝt awey fro þis cure;
& whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyd, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,
40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with

Galion Þis cure is ap*reued* bi galion, & I haue p*reued* þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis þat han enpostymes & be distemp*er*ed // 4

[[1] lf. 27, bk.]

Off wound*es* Impostemede.

¶ Capm vjm If the wound is tumorous or distempered, the tumour and the "dyscrasia" must be removed first.

1 A Wounde þat[t] haþ enpostym or an yuel discrasia*m*—þat[t] is to seie out[t] of[f] kyn*de* distemp*er*id, eiþ*er* to cold eiþ*er* to hoot[t]— he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but[t] first[t] he[2] be 8 aswagid i*n* þe yuel discurciour be amen*d*id / & as I haue seid i*n* anoþ*er* place, it[t] is p*r*ofitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche, if þat[t] he mowe defende þe lymes þat[t] ben wou*n*did fro*m* enpostyme & fro*m* an yuel disc*r*asie. For þa*n*ne a leche schal kepe þe canou*n* 12

Galion. o[3] galion, þat[t] is oon of[f] þe .iiij. canou*n*s; oon is to kepe lymes i*n* her owne kyndely complexciou*n*. For wou*n*dis mou*n* not[t] ellis be heelid, but[t] if[f] þei be brou3t first[t] into her owne kynde / & a wou*n*de mai be kept[t] from apostyme & an yuel disc*r*asie if[f] þat[t] þe leche be 16 ku*n*ny*n*ge & do his deuer, & þe sike ma*n* be obedient[t] to þe leche / þe leche muste loke if[f] þat þ*er* go blood y-now3 out[t] at[t] þe wou*n*de;

If necessary & if[f] þat[t] þe wou*n*de haue not[t] bled blood y-now3, þe pacient[t] muste

[2] The correct version is given by Add. MS.
[3] *o*, mistake for *of*.

Add. MS. 12,056. barly mele, y-sayd in the wou*n*de of synwes. Þis cure ys aprefyde 20 by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medycine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of Wou*n*des þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wou*n*de þat hath aposteme oþ*er* an yuel discrasie—þat is to 24 sigge, out of kynde distempride, oþ*er*e to hote oþ*er*e to cold, he may no3t ben helyd, ne schal nou3t ben heled, but first þe posteme be aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in an oþ*er*e place, yt is p*r*ofitable to þe syke man, & worschipful to þe 28 leche, 3if þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ wou*n*dyde fro eny postemys, & fro an euyH discrasie. For þe*n*me a leche schal kepe þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn lymes in here owne kendlye c*om*plexiou*n*. For wou*n*dys mowe 32 no3t ellys ben y-helyd, but 3if þey ben brou3t first to her*e* owne kynde, & þe wou*n*de may be kepte fro*m* aposteme & an yueH discrasie, 3if þat þe leche be ku*n*nynge & do hys deffere, & þe syke

[[4] fol. 52 *a*] man be obedyent to þe leche. Þe leche mot loke [4]3if þat þ*er*e haue 36 go blod ynow3 out of þe wou*n*de; & 3if þat the wou*n*de haue no3t bled blod ynow3, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþ*er*e ellys ben

be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler
þingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a conenable dietynge, as schal be
told in þe chapitle of dietynge; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,
4 ℥ j. of bole armoniak distemperid wiþ oile of [1]rosis, & a litil vinegre:
as þicke as hony tempere it / & if þat þe tyme of þe ȝeer were
hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,[2]
penywort,[3] virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be
8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiþer þe
schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wiþ
an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seiþ: þer is no
þing more noious to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a
12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe
feuere as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / Þe woundid man
muste absteyne him after þe chapitle of dietynge techiþ, & boþe þe
sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteyne
16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] *in tyme
of menstrue,[4] ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike
man schal go to priuy;[5] & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in

use blood-letting or cupping, prescribe a proper diet and a deffensiuum. [1 If. 2s]

Put the injured limb in a proper position.

Galion.

The patient and the physician must live chastely.

Regulate the patient's stool.

[2] *morel*, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.
[3] *penywort*, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.
[4] See Notes.
[5] *privy*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyn, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

---

ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, Add. MS.
20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotynge, as schal be tolde in þe 12,056.
Chapiteꝗ of dyotynge; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: ℥ j of
bol Armonyake, distemperid wiþ oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to
þe þiknesse of hony; & ȝif þat þe tyme of þe ȝere were hot, put to
24 þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, nyȝtschode, peny-
wort, virge pastoris, opere sum oþer colde erbe; & bynde noȝt þe
lyme to harde, ne lete noȝt þe lyme hongyn; but ȝif it be þe arme,
honge him aboute þe nekke; & ȝif it be þe fot oþer þe schyne, lete
28 hym ligge; & ȝif þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge
of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth: þere is noþynge more
grefes, þan ys akynge & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makiþ
sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffenyre as a welle, & to
32 þe body as an Ovyn. Þe woundyde man most absteynen hym,
aftere þat þe chapiteꝗ of dyetynge techiteꝗ; & boþe þe syke man &
þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteynen hem from
fleschlye knowlachynge of a womman, ne a womman *in tyme of
36 menstrewe, ne loke noȝt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke
man schal schyte, & ȝif he may noȝt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie

If a tumour develops,

[1 lf. 28, bk.]

use a maturatif,

℞

and remove the pus.

If the tumour is caused by the pricking of a nerve use an ointment.

þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takiþ, make him a clisterie ouþer a suppositorie oonys ech day. & if þou myȝt not wiþ alle þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for þe lyme is [1]feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen[2] to materen þe swellynge wiþ potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or ellis wiþ þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; ℥.iij.; of wheete flour ℥.iij.; of flour of lynseed ℥ j.; of flour of fenegrek dj.[3] ℥.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wiþ a spature; & þis maturatif leie on a lynnen clooþ, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture, if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge; & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not þerto þis potage maturatijf, but wiþ þe oynement of oile of rosis, & of oþere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis /

[2] *bigynnen*, mistake for *bigynne*. [3] *dimidium*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

maturatyff

[4 fol. 52 *b*]

after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oþer a suppositorye onys iche day. & ȝif þou maiste noȝt with alle þese þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oþer ellys with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote of holy hokke; seþe hem [4]wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, & take a pounde off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle ℥ iij, of whete flour ℥ iij, of flour of lynsed .℥. j, of flore vynegreke ℥ ß, of erbys i-stamped lb.[5] ß; & boylle alle þese togedire, in a pan ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wiþ a spator; & þis maturatyff leye on a lynne clothe, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, ȝif þou maist, ben y-cast to þe wounde; & ȝif it may noȝt ben y-cast to þe wounde, opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde chapyteH of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat ȝif a posteme were for þe prikynge of a synwe, ne leye noȝt þereto þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of oþer þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. Þou schalt

[5] MS. lj

þou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, [1] if þat þou [1 lf. 29]
seest þe skyn þat is aboue þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge,
þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out 1. A hot dyscrasia,
4 of þe wounde[2] a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie þou schalt
helpe wiþ coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & Nota
vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which þou schalt fynde in þe
antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere ecrbis colde.

8 & þou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiȝtnes eiþer þe 2. a cold dyscrasia,
wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towchinge, & discrasies l. h.
whanne þat þe quytture is þicke; þe which discrasie þou schalt
remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,[3] oile of
12 laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hoote oilis /

A moist discracie þou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe 3. a moist dyscrasia,
place, & bi abounddaunce of whiȝt liquide rotenes, þe which þou
schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waischinge of wiyn & hony R
16 togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie,[4] gallis & þe ryndis of
some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf /

þe drie discrasie þou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & 4. a dry dyscrasia.
þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe
20 quytture be þinne; þe which discrasie þou schalt [5] helpe: with [5 lf. 29, bk.]

[2] MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.
[3] *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.
[4] *balaustie*. Balaustium, the floure of the wylde Pomgranate. Halle. *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

---

y-knowe þe euyH dyscrasie of a wounde, ȝif þat þou sest the schyn Add. MS.
þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe 12,056.
wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly ȝif þat þere come out of þe
24 wounde a sotyH qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye þou schalt helpen
with coldynge þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with
vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche þou schalt fynde in þe
Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & þou schalt knowe a
28 colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oþer þe wannesse of þe place, &
whanne þe place ys colde in touchynge, & whanne þat þe quyter is
thykke; the whiche discrasye þou schalt remeffen, by þe vncture of
hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so
32 oþer hote oyles. A moiste discrasie þou schalt knowe by þe
nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Abundaunce of whit lyquyde
rotnesse, þe whiche þou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with
wasschynge of wyn & honye togedres, in [6] þe whiche buþ y-sode [6 fol. 53 a]
36 balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, oþer alle oþer
some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye þou schalt knowe by þe
smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes &
litel quyter, ȝif þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye þou

castynge on of hoot water til *þat* þe lyme wexe reed, & wiþ an oynement *þou* muste[1] grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon of a calf, & wiþ plenteuousnes of good mete *þat* norischiþ: as þe broþis of fleisch, & temperate wiyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4 & wiþ reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme *þat* is hirt; & alwey to þis techinge take hede *þat* as soone as a membre is brouȝt to his kyndeli disposicioun, anoon aȝenstondiþ[2] wiþ contrarious medicyns, & turne aȝen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8 þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or ellis haue an yuel diserasie; but first remeue þilke diserasie, or *þat* þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis *þat* schulden ben heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wiþoute 12 helynge of *þat* opere, first we schulen heelen him, *þat* mai nouȝt be heelid wiþonte *þat* oper helyng, as þe apostyme eiþer þe diserasie / Þus Auicenne techiþ in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book. Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, *þat* whanne þe 16 accidentis ben asesid turne aȝen to þe principal cure //

As soon as the dyscrasia is removed, try to heal the wound itself.

Auicen

[1] *þou muste*, mistake for *of moiste*.
[2] *aȝenstondiþ*, mistake for *aȝenstonde*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

schalt helpen wiþ castynge on of hote water, tyl *þat* þe lyme wexe rede, & with an oyntynge of moiste greeys, as hennys, gosys & dokys, & *þe* marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20 *þat* noryssehyth, as þe brothys of fleseh, & temperat wyn, & rere eyren, & smale fysseches, & o*þere* gode þynges, & with reste and with softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme *þat* is y-hurte; & alwey to þis techynge take hede, *þat* as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his kendlye dysposicioun, anon aȝeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24 cine, & turne aȝeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke noȝt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde, o*þere* ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke diserasye ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne *þat* tweye þynges *þat* 28 seholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe noȝt ben y-helyde withouten helynge of þe o*per*, ffirst we schulle helyn hym, *þat* may noȝt be helyde withouten helynge of þe o*þere*, as þe posteme o*per* þe dyserasye; & þus Avyeene techith in þe last 32 chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete noȝt þy pryncipal cure, *þat* whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne aȝeyne to þe prineypale cure.

¶ Þe .vij. chapitle of þe .iij. techinge is a wounde maad with a wood hound, eiþer of ony oþer venemous beest /

[1 lf. 30] [2] ¶ Capm vijm

Bite of a dog.

Ascertain whether the dog was rabid.

4 [1] BVt whanne an hound haþ biten a man, loke first if þat þe hound be wood; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe wounde as þou doist oþere comoun woundis; & if þat þe hound were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns /
8 For a wood hound fleeþ mete & water; & he renneþ hidirward & þidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise leggis; his tunge hangiþ out, but he wolde biten alle men; ne he knowiþ not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkiþ not / & if
12 þat he oþirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & oþere houndis fleen fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposiciou of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in þe blood of þe wounde, & ȝeuest it to anoþer hound to ete, he
16 wole not ete it; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al nyȝt, & on þe morowe ȝeue it to an hen; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe hen schal die /

Food saturated with blood of the wound kills other animals.

[2] Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand. *Off woundes betten with doges.*

---

20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe þridde techynge is off a wounde y-made of a wod hounde, oþere of eny oþere venymouse bestys.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, ffirste loke ȝif þat þe
24 hounde be wod; & ȝif þat þe hounde be noȝt wood, hele þe wounde as þou dost oþere comyn woundys; & ȝif þat þe hounde were wood, þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo[3]siciouns. Ffor a wod hounde fleyth mete, & ffleyth watere, & oþerwhyle he dyeth
28 whenne þat he seþ water; & he rennyth hydirwarde & þedirwarde, as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggys, hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth nouȝt þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth noȝt; & ȝif þat
32 he oþerewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & oþere houndys flen from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by dysposiciou of þe same wounde, for ȝif þat þou wetyst a crumme bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oþer hounde to
36 etyn, he wyl noȝt etyn yt, & ȝif þe hounde etyþ yt he wyll deyen; oþere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al nyȝt, & on þe morwe ȝif yt to an henne, sche wyl noȝt etyn hyt; & ȝif sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

[3 fol. 53 b.]

If the dog was rabid, withdraw the blood from the wound by cupping, cauterization, [1 lf. 30, bk.] and attrahent remedies.

And anoon as þou woost þat þe houn*d* was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wou*n*de, & drawe out þe myche blood out of þe wou*n*de, & aftirward drawe abrood þe wou*n*de; & aboue al o þ*e*re þi*n*g, bre*n*nynge of hoot yren to þe grou*n*d [1]of þe wou*n*de is moost pr*o*fitable. & leie aboue þe wou*n*de actractiuis, to drawe out þe venym / Su*m*me of þese actractiuis ben symple, & su*m*me compound / Symple beþ: þe lyu*e*re of þe same wood hou*n*d þat boot þe man, garlik stampid, salt fisch, aischis of wiyn lies, appoponak þat is wondirful, þe leeues of a gourde,[2] & þe rote of fenegrek, þe gile[3] of fisch, & amptyn I-sta*m*pid / þese medicyns be*n* compou*n*d: vreyne of a ȝong man wiþ nitre; ou þ*e*r mintis sta*m*pid[4] wiþ salt, & distemp*e*rid wiþ vynegre, & m*aa*d an enplast*e*r. Ano þ*e*r medicyn compou*n*d: take floris eris & salt, of ech .x. p*a*rties, & þe fatte of a calf, & of a wolf þat sufficiþ, & make a plastre / Ano þ*e*r: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plast*e*r / þis wou*n*de schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe place. I*n* ano þ*e*r man*e*r regimen / Vndirstonde þat þe man þat is bite*n*, schal not be lete blood i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrood bi o þ*e*re lymes; ne þou schalt ȝeue hi*m* no laxatif, lest it drawe þe venym to þe e*n*trailis wiþi*n*ne; but þou schalt sette

Simple remedies. Haue it [?]

Compound remedies.

Another treatment:

[2] *gourde*, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

[3] *gile*, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Diet.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

[4] *stampid*, in margin.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wou*n*de & drawe out myche blod out of þe wo*n*de, & aft*er*warde drawe abrod þe wou*n*de; & abou*e*n alle o þ*e*re thynge bre*n*nynge of hote eyren to þe depþe of þe wou*n*de ys most pr*o*ffytable, & aftere leye aboue þe wou*n*de attractyfes, to drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some beþ *com*ponyd. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hou*n*de þ*a*t bote þe ma*n*, garlyk*e* y-stampyde, salt fysseh, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffynegrek*e*, þe gele of fysseches, & amptes y-sta*m*pyde. þese medycynes ben *com*ponyde: vryne of a ȝonge ma*n*, wi*th* nytre o þ*e*r myntes, i-stampyde wi*th* salt & distempred wi*th* vynegre, & y-mad in emplastre. An o þ*e*re medicyne *com*ponyd: R floris eris & salt an*a* ten p*a*rties, & þe fat of a calff twelf p*a*rtyes, & make a plastre. An o þ*e*re: take schepys talwȝ & buttre, & make emplastre. þis wou*n*de schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis schal be do about þe place. [5]In an o þ*e*re man*e*re regimen vnd*ir*stande, þ*a*t þe ma*n* þ*a*t is y-bete ne schal nouȝt be lete blod in the bygy*n*nynge, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by o þ*e*re lymes. Ne þou ne schalt ȝif hy*m* no*n* laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles wi*th*ynne; but þ*o*u schalt setten on þe place a stronge

[5 fol. 54 *a*]

vpon þe place a strong' ventuse, as it' is seid tofore, [1] þat' it' mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And wha*n*ne þat' .iij. daies be*n* passid, it' is not' yuele to lete blood & to p*ur*ge w*ith* a litil p*ur*gaciou*n*, þat' p*ur*giþ þe malencolie, as w*ith* decocciou*n* epithimu*m*,[2] wiþ gotis whey; & norischiþ hi*m* w*ith* dieti*n*g', þat' fattiþ & makiþ hi*m* glad & bliþe; & waische his heed w*ith* decocciou*n* of' wate*r*, þat' þe feet' & þe heed of a weþ*er* were soden y*m*ne. Ne late hi*m* not' þirsten ne hu*n*gren, suffren, ne trauei*le*n; & so if' þat' god wole, þou maist' hi*m* kepe from pe*r*ile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take oþ*er*e symple medicyns or compou*n*ned / *— — Take þe ayschis of' crabbis I-brent i*n* an ouene .iiij. pa*r*ties, of' frankencense vij. pa*r*ties, & make he*m* into a poudre / þe pacient' schal take ech dai of' þis poudre .ij .℥. / Anoþ*er* medicyn: take þe poude*r* of' crabbis brent' vj. pa*r*ties, gencian .iij pa*r*ties, te*r*re sigillate oon pa*r*tie, make poudre / If' þat' þou were not' at' þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge, & it' bigy*n*ne to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouȝtis, soruful metynge i*n* his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot' not' whi; & if' me*n* aske hi*m* ony þi*n*g', & ȝeueþ no good answere þe*r*to, & fley lith,[3] & he haþ alle oþ*er*e signes of' malencolie, [4] þa*n*ne ȝeue to hi*m* a

use first cupping, [1 lf. 31]

then blood-letting and a purgative.

Keep the patient in good spirits.

During a month he must take every day a simple or a compound medicine.

If the patient seems melancholy,

[4 lf. 31, bk.]

[2] *Epithemum.* See Notes.

[3] *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth liȝt.*

---

ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whe*n*ne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouȝt yuele to leten blod, & to purge w*ith* a lyȝt purgaciou*n*, þat purgith þe maly*n*colye, as w*ith* decocciou*n* of Epytemu*m*, w*ith* gotys wheyȝ; & norissche hy*m* w*ith* dyetynge, þat fattyth hy*m* & make glad & bliþe; & wassche hys hed w*ith* decocciou*n* of wate*r*, þat þe fet & þe hed of a weþire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hy*m* nouȝt þrustyn, ne suffren hungyre ne trauеth, & so ȝif þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym fro*m* pe*r*yle. & eu*er*y day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken oþ*er*e symple medycynes, oþ*er* componed. *Symple buþ: Asa ffetida. Asa dulsis, polm,[5] te*r*ra sigillata, Wermot, Kockuth,[6] mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: *R þe asches of crabbys y-brent in an Offyn .iiij pa*r*tyes, of ffrankensens vij pa*r*tyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre ʒ .ij wiþ wyn. An oþ*er*: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj pa*r*tyes, of gencyane iij. pa*r*ties, te*r*re sigillate one pa*r*tie, make poudre. ȝif þat þou were noȝt at þe bygy*n*ny*n*ge, & he bygy*n*neth to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouȝtes, schrewyde metynge in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot noȝt why, & ȝif me*n* aske hy*m* enye þynge he ȝeuyth no gode answere þe*r*e to, & fleyþ lyȝt, & he hath alle oþ*er*e signes of malencolye, þa*n*ne ȝif to hy*m* a medycine y-made

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *polium*, Paley. [6] *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him troches composed of cantharides and spices,

medieyn m*aa*d of' eantarides / Take old grete eantarides, & do awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis[1] I-elensid, .℥ j.; safro*n*, spikenard, elowis, canel, .an*a* .℥ s'.; bete he*m* weel, & make of' he*m* smale ballis, þ*at*' ceh bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at þre tymes, at' ech tyme þe weiȝte of' þre eornys of' wheete, til þ*at*' he pisse blood; þ*a*nne he sehal be saaf' / For whanne þ*o*u art' sikir, heele þe wou*n*dis aft*er* þ*at*' fourti daies ben passid, i*n* þe same man*er*. If' þ*at*' þe wou*n*de were m*aa*d of' bitin*g*e of' an eddre or of' ony o*per* venemous beest', þe leehe sehal take heede to drawe abrod þe wou*n*de, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out' miche blood; & it is miche worþ to enuyrou*n*ne þe plaee aboute þ*at*' is biten wiþ brome I-stampid / For if' þ*at*' þe p*r*ickynge be i*n* þe foot' or i*n* þe hand, if' þ*o*u enuyrou*n*ne þe arme w*ith* brome, it' lettiþ þe venym to go vpward; & ȝeue hi*m* þe medieyns writ*en* aboue, & also lete þe wou*n*de be open, til þe venym be exeludid /

give him troches composed of cantharides and spices,

R
N

until he mieturates blood.

Treat bites from venomous beasts similarly.

¶ Cap^m viij^m

THe .viij chapitle of þe þridde techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis of a wou*n*de m*aa*d in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Wha*n*ne þ*at*' a wou*n*de is i*n* a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme is to-b*r*oke [2]atwo & dislocate—þ*at* is to seie out' of' ioynte, þ*a*nne

[2 lf. 32][3]

[1] *doesnet* above *lentis;* meaning ?

[3] Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & þe wynges ȝ. ij., lentys I-elansed ȝ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys, eanell ana ȝ. ß.—in o*per*e bokys—ipone hem wel & make of he*m* smale ballys þ*at* weyȝen j. penye wyȝt; & ȝif a ball at þre tymes, at iehe tyme þe wyȝt of vij eornys of whete, tyl þ*at* he pysse blod, for þen*n*e he sehal be saff'. Ffor when*n*e þ*o*u art sykere, hele þe [4]wou*n*de aft*er* þ*at* fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same man*er*. ȝif þ*at* a wou*n*de were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, o*per*e of eny o*per*e venymouse beste, þe leche sehal take hede to drawe abrode þe wou*n*de & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt is myche worþ to enviroun þe plaee aboute*n* þ*at* is y-betyn wiþ brome y-stampyde. Ffor ȝif þ*at* þe p*r*ikynge be in þe fot o*per*e in þe hande, ȝif þ*o*u enviroun þe arme o*per*e þe legge w*ith* brome, yt latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hy*m* þe medycines y-wryten aboue, & also tryaele, & lete þe wou*n*de be opyne, tyl al þe venym be escludyde.

[4 fol. 54 b]

The viij. Chapytelle of þe þridde techynge of the ffirste tretys is of a wou*n*de y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiffe

Whe*n*ne þ*at*' a wou*n*de is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þ*at* is to sigge, out of joynt,

it is good *þat* þou putte *in* þe wou*n*de wh*a*nne þe blood is stau*n*chid, & also aboue þe wou*n*de þe ȝolke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, & anoi*n*te al þe lyme aboute þe wou*n*de *with* two p*a*rties of oile of rosis, & half oon p*a*rtie of vynegre maad þicke wiþ bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & *þat* þou be sikir *þat* no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe p*a*rties of þe boon *þat* is to-broke*n* or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon *in* þe wyntir, & v. *in* þe som*er*; for þ*a*nne it schal make quytture, and be sikir fro*m* swellynge; & þ*a*nne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiþ*er* þe disiu*n*cture after þe techynge *þat* schal be seid *in* þe chapitle of algebra. & if *þat* þe pr*i*ckynge eiþ*er* þe dislocaciou*n* nediþ splentis, make *þat* þe splentis & byndynge faile aboue þe wou*n*de. *þat* þou may do if *þat* þou kutte þe sple*n*tis & þe bi*n*dynge aboue þe wou*n*de *with* a knyf or a rasour, & *in* drawynge abrood þe hoole of þe wou*n*de[1] aboue þe wou*n*de wiþ a nedle, so *þat* þou maist bi *þat* hole ech day chau*n*ge þi medicyn of þe wou*n*de wiþoute choudynge[2] of þe boond *þat* þou madist first aboute þe boo[3]nys *þat* were*n* broke*n* ouþ*er* dislocate; þe which boo*n*d þou schalt nouȝt remeuen til tyme schal be teld *in* his place, but þou schalt bynde aboue þilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

R

dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed.

[3 lf. 32, bk.]

[1] *wounde*, error for *bonde*. [2] *choudynge*, error for *chongynge*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þ*a*nne it is gode *þat* þou putte in þe wou*n*de, wh*a*nne *þe* blod is y-stau*n*chyde, & also aboue þe wou*n*de, þe ȝolke of an eyȝe, *with* oyle of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wou*n*de, wiþ two p*a*rtyes of oyle of rosys, & *wiþ* half on p*a*rty of vynegre, y-made þikke *with* bol Armonyak*e*, tyl *þat* þe quyt*ure* be engendered,[4] & *þou* be sykere *þat* none Aposteme schall come. Ne take none hede to brynge to-gedere þe p*a*rties of þe bon *þat* is tobroken o*þere* dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntir*e*, & fyff in the somere; for þ*e*nne yt schal make quyter*e*, & be sykere fro*m* swellynge; & þ*e*nne brynge togedire þe brekynge o*þere* þe dysy*n*ncture after*e* þe techynge *þat* schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of **Algebra**. & ȝif *þat* þe brekynge o*þere* þe dyslocaciou*n* nedyþ splyntes, make *þat* þe splyntes & þe byndynge faylen aboue þe wou*n*de; & *þat* þou maiste do, ȝif *þat* þou kyttest *þe* splyntes & þe byndinge aboue þe wou*n*de *with* a knyf o*þere* a rasoure, & in drawynge abrod þe hole of þe bonde aboue þe wou*n*de [5]wiþ a nedle, so *þat* þou maiste by þilke hole eu*e*ry day chau*n*gen þe medycine of þe wou*n*de *with*outen chau*n*gynge of þe bonde, *þat* þou madest firste aboute þe bonys *þat* were broke o*þere* dislocat. þe whiche bonde *þou* schalt nouȝt remeffen, tyl þe tyme *þat* schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboue þilke

[5 fol. 55 *a*]

[4] MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe enpostemynge, & whanne þat þou hast sett togidere þe boonys þat were sett togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4
R þat þou madist in þe boond, a mundificatif of mel roset colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat a[1] mundificatif, þredis of oolde whiȝt lynnen cloop, til þat þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Capm ixm

THe nynþe chapitle of þe .iij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makiþ blood to blede out of a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent / þe enchesoun of cause coniuncte is compounned of þe mouþis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16 þat þe veynes ben kut atwo, or ellis corrosion of þe bodies of þe
[2 lf. 33][3] 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to grect febilnes or to greet losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of cause antecedentis: as to

[1] *a*, erroneously inserted.
[3] Heading to leaf 33, *Off fflux off blode in woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomynge & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þenne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundyficatyff þredys of olde clene whyte lynne cloþ, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenere fflesch, & afterward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of fflux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of 32 mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openynge of þe mouþes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodyes of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblenesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche

myche frelenes[1] of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye opere causis per ben pat ben clepid cause of[2] primitif: as smytynge pat woundith, to greet lepinge, criyng; wrape, chidynge, & so manye opere; & ech of pese causis tofore seid hap his maner heelynge by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not pe entencioun of pis book to treten[3] of blood pat bledip of wounde, pat is maad with wounde, pe which may be restreyned with craft of cirurgie. In flux of blood pat comep of a wounde, pe leche muste loke pe disposicioun, pe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him pat is woundid; if pat pese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he schal blede myche blood at pe wounde, pouz pat pe leche be clepid at pe bigynnynge, but if it be so pat he be[4] feble ouer greetliche. & if pat nede constreyne pe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke if pat pe blood go out at pe veynes capillares, pat ben smale veynes as heeris of a mannys heed / & panne oonly pe whizt[5] of an ey leid aboue with towze of flex suffisip / whanne pat pe parties of pe wounde ben brouzt togidere; & if pou caste aboue poudre of lym aforeseid in pe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be pe bettere; for pat poudre wipstreynep pe blood & consoudip perparties

from fullness of blood—causæ antecedentes; from an accident—causæ primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely; if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries; [5 lf. 33, bk.]

[1] *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. [2] *of*, erroneous insertion. See below. [3] *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . [4] *be*, added in margin in same hand.

---

fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye opere causes; and pere bep opere causes pat bep clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytinge pat wondip, to gret lepynge, cryinge, wrappe, chydinge, & so many[6] oper & iche of pese causes tofore seyde hap hys manere helynge by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal. Bot it ys noz pe enteneyoun of pis boke, to tretyn but of blod, pat bledip of wounde, pat is y-mad wip wounde, the [7]whiche may be restreynde by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of a wounde, pe leche most loke pe disposicioun, pe Abytude, Age, vertu & complexioun of hym pat is y-wounddyde; & zif pat pese acorden, & he be myzty in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wounde, powz pat pe leche be clepyde at pe bygynninge, bot zif it so be pat he feble ouere gretlyche. & zif nede constreyne pe leche to staunche pe blode, he most loke zif pat pe blod go out of pe Veynes capyllares, pat bep smale veynes as herys of mannys hed; & panne only pe whyte of an eyze, y-leyde aboue wip towz of flex suffisep, whenne pat pe parties of pe wounde bep brouzt togedire; & zif pou cast aboue pe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapytell of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be pe betyre; for pe poudre wipstreynep pe blod & consoudep pe partyes of pe wounde, togedire.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 55 b]

[6] MS. may.

when it is lost from a larger vein use a stronger styptic;

when it is lost from an artery press the artery until a clot is formed,

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he mai nouȝt so sumtyme be constreyned, but it nediþ a stronger medicyn & also a more cautele / & if þat þe blood go out of arterie, þou schalt knowe it bi construccion & dilatacion of þe same arterie—þat is to seie, þat þe blood go out wiþ lepinge & oþerwhile wiþ wiþdrawinge[1]; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe mouþ of þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi a greet hour; for þanne by grace sum greet drope of blood may be congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftirward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiþer þe arterie þat is kutt atwo / Take frankencense, whiȝt gummis, & fatt .ij. ʒ., aloes .ʒ. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of an ey as þicke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt, [2 medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medicyn is in streynynge of blood & consowdynge of þe veyne / But whanne þat þou comest to chaunge þat medicyn of þe wounde, do nouȝt þe medicyn awey wiþ strenkþe, but leie aboue of þe same medicyn[3] moist, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat it myȝte falle awey bi him-silf / Neþeles it is possible þat a medicyn caustik, þat is to seie, a medicyn þat brenneþ, sumner staunchiþ

and apply a styptic

℞

[2 lf. 34]

Renew the remedy carefully.

[1] Lat.: quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilatationem ipsius arteriæ.

[3] MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& ȝif þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may noȝt so sumtyme be constreynde, but it nediþ a strengere medycyne & also a more cautele; & ȝif þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt be constructioun & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, þat þe blod goþ out with lepynge, & oþer whyle with wiþdrawynge, & þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe mouþ of þe gret veyne, oþere ellys þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterewarde leye plentyfullyche of þis medycine vpon þe [4] Veyne oþere þe arterye þat is kut atwo. ℞ ffrancencens, whyȝt gommous & fat ʒ. ii., Aloes ʒ. i., make poudre & distempre with þe whyȝt of an eyȝe as þykke as hony; after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge togedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyninge of blod & consoudynge þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do noȝt awey þe medycine wiþ strengþe, but [5] leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessche þe firste medycine, þat yt myȝte fallyne awey by yt-selff. Naþeles yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

[5 fol. 56 a]

[4] *wounde*, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense; & þou schalt haue greet plente of medicyne caustik *in* þe antidotarie, but we be*n* nou3t sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne ei*þer* arterie anoþir tyme wole goon out, wha*n*ne þat þe schorf of þilke caustik Medicine[1] is remeued awey / but þis medicy*n* of encense *with* þe heeris of an hare not oonliche stau*n*chiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ[2] þe veyne & þe arterie, as I haue p*re*ued it ofte tymes / And for to 3eue autorite I sette a sau*m*ple þat come su*m*tyme to my*n* hondis: A child of þre 3eer old hadde a litil knyf *in* his hond, & he fel on þat knyf *in* þe former p*ar*tie of þe prote p*er*sched þe veyne organise; þer cowde no man it stau*n*che, & þa*n*ne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in [3] greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his si3t; for hise i3e*n* *in* his heed were*n* t*ur*ned vp so dou*m*;[4] & þe blood come out at þe wou*n*de whi3t as whey, v*n*neþe he hadde no pouste[5] / & þa*n*ne I leide my fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þ*er* my3te no þi*n*g go out; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þa*n*ne v*er*tu of his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede a3en, & þe pouse bigan to appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þa*n*ne I sente to þe spiceris

The styptic is a surer remedy than a caustic.

Nota bene

1st Example. A child having cut its throat with a knife,

[3 lf. 34, bk.] the loss of blood caused collapse.

The vein was pressed,

[1] *medicine*, added in margin. [2] MS. *sowdynge*.

[4] *up so doun*. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "doun." Latin: oculos habebat in capite revolutos.

[5] *unneþe he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt; for the correct version see below.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat bre*n*nyth, se*n*nore stau*n*chyth blod, þe*n*ne þis medicine of encense; & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe anti*to*darye, but we beþ nou3t sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþ*er*e þe arterye an oþ*er* tyme wyl gon out, wha*n*ne þat þe serche of þylke caustyke medycine ys remywed awey. But þy medycine of ensence, *with* þe herys of an hare, no3t only stau*n*chiþ þe blod, but also *con*soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue p*re*uyde yt ofte tymes. And forto 3if Autorite, I sette an sau*m*ple, þat come su*m* tyme to my*n* handys: A childe of þre 3ere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore p*ar*tye of þe þrote, p*er*syde þe Veyne organys; ne þ*er*e ne couþe no man yt stau*n*che, & þa*n*ne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syght; for hys eyzen in hys hed were t*ur*nyde vp so dou*n*, & þe blode come out of þe wou*n*de, whyte as wheyze, ne he ne hadde no pons, & þe*n*ne y leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat noþynge my3te go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, & þe v*er*tue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede a3eyne, & þe pous bygan to apere ffeblyche as yt were a smal þreed. Þa*n*ne y

schoppe þat was a greet weye fro me / ne I remeuede not awey my fyngir fro þe place, til þat þe messanger cam azen, and þe child bigan panne to opene hise izen; & panne I ordeynede þis medicyn to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I boond þe wounde wiþ plumaciols & with stupis[1] I-leid in whit of an ey, & with a boond I boonde it streitly, and comaundide hem to zeue him crummys of breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come azen, & panne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I nolde nouzt vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet instaunce to vndo þe medicyn, [2] but I wolde not; & so I lete it lie stille, til iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuynge / & neþeles I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat I myzte not han remeued it wiþoute greet violence. & panne I leide aboue þe whizt of an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe morowe I turnede azen; & panne I remeuede awey þe medicyn wiþouten violence, & I foond panne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool. & of þis heelyng his fadir & alle hise neizeboris hadden greet wondir / And if þat wiþ þis medicyn þou maist not sowde þe arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist not constreyne þe blood for sum

a styptic applied, the

wound bandaged

[2 lf. 35]

and left undisturbed for four days.

The child recovered on the fifth day.

If necessary

[1] "*Stupes* (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS. 12,056.

sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne remywede nozt awey my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere come azeyne, & þe childe penne bygan to opene hys eyzen; and panne y ordeynde þilke medycine to be mad, & plentyffuliche y leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles & with stupes y-leyde in whyzt of an eyze, & with a bande y bonde yt streytlye, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede, y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come azeyne, & penne y fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouzt vndo þe medycine; þe ffadire [3] preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe wounde, but y wolde nouzt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were passyd, withouten remeffynge & naþeles y vysitede hym every day; in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue þe wounde, so þat y myzte nozt haue remywede hyt withouten grete Vyolence. & penne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyze, with a lytel oyle of roses, & so y lafte yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde azeyne, & penne y remeffyde awey þe medycine withouten Vyolence, & penne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helynge þe fadire & alle his neyzhboures hadden gret wondire. And zif þat with þis medicyne þou maiste nozt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne þou ne maiste nozt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

[3 fol. 56 b]

oþer inpediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet eruste & a depe. ¶ Anoþer ensaumple: þer was a child of .xv. ȝeer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & þilke knyf perside o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder þilke senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe [1] he hadde greet akynge, & blood drewe doun to þe wounde & nouȝt aȝenstood [2] for alle þe stauncheis of medicyns þat me myȝte do þerto, it wolde not stauncheie, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat is contrarious aȝens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe þilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey / þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akynge ceesside ne þe blood was not stauncheid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient / þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counseil for þilke idiotis

use a ligature or torsion or cauterization of the bleeding artery or vein.

Nota 2nd Example Case of a child which had pricked a nerve and a vein in its arm.

[1 lf. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc suggested tying the vein and applying oil of roses to the nerve.

A lay physician attempted another treatment,

but for ten days the child suffered acute agony and bleeding;

[2] *aȝenstood*, for *aȝenstondyng*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þan þou moste oþere bynde þe Veyne, oþere drawyne here out of here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oþer Arterye, oþer þou most brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a depe. An oþere exaumple: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & þilke knyff persyde on Veyn of þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire þilke synwe. & for þe prikynge of þilke synwe he hadde grete akynge, & blod ran to þe wounde & noȝt aȝeynestondynge medycines þe blod ran out at þe wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledynge of wounde, and colde medycines beþ greffes to prikynge of synwes; for þey stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus aȝeyns þe synwys; and þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here place & to bynde here & to helpen þilke synwe with oyle of roses. But þe modire of þilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat reprevyde foulichе my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saffiyche þe childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akynge sesyde ne þe blod was noȝt y-stauncheyde, & so þe syke man was [3] nyȝh ded. And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde noȝt come to þe pacient. But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe paeyent, blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

[3 fol. 57 *a*]

biheeste; & þilke fisician *pur*poside, aft*er* þat he hadde herd my
cou*n*seil, þat þ*er* was noon oþ*er* wey þat myȝte saue þe sike ma*n*
from deeþ, & he axide of þe sirurgia*n* wheþ*er* he coude do as I
[1 lf. 36] hadde seid bifore. & [1] he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he 4
finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child. dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne *in*
hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne *with* a þred; & aft*er*
he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis cou*n*seil he
was restorid aȝen to heelþe / But who so wolde aske how þat he 8
myȝte so manye daies be kept fro*m* þe crampe for þat he suffride so
Nota The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp. greet akþe / I answere & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde
at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe [2] miȝt not be to myche
replete eiþ*er* ful of blood / Alle þese þi*n*gis I haue told, þat he þat 12
When styptics fail, use cauterization; redi*þ* he*m* mai þe visiloker *in* semblable causis worchen. & if bi þis
medicyn he myȝte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat
falliþ riȝt seelde whane [3] / þa*n*ne we mote*n* bre*n*ne þe heed of þe
veyne eiþ*er* of senewe [4] wiþ hoot iren, & þilke hoot iren myȝte 16
make an hard eruste. & be war þat þ*ou* touche not þe lippis of
þe wou*n*de ne þe senewe, ne noon oþ*er* þi*n*g but oonly þe veyne wiþ
Nota hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

[2] *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

[3] *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. Stratm., seldhwonne.

[4] *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & þilke ffysisyens *pro*posyde, 20
aftere þat he had herde my cou*n*seylle, þat þere was no*n* oþ*er*e wey
þat myȝte saue þe syke ma*n* fro*m* þe deþ, & þe*n*ne he askyde a
surgyne, wheþ*er*e he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he
seyde þ*at* he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24
þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & bonde þe ende of
þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & after*w*arde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle
of rosys, & so by þis cou*n*seyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele.
But ho so þ*at* wolde aske how þ*at* he myȝte so manye dayes be 28
kepyde fro*m* þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answere
& sigge: þ*at* þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wou*n*de eche day, so
þ*at* þe synwe ne myȝte noȝt be to myche replet o*þ*e*r*e fulfyllede of
blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þ*at* he þat redyth he*m* may 32
þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medycyne
he myȝte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, þ*at* fallyth ryȝte selden,
þe*n*ne me moste bre*n*ne þe hed of þe Veyne o*þ*e*r*e of þe synwe wiþ
hote yren, þ*at* þilke hote yren myȝte maken an harde eroste. And 36
be war þ*at* þou touche noȝt þe lippes of þe wou*n*de, ne þe synwe,
ne no*n* o*þ*e*r*e thynge, bot only þe veyn *with* hote yren. And ȝif al
þis crafte wolde noȝt helpyn me, me*n* most drawen out þe Veyne, &

out' þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han[1]dis.—Bi[2] my witt' I[3] trowe amene þat' a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt' of' him-silf' or ellis knytt' wiþ a þred. I woot' neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in anoþer place tofore þat' I schulde knytte it' wiþ a þred, & þerfore I suppose bi my witt' þat' I schulde make a knotte þeron of' his owne silf' bi my witt'.—& sumtyme it' happiþ þat' an arterie is broken ouþer kutt' & þe fleisch þat' is aboue is hool & nouȝt' to-broke neiþir I-kutt', or ellis þe fleisch þat' is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not' þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of' blood þat' is clepid aperisma[4] ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof' þe paciente haþ greet' drede, lest' þat' þe skyn to-broke & þe blood go out', þe which blood is hard to restreyne / for of' þis maner sijknes spekiþ galion & seiþ þat' a seruaunt' of' sich a disposicioun was helid of' a lewde man þat' tauȝte him þat' he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wherfore a man may vndirstonde þat' to siche enpostymes colde medicyns & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // // //

and if this fails, torsion and a ligature. [1 lf. 36, bk.]

In the case of rupture of an artery an aporisma is formed.

.Galion.

[2] An insertion of the scribe.

[3] *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

[4] *aperisma*, Lat. ophorisma seu mater sanguinis. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.: Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti maxime sanguinis arterialis.

---

flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here hed with þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & noȝt to-broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys y-helyde & noȝt þe Arterye, & vndire þilke flessch þere is a swellynge of blode [5] that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** & þere of þe paciente hath grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruaunt of swyche a dysposisioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauȝte hym þat he scholde legge snowȝ vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndirstande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth necessarye.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 57 b]

¶ Capm xm

The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis [1] is of gouernaunce & diete [1] of men þat ben woun[2]did /

[2 lf. 37]

off dietynge for woundes.

Some physicians give nourishing food and wine,

pretending that water is harmful;

others allow only bread and water and sodden apples.

Both are dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundid, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, wheþir þat it be in þe heed or in ony oþere place, good wiyn & strong fleisch of capouns & of hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat water putrifieth lymes þat ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes & corrumpiþ & febliþ complexciouns & makiþ manye harmys / & summe oþere men gouernen alle maner of sike men þat ben woundid wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remeuynge errouris & declarynge & openynge doutis / I seie þat þese boþe sectis erren in her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not considerynge resoun of complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste secte of þese two *[seyth] þat summen oonly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nouȝt be restorid; þe[3] which were sufficient to hele with her woundis,

[1—1] added in margin. [3] þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men ȝeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in þe hed oþer in enye oþere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyeþ lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendrith Apostemys & corumpyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. Sum oþere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffynge awey Errores, & declarynge & opnynge Dowtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here experymentys, noȝt considerynge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, onlye etynge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & matere in here bodyes may noȝt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

but þei ben so feble þat þei [1] dien, or ellis þei languren [2] longe tyme; ne þe lymes may not receyue resonable vertu as þei schulde; & þese maner men ben of cold complexcioun & drie & her bodies
4 weren feble or þei weren wounded, & her stomak & her entrailis wiþinne weren feble / þe seconde secte seiþ: þat summe þat drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat was wounded a greet enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben ȝonge men þat ben of an
8 hoot complexioun & a moist—wherfore þei comaundide to alle maner opere of complexioun þat þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne ete no fleisch / ȝe schulen vndirstonde þat boþe þese sectis ben nouȝt; & perfore I folowynge þe doctryne of rasis, auicen, & galion
12 & of opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat I haue longe preued, I seie þat it is nedeful þat a wounded man in þe bigynnynge absteyne him fro wiyn, & namely if þat þe wounde be in þe heed eiþir in ony partie of a senewe. for þer is no þing þat so soone
16 smytiþ greuaunce in þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone conuertid of kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persiþ swiþe into þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngynge wiþ him humouris & spiritis. It [3] troubliþ a mannys witt, & wiyn greueþ
20 alle men þat han a feble heed / & perfore in alle maner woundis of

[1] lf. 37, bk.]

The patient ought, according to Rasis. & A. Gation. to abstain from wine at the beginning.

Nota if he is wounded in his head or in a nerve,

[3] lf. 38]

[2] *languren*, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn sekenesse* langueo. And *ibid.* note 5.

---

saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyȝen, opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may noȝt resseyuen resonable vertue, as he scholde; & þese manere of men ben of a
24 colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodyes weryn feble.—*The seconde secte seyth þat some þat dronken [4] wyn & etyn flesch hadde in þe membre þat was y-woundyde a gret enposteme & a ffeuyre—and þo beþ ȝonge men þat beþ of an hot complexioun & a moyst—
28 wherefore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat þey scholde noȝt drynken no wyn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnderstandynge of boþe þese sectes nys noȝt comendable and perefore y folwynge þe doctryne of rasys, Avence, galien, & of oper doctoris,
32 & also experymentis, þat y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat it is nedefuH in þe bygynnynge þat a woundyde man Absteyne hym from wyn & namlye ȝif þat þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny partye of a synwe. For þere nys noþynge þat so sone smyteþ with
36 grevaunce þe hed opere þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone conuertyde of kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyH, he persyth swiþe into þe synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngynge with hym humores and spirites. Yt trublyth a mannys wyt, & wyn greuyff
40 alle men that haþ a feble hed; & pere fore in alle manere woundys

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 58 a]

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode *in* þe bigy*nn*ynge namely to þo þ*in*gis[1] þat han hoot complexiou*ns* & moist *into* þe tyme þat þe eure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexiou*n*, wha*nn*e .iij. daies ben passid, þou maist ȝeue to drynke smal tem- 4 per*at* wiyn, & after*w*ard a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt come to þe me*m*bre noon enpostyme. But þis[2] drinke schal be watir of barlich, eiþ*er* wat*er* of cru*m*mes of breed bene soden in whit[3] wy*n*,[4] or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir 8 raþ*er*e þa*n* þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche *in* somer / & to þat ben woundid[5] to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. pa*r*tie of wiyn of pome garnates or ellis w*it*h þe sixte pa*r*tie of wiyn agrestis þat is smal brusk[6] 12 wiyn, or ellis þis is a pe*r*fiȝt drynke to wou*n*dis of þe heed & to

℞ senewis: / Take a potel of wat*er* & of barly clensid .iiij. ℥., juiube,[7] sebesten[8] ana. ʒ. ß., of drie prunis of damascenes ℥ j, sugre of rosis .ʒ ij., seþe he*m*[9] to .iij pa*r*ties be*n* co*n*sumed, & þa*n*ne lete hi*m* 16

[[11] lf. 38, bk.] drynke. To asaye it softly[10] / [11]þis drynke is alteratijf: þat is to seie, chau*n*gi*n*ge, ne it swellip not, & it lettip fumosite to arise

[1] þ*in*gis, inserted. [2] *þis*, error for *his*. [3] *whit*, error for *with*.
[4] *wyn*, inserted. [5] *woundid*, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.
[6] *brusk*, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus ?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*
[7] *Jujube*, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.
[8] *Sebesten*, Arab. sebesten. Name for Cordia mysa vel sebastena.
[9] Corrupt passage. Lat.: donec consumetur tertia pars.
[10] *softly*, error for *soply*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

of þe hed & off synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygy*nn*ynge, & namlye to þo þat han hot *com*plexiou*ns* & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20 þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde *com*plexiou*n*, whe*nn*e þre dayes ben passyde, þ*ou* maiste ȝeue*n* to drynke a smal temp*er*at wyn, & afterewarde a lyte strengore; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þ*er*e schal noȝt comen to þe membre no*n* Aposteme. But 24 his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche oþere watire þat cro*m*mes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ oþ*er*e colde watyr & namlye in so*m*mere, & to þo þat beþ wou*n*dyde drynke watyre, oþ*er*e ellys wiþ tenþe pa*r*tye of wyn of pome garnettys, oþ*er*e ellys wyth sixte pa*r*tye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, oþ*er*e ellys þis is a pe*r*fyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys: Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ℥. iij, juiube, sebesten, ana .ʒ ß, of drye prunes of damacynes ʒ .j., suere of rosis ℥ ij, sethe he*m* to þre 32 pa*r*tyes ben *con*sumed, & þe*nn*e lete hy*m* drynke*n* yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff: þat ys to sigge chau*n*gynge, ne hyt ne swel-

[[12] fol. 58 *b*] lyth noȝt. & yt latteþ fumosites to arysen to þe brayn. [12] Of mete

to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to him þat is of a moist complexicioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch, fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes; but he muste holde him content wiþ ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk; outake[1] wounde of þe heed, were[2] I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oþer vaperous fruyt: as notis eiþir walnotis eiþer avellanes; for þei han
8 a maner fumose properte greuynge þe heed / he may eten amidoun, betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. & if þat he myȝte not absteyne him fro fleisch, ȝeue him fleisch of smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
12 I-sauered with agresta eiþer wiþ wiyn of pome garnatis; & þilke dietynge he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat akynge swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
16 [3] þat was sowid eiþer brouȝt togidere with byndinge, in whom quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad wiþ smytynge or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful engendrynge of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of a hot and moist complexion should eat vegetables only;

Nota

if he cannot abstain from meat, chickens or veal may be given him.

[3 lf. 39]

[1] *ontake*, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.
[2] *were*, error for *where*.

---

20 y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be non manere weye ne scholde noȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke, eyren, ne no manere conuertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come with to gret febylnesse; but he moste holde hym content with Iuse
24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke; out take wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue noȝt Almaundys, ne non opere vaporose frutys, as notys oþer walnottys oþer Avelanes, for þey hauen a manere fumose proprete greuynge þe hed; he may etyn
28 Amidun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ succre, ȝif þat he were feble. And ȝif þat myȝte noȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & opere sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
32 agresta, oper with wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetynge he schall vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe, whenne þat Akynge, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde & þe wounde is almost consouded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat
36 was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre with byndynge, in whom quyter was noȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-mad wythe smytinge—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is nedfull engendrynge of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

tyme, whanne þat he makiþ quytture plenteuousliche ; & whanne
Improve this diet when he gets better. þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abrood & is
wiþoute akynge ; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietynge til þat
If he has a cold and dry complexion, þou come to his dietynge þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat 4
þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi
he should take meat from the beginning. nature eiþer bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to
ȝeue him at þe bigynnynge fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie :
as canel, gynger & oþere semblable to hem, & to ȝeue him in þe 8
bigynnynge Julep[1]—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre
—& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wiyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun
& in þe oþere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wiþ a
wounde or wiþoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe eure, þat is to 12
seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to
[2 if. 39, bk.] ȝeue norischaunt metis þat it [2] myȝte make a good & a strong re-
Nota peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke : as furmente soden in,[3]
If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments. potage of flour weel soden & wiþ þe extremytees of beestis feet & 16
swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche oþere þingis bi
whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Wher-
fore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietynge, vertues of
coplexeiouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝeer þat 20

[1] *Julep*, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*
[3] *in*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. enposteme, whenne þat he makyþ quyter plentyouuslyche; &
whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & noȝt toswolle, ne y-drawen
abrode. & ys wiþouten akynge, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel
hys dyetynge, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetynge, þat he was wont 24
to vse tofore. And ȝif þat þe paeient were of a colde complexioun
& a drye & þat he hadde by nature oþere by costeme a feble stomak,
[4 fol. 59 a] [4] þanne yt were necessarye to ȝeuen hym at þe bygynnynge flesch a
lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye : as kanell gyngeffre & oþere 28
semblable to hem & to ȝeuen hym in þe bygynninge Julep—þat is a
syripe y-mad only of watyre & of suere—& aftere þre dayes ben
passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe oþere com-
plexioun. ȝif þat a bon were y-broke, wiþ a wonde ore wiþouten 32
a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe eure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art
sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to ȝif norysschande
mete, þat it myȝte make a gode & a stronge repayrment of þe bone
þat was tobroke : as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel 36
y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes &
oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche oþere þynges by whom a
gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore
yt is necessarie to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetynge, vertues of 40
complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe ȝere, þat

he mowe chaunge his dietynge aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynge.

THe .xj. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis. ¶ Capm. xjm.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttynge or of openynge of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennynge, or of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold constreynynge, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corrumpinge / For euery olde wounde hauynge rotnes or wire[1] þat is þinne venymous quyttir or ony oþir þing þan good quytture is not clepid a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowlond & Rogerine & þe moste [2]partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre[3] or a cankre, but it is neiþir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre

off olde verelent woundes

Various causes of ulcers.

Roulond & Rogeryn [2 lf. 40]

Ulcer is a more general term than fistula or cancer.

[1] *wire*, Lat. virus.

[3] *festre, fester* in Mätzner *Dict.;* O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula. Comp. N. E. fester vb.

---

he mowe chaungen his dyetynge, aftere þat dyverse condycioun askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseylle proceden in hys dyetynge.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde wounndes ben mad of kuttynge oþer of openynge of a posteme, oþere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oþer ellys of sum manere fleynge oþer of brennynge, oþer of to grete hete, oþer of to grete drovþe, oþer to gret colde constreynynge, oþere of to grete Abundaunce of moist mater corumpynge. For euery olde wounde, hauynge rotenesse oþere **virus** þat is þenne venemy quyter, oþer eny oþer þynge þenne gode quyter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde, but is y-clepyde **vlcus** þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus, Rouland & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde it festre, oþer cancre. But it is neiþere festre ne cancre, but festre & cankre habbe dyfference from þis. [4] Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye cankere, þat is y-wounndyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre oþere festre, as y schal

[4 fol. 59 b]

Auicen distinguishes six kinds of ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicen seiþ, þat þer ben .vj. maner of þis vlcus : summe þat ben venemous, summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eiþer hid, summe corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif þat is spredynge abrood, & summe harde to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe[1] han acordynge with festris in tokenes & in foormes as venemous & holowȝ & summe han acordynge with cankris as spredynge abrood & fretynge him-silf & neþeles þei han difference, as it is conteyned in þe chapitle of cankris I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore seid han differenee fro wounde / for in a wounde þer is whiȝt quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouȝt departid & wiþoute stenche. Þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes & kyndely heete, & is perfiȝtly defied / But venym rotynes [2]& a eruste, & al oþere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a strong vnkyndly heete.

[2 If, 40, bk.]

vlcus virulentum

A uenym vlcus is in whom aboundiþ venym sutil & liquid. If þat it be reed or ȝelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bitynge þe lyme, it signifieþ lordschipe of a strong heete.

vlcus sordidum

An hori elde wounde þat haþ summe greete crustis, or ellis a wroting, sum gret proud fleisch to hiȝe.[3]

[1] MS. *summen.*

[3] *proud fleisch to hiȝe.* Lat.: carnem superfluam grossam. Proud flesh, Fungosity. Dunglison.

Add. MS. 12,056.

tellen opynlyche in euerye chapyteH be hym-self. Auesene seytH þat þere ben sixe manere of þese Vlcus, for sum ben Venemy, sum hory, some depe, some cauernouse oþere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum rotyne, some Ambulatyff—þat is spredynge abrode, & some hard to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hatH acordynge with festres in toknes & in fourmes : as Venemy & holwy, & sum han acordynge with cancre : as spredynge abrode & fretynge hym self. And naþeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore seyde habbitH difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys whyte quyter & euene in al his partyes & hol & noȝt departyde, —& withouten stynke. Þis manere of quyter is engendrede, of godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitlye deffyede. But vemyn, rottenesse, & eroste, & alle oþere superfluyte of olde woundes ben engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is, in whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. ȝif þat yt be red oþere ȝolwe, oþere a partye redyssche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit synifieþ lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys y-clepyd, þat haþ sum grete erostes, oþere ellys sum grete awrotynge

A deep vl*eus* is *þat*, *þat* haþ a greet depnes & an holowȝ & p*er*auenture erokinge. **vl*eus* profundum**

A wroting vl*eus* is *þat* of his malice fretiþ bi cause *þat* þe blood is sent to hi*m* so scharpe / Galion seiþ : *þat* scharp blood not oouli corrodiþ [noȝt]*—fleisch i*n* wou*n*dis, but also hool fleisch / **vl*eus* corosiuu*m* Galion.**

A rotid vl*eus* is stynkynge, hanynge a strong heete i*n* his grou*n*d, & out of hi*m* passiþ a stynky*n*ge smel, ei*þer* smoke, as doiþ out of fleisch *þat* is rotid / þilke[1] word 'stynk' I vndirstonde it bi my man*er* witt : sich breeþ *þat* comeþ out of a bodies ende, wha*n*ne a bodi breþiþ wiþ þe mouþ i*n* frosty wedir, *þat* men taken a sau*m*ple, bifor to sle her lae dre / þa*n*ne wha*n*ne þou myȝt se þe breeþ of þi*n* owne ende comynge out at þi mouþ i*n* þe eir. **vl*eus* putr*i*du*m***

A walkynge / vl*eus* is *þat* walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & neþeles he p*r*ofou*n*diþ nouȝt depe [2]i*n*to þe grou*n*d. **vl*eus* ambulat*i*vu*m*** [2 lf. 41]

An vl*eus* *þat* is hard to helin is he *þat* for his yuel p*r*opirte *þat* is sent to hi*m* fro þe bodi lettiþ hi*m* to heele. **ul*eus* difficilis.**

& for to heelen eeh maner of þese vl*eus*, *þer* ben manye dyners rulis / þe firste rule is *þat* þei mou*n* not be heelid, but þe super-fluytees *þat* ben i*n* hem ben I-dried / þe secu*n*de rule / but if *þat* bodi ou*þer* þe membre be oute of his naturel complexiou*n*, or þan þou þenke to heele þilke vl*eus* *þou* muste brynge aȝen to his diete **Cura vl*eu*ris .1. .2.**

[1] This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe. Read: *ste her laddre.* One letter half erased in *lacdre.* *Ste*, see Stratm. *Dict.*, O.E. stîgan.

---

p*r*oud flesch to hyȝe. A depe Vleus is *þat* *þat* haþ a gret depnesse & an holwe, & p*er*aunt*er* crokynge. A wrotynge vleus is *þat* of hys malyce wroteþ, byeause *þat* þe blod *þat* is sent to hy*m*, is to scharpe. **Galien**: scharpe blod noȝt onlyche eordyth noȝt *fleseh in wou*n*des, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vleus is stynkynge, habbynge a strau*n*ge hete in his grou*n*de, & out of hy*m* passith out a stynkynge smel o*þer*e smoke, as *þer*e doþ [3]out of fleseh *þat* is y-rotyde. A walkynge Vleus is *þat* walkeþ hyde*r*warde & þedirwarde & naþeles he profu*n*deþ noȝt depe into þe grou*n*de. An Vleus *þat* is hard to helyn, is he *þat* for his yuele p*r*oprete, *þat* is sende to hy*m* fro al þe body, latteþ hy*m* to hele. & forto helyn euery mane*r*e of þese hulkes, *þer*e ben manye dyve*r*se rulys. Þe firste rule ys *þat* þey mowe noȝt ben helyde, but þe super*fluytes* *þat* ben in he*m* ben dryed. Þe seeunde rule ys *þat* ȝif *þat* þe body o*þer*e me*m*bre be out of hys natureh co*m*plexiou*n*, ere *þa*n *þou* þynke to hele þilke Vleus, þou moste bryngen aȝeyne to hys due Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 60 *a*]

.3. complexioun distemprid þilke bodi ouþir membre. Þe þridde rule
is : þat if þe lyuere eiþir þe splene ben I-greued, as it happiþ ofte
.4. tymes in olde woundis, þou muste reetifien hem / Þe .iiij rule is :
þat þe qualitees & þe quantitees of humouris schulden be temperid 4
wiþ blood-letynge & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if þat
þe eir be yuel, þe sike man sehal be chaungid into good eyr / &
whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may
go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a waschinge,

& if þe vlcus be virulent, þat is to seie venemi, loke if þat þe
venym þat goiþ out be rediseh or ȝelowiseh, & if þat þe lyme haue
ony maner heete ; þanne waisehe it wiþ water of rosis & barlich.
alim[2] & balaustia & lentiles with hony [3]symple eiþer compouuned 12
ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of þe wounde ; &
if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische
it wiþ watir or with wiyn þat mirre wormode,[4] horhone,[5] sauge,[6]
pimpernelle[7] hony symple or compouuned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16

Nota[1] [3 lf. 41, bk.]

and apply an vnguentum

wounde perfiȝtliehe & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it
wiþ þis propre oynement þat þi[8] olde foule venym woundis, eiþer

[1] MS. *Nona*. [2] *alim*, Latin : aluminis.
[4] *wormode*, absinthium. O.E. wormôd, M.E. wormwood.
[5] *horhone*, Marrubium vulgare. See Britten, *Dict.* [6] *sauge*, salvia.
[7] *pimpernella*, Pimpinella. [8] *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

complexioun distempride[9] þilke body oþer membre. Þe þridde rule
ys, þat ȝif þat þe lyfere oþere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 20
ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retyfieu hem. The fourth
rule ys : þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be tem-
pride with blodletynge, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle ; and
ȝif þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man sehal be ehaungyde into gode 24
eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges,
þenne he may go to hys cure. & ȝif þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat
is to sigge Venemy, loke ȝif þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redysseh
oþere ȝolwe, & ȝif þat the lyme haue enye manere hete ; & þenne 28
wassche it wiþ water þat rosys & barlyehe Alum & balaustia &
lentilis with honye symple oþere componed ben sodyn In. And lete
þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And ȝif þe Virus be
withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32
oþere wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pympirnel,
honye symple oþer componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde
perfitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre
oygnement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oþer Vlcus engend- 36

[9] At the margin.

vlc*us*, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / recipe litargiu*m*[1] as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter[2] & putte wiþ hi*m* good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe o*pere*, alwey stiryng, til it be p*er*fiȝtly an oynement & come into þe foorme of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargir*um* nutritu*m*, þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is p*ro*fitable i*n* manye causis / afte*r*ward take of þilke litarge norischid .vij. p*ar*ties & of alim, & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragou*n* chathinie[3] argenti .an*a*. as myche as is xij p*ar*ties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere and [4]make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþi*n*ne þe wou*n*de & al aboue þe wou*n*de; for it drieþ þe wou*n*de & engendriþ good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat i*n* heelynge of alle olde woundis aft*er* þat þei be*n* cle*n*syd, aboue þe oynement it is good to leie a ly*n*nen cloop, to distende abrood on of þe mu*n*dificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told i*n* þe antidotarie, & leie aboue aboute þilke vlc*us* specialy from þe ouer p*ar*tie fro whens humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat

Auicen & Rasis

letargirum nutritum

[4 lf. 42]

vnguentum nutricum.

Nota.

Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound,

and add a T[5] deffensif dressing.

[1] "*Lithangyros*, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.

[2] MS. *& putte it in a morter*, scribal insertion.

[3] "*Cathima* est minera de qua elicitur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia:* argenti spuma, Cartelli *Dict.* [5] a sign like *Nota*.

---

reth flesch, cla*n*sythī & helythī as **Auecene** & **Ras***es* wytnessithī, **litargiu***m* **nutritu***m*. ℞ litarge as myche as þou wylt & sta*m*pe it & put it in a mortere & [6]putte wiþ hy*m* gode oyle of roses & vynegre, now þe on now þe o*pere*, alweye steryinge, tyl it be p*er*fitlyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oygnement. & þis oygnement—litargiru*m* nutritu*m*—þat is to sigge litarge y-norysched, þat is p*ro*fitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of þilke litarge viij p*ar*tyes, & of alym, & of balaustie o*pere* ellys, in þe stede of balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brent led, gallys, sanke dragou*n*, cathimie, Argenti an*a* as mychel as ys .xij p*ar*tyes of alle þe oygnement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygnem*en*t. þis oygnem*en*t schal be leyde wi*th*y*n*ne þe wou*n*des & aboue þe wou*n*de, for yt dryethī þe wou*n*de, & engendrithī gode flesch & *con*soud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde wou*n*des, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oygnem*en*t yt is gode of one a ly*n*nen cloþ, forto dystende abrode on of þe mu*n*dyficatyfes of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antitodarye. And leye aboue aboute þilke vleus, & specialiche fro*m* þe ouere p*ar*tye, fro whom humores flotyn, a[7] defensif of bol Armonyak*e* & te*r*ra

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 60 b]

[7] MS. *&*.

℞ is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .℥ j. terra sigillata. ℥ ß oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-nowȝ do in þe oon now in þe oþer til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nouȝ / so þat of þe oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensiþ a membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat he sprede nouȝt abrood /

Nota.

In a (2) sordid ulcer remove the scurf.

An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge awey þe erust eiþere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oþer mundificatiuis; aftir consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /

[1 lf. 42, bk.]

In a (3) deep ulcer cleanse the wound,

A deep wounde is heelid [1]wiþ castynge into þe depþo of þe wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijknesse of a elisterie, ony of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy wonnde aboue, aftir þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askiþ of heete or of cold. & aftir þat, he is elensid in castynge in watre onþir wiyn þat mastik or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to ordeyno þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe wounde hange dounward, & streyne þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it losely at þe mouþ of þe wounde; also it were good, if þat it myȝto be, þat þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat is moost hangynge, þat þe rotynes & þe quytture myȝte þe bettere goon out; for so þilke vlcus myȝte þe sunnere be heelid /

and make the pus discharge itself freely.

Add. MS. 12,056.

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: ℞ bol armoneake ℥ j terre sigillato ʒ ß., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, now þe oþer, tyl þe oygnement be ful mad & lyquyde ynowȝ; so þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. þis diffensiff defendiþ a membre fro corupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he sprede noȝt abrode. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffynge awey þe eroste oþere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles schal be sayde in þe ende, oþere with sum oþere mundificatyfes; afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys y-helyde in castynge in to þe [2]depþe of þe wounde with an instrument y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposisioun of þe membre askeþ of hete oþer of cold. And aftere þat ho is y-clansyde, in castynge in water oþere in wyn þat mastyke oþere frankensence ys y-soden yn, & in leggynge without, on of þe mundificatyfes of hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe woundo honge dunwarde, & streyne þi ligature at þe gronnde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, ȝif þat it myȝte be, þat þere were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

[2 fol. 61 a]

A wroting[1] vlc*us* is heelid i*n* leggy*n*ge specialiche aboute hi*m* colde þi*n*gis whiche þat' be*n*[2] obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of' þe same vlc*us*; & also w*ith* amendynge, as w*ith* metis & drynkis, þe scharpnes of' þe same blood, & i*n* p*ur*gynge þe reed colere; & wiþ anoyntynge wiþ colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þ*er*to [3]is miche worþ vng*uentu*m albu*m* rasis þat' schal be told i*n* þe antidotarie /

(4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens, an appropriate diet, purging, and the vng*uentum* albu*m* rasis [3 lf. 43]

A stynkynge wou*n*de is heelid i*n* remeuy*n*ge awey þe stinche & þe rotenes; & þ*er*to is myche worþ a waischi*n*ge of' ydromel: þ*at* is hony & watir soden togidere wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dificatif' m*aa*d wiþ ius of' wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þ*at*' is m*aa*d on þis maner / take ius of' wormod. ℥ iij. of' hony. ℥ iij. barli mele ℥ ij. of mirre an*a*. ℥ j. & compou*nn*e he*m* togidere & fille þe wou*n*de wiþi*nn*eforþ w*ith* ly*nn*et' of' ly*nn*e*n* cloop. & if' þ*at*' wormes ben engendrid in þe wou*n*de, sle hem wiþ þe ius of' calamynte ouþ*er* wiþ þe ius of' þe leeues of' pechis, or ellis p*er*sicarie,[3] eiþ*er* wiþ decocciou*n* of' elebre. & wha*nn*e þat' a p*er*fiȝt' mu*n*dificatif is m*aa*d, engendre fleisch & consowde as it' is seid tofore /

(5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif. ℞ Nota bene

A walkynge vlc*us* is heelid wiþ fleobotomie & formacie[4] þ*at*' is

(6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

[1] *wrotyng*, error for *fretyng*.
[2] *ben*, erroneously inserted. [3] *persicarie* glossed *colorag*. See Notes.
[4] O.Fr. farmacie = purgatiou. See Littré, *Dict.*

---

rotnesse & þe quytere myȝte þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus myȝte su*nn*ere be helyde. A ffretynge vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggynge specialiche aboute hy*m* colde þynges, whiche þ*at* obtu*n*den oþ*er* castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendynge w*ith* metys & w*ith* drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in purgynge þe rede colo*re* & w*ith* anoyntynge wiþ colde oygnementes & *con*solidatifes, & þ*er*eto is myche worþ vnguentu*m* albu*m* Rasis, þ*at* schal be told in þe antitodarye. A stynkynge wou*n*de ys y-helyde in remevynge awey þe stenche & þe rottenesse, & þ*er*to ys myche worth̄ a wasschynge of **ydromel** þ*at* is hony & wat*er* y-sode togidre wiþ mirre, & a mu*n*dyficatiff' y-mad w*ith* Ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þ*at* is made on þis man*er*e: take jus of wermot .℥. iiij, of hony ℥ iij, of' barly mele .℥. ij, off' mirre ℥ .j., *com*pone hem togedire, & fulle þe wo*nn*de, wiþy*nn*e forth̄ wiþ lynete of ly*nn*en cloþ. & ȝif þ*at* wormys ben engendr*i*de in þe wou*n*de, sle he*m* wiþ jus of calamynte, oþ*er*e w*ith* þe juse of þe leuys of pechys, oþ*er*e ellys p*er*sicarie, oþ*er* w*ith* decoccion [5]of ellebre. And wha*nn*e þ*at* a p*er*fyte mu*n*dyficaciou*n* is mad engendre flesch & *con*soude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkynge Vlcus ys y-helyde w*ith* flebotomye & **ffarmasye** þ*at* is laxatyfes purgynge þe colere &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 61 *b*]

laxatiuis purgynge þe colere & brent humouris, & in leggynge aboute a defensif of bole & terra sigillata þat is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus abouc with an instrument of gold. For þilke maner of brennynge rectifieþ wcel þe membre /

if necessary cauterization.

[1 lf. 43, bk.]

(7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer.

The healing is delayed if the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver, the spleen, the blood, or the glands, or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

Þe cause whi þat summe vlcus [1] is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it nediþ to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpon,[2] oon oþer manyc, do awci þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat þou go to þis principal cure / Þese ben þe causis þat letten consowdynge of olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere as if þat he be to feble, as to hoot or to cold, to moist or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet hardenes; or ellis þe splenc is to feble to purge þe malancolient blood; or ellis to mychc blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of blood þat goon doun to þe vlcus; or clles þat glandeles þat ben kirnelis þat ben in þe ground[3] þat sendcn doun mater to the vlcus þat is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of þe vlcus ben to grcte; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of dietynge or cllis an

[2] *vpon*, error for *open*. [3] *ground*. See *grynd*, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056.

brende humoures, & in leggynge aboute a defensif of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytle, & with on of þe colde mundyficatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennynge rectefieþ wel þe membre. Þe cause why þat sum Vlcus is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerefore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And ȝif þe cause be opene, on opere manye, do aweye þilke causes oþer ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe pryncipal cure. Þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consoudynge of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, oþer ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as ȝif þat he be to feble, as to hot opere to colde, to moiste opere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; opere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; opere ellys to mychc blod, opere ellys to acute blod; opere ellys þe veynes beþ to ful of blod, þat goþ doun to þe Vlcus; oþer cllys curnellys þat glandeles, þat beþ kurnellys þat beþ in þe grynde, þat sendiþ doun matere to þe Vlcus þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, oþer ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcus beþ to grete & hard, opere ellys to mychc flesch, oþer cllys mysordeyninge of

inconuenient medicyn to þat membre or ellis þe lyme þat is hirt
haþ an yuel discrasie; or ellis þilke vleus is in an yuel place as in
þe eende of þe [1]elbowȝe; or ellis þe vleus is al round; or ellis þe [1 lf. 44]
4 boon þat is vndir þe vleus is corrupt / Alle þase tofore seid letten or if the condition of the wound is bad.
vleus to be heelid / wherfore it nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese
þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat han Remedial measures—
principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat ben in her
8 naturel disposicioun with þingis þat ben acordinge to her naturel
disposicioun, þo / & if þei ben discrasid, remeue þilke discrasie wiþ remove the dyscrasia,
þat, þat is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe regulate the patient's
quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if þat þou brynge þidir blood,
12 blood, or ellis if þat it be possible latt þe blood awey; vndo þe
glandeles þat ben kirnels þat sendin þider mater, & remeue deed
fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat ben greete & kutte hem
awey if þat þou myȝt do noon oþirwise; amende his dietynge; &
16 brynge aȝen þe rondnes of þilke vleus into a long forme aftir þe give an oblong shape to
lenkþe of þe membre with a knyf hoot brennynge / but if a veyne a round ulcer,
or a senewe lette. & þou schalt remoue þe boon þat is corrupt on remove any rotten bone
þis maner: in kuttynge awey al þe fleisch & þe boon þat is corrupt by means of a hot iron—
20 with an hoot [2]iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat schal be seid in þe laste [2 lf. 44, bk.]
eende of þis book, or ellis it is bettere to don it awey wiþ hoot

---

dyetynge, oþer ellys an vneouenable medycine to þilke membre, Add. MS. 12,056.
oþer ellis þe lyme þat ys y-hurt haþ an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys
24 þilke Vleus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys [3 fol. 62 a]
þe Vleus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat is vndire [3] þe vleus is
corupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vleus to by helyde, where-
fore yt nediþ þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat habbiþ principalte
in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat beþ in here naturell
disposisioun wiþ þynges þat beþ acordynge to here naturel disposi-
sioun, & ȝif þey ben discrasyede, remywe þilke discrasye with þat,
32 þat is contrarye to þilke discrasye. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe
quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes ȝif þat þey brynge þedire
blod. Oþer ellys ȝif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo
glandeles, þat beþ kurnell þat sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded
36 flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat beþ grete, & kytte hem awey,
ȝif þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dyetynge, & brynge
aȝeyne þe roundnesse of þilke Vleus in to a longe fourme, aftere þe
lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyf hot brennynge, but ȝif þat a
40 synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat is
corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kuttynge awey al þe
flesch,*—þe bon þat is corupte with an yren, oþer wiþ a medicyne
þat schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. Oþer ellys it is

Nota. iren. & wha*n*ne þa*t* þe boon þa*t* is corrupt[1] is vnkenerid, schaue it
scraping and scratching generally give rise to fistulæ. not as manye men doon, but touche harde þa*t* boon w*ith* hoot
iren; & aftirward heelde on þilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on
oon of þe mu*n*dificatiuis þa*t* ben in þe antidotarie whiche þa*t* wolen 4
remoue þe rotid boon wiþoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou3
þa*t* þou elense þe rotid boon wiþ schauynge or wiþ filynge w*ith*
violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afte*r*ward don awey a schelle
of þilke same boon, nou3t a3enstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasynge / 8
wherfore i*n* remeuynge þilke boon þou multipliest þi traueile &
makist newe[2] mu*n*dificaeion to þe fulle[3] & þe*r*of may come ofte
tymes an yuel festre. An inco*n*uenient medicyn is amendid i*n*
considerynge þe complexiou*n* of al þe body & þe complexiou*n* of þe 12
lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þa*t* þe membre be drie as þe
eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei ha*n* greet putride & rotschipe,
If the medicine was not [4 If. 45] þa*n*ne þou nedist a ful drie medicyn / & if þa*t* þe bodi or þe lymes
[4] be*n* mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þa*t* is neiþe*r* to fatt ne to 16
leene, þa*n*ne þou nedist a medicyn þa*t* is i*n* kynde mesurabilichе
driynge / & if þa*t* þe bodi or þe membre be naturelichе moist, & if
þa*t* he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þa*n*ne þou nedist a medicyn

[1] MS. *corrrupt.* [2] *newe*, error for *no*.
[3] *to þe fulle.* Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespas *at the fulle.*

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it awey w*ith* hot yren & wha*n*ne þa*t* þe bon þa*t* is 20
corupte is vnkeue*r*yde, schane yt no3t as many me*n* don, but touche
harde þilke bon w*ith* hot yren & afterewarde helde on þilke bon
hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mu*n*dyficatyfes þa*t* beþ in þe
antitodarye, whiche þa*t* wylle remywe þe rotyde bon w*ith*oute vio- 24
lence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þaw3 þa*t* þon elanse þe rotyde bon w*ith*
schavynge oþe*r*e wiþ vylinge w*ith* vyolence, neue*r*e þe latere kynde
wyl afterwarde don aweye a schelle of þilke same bon, no3t a3en-
stondynge þy schauynge & þy raspynge; wherefore in remefynge 28
þilke bon, þo*u* multiplyest þy traueH, & þo*u* makyste no mu*n*difi-
catiou*n* to þe folle; & þe*r*of may come ofte tymes, an yuele fest*re*.
And inco*n*uenient medyeine ys amendyde, in *con*syderynge þe
[5 fol. 62 b] *com*plexiou*n* [4]of alle þe bodye, & þe *com*plexiou*n* of þe lyme, & þe 32
gree of þe medycine; for 3if þa*t* þe me*m*bre be drye as þe erys, nose-
þrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede &
rotesehippe, þe*n*ne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & 3if þa*t* þe
body oþe*r*e þe me*m*bre be naturellyche moist, 3if þa*t* he haue a lyte 36
putrede oþe*r*e roteschippe, þa*n*ne thou nedyste a medyeine þa*t* ys
lyte dryinge. And 3if þa*t* the body oþe*r*e þe lymes ben mene
betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þa*t* nys neiþe*r*e to fatte ne to lene,
þe*n*ne þou nedyst a medyeine þa*t* is in kynde, mesurablyche dryinge. 40

þat is litil driynge / & if *þat* .ij. membris ben in complexioun l-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe to*þer* litil quytture, he *þat* haþ þe more quitture nediþ þe driere medicyn / & *he *þat* haþ but litil quytture, hi*m* nediþ his medicyn I-m*aa*d nouȝt fulliche so drie / *þer*fore it nediþ bi mesure *þat* þou kepe naturel þing wiþ þi*ng* *þat* is acordinge to þe same naturel þi*ng* / & also remeue w*ith* mesurable cont*ra*riouste þi*ng* *þat* is aȝens kynde / But þe quantite of medicy*ns* *þat* schulden be leid to þe soor as galion witnessiþ mai not wiþ lettris be writ*en* / neþeles it sufficiþ *þat* a man diuise þe medicyn after[1] þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde *þat* is wondirful, fulfilliþ þi*ng* *þat* is absent, & *þat*. *þat* is to myche, castiþ awey, but if *þat* it be to myche aȝe*n* kynde ; & þa*n*ne kynde muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mu*n*dificatif [2]& exciccatif *þat* is nessessarie i*n* ech old holowe wou*n*de,——[3]

Galion.

[2] If. 45, bk.]

& *þat* may be knowe bi þis maner / if *þat* þe medicyn make þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wou*n*de holower, þa*n*ne he schulde be, þa*n*ne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be þicke & towȝ, þa*n*ne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþ*er* signe *þat* þe

A thin pus, a discoloured skin, a burning sensation show that the medicine was too dry.

[1] N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of *after* conj. = according as, without relative particle.

[3] Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundificatiua & exiccatiua — — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior competenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage : "Significatio si medicina est magis sicca quam oportet." The *þat* in *& þat may be knowe*, refers to this omitted heading.

And ȝif *þat* two me*m*brys ben in *com*plexiou*n* i-lyche euene, & þe on haue myche quyt*er* & þe o*þer*e lyte quyt*er*, he *þat* haþ þe more quyt*er* nedyth þe dreyere medyeine,*——afterwar*de* it nediþ by mesure *þat* þou kepe naturel þynge, w*ith* þynge *þat* is acordynge to þe same nature, and also to remeffe w*ith* mesurable contraryouste þynge *þat* is aȝeyns kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes *þat* scholde[4] be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseþ, ne may noȝt w*ith* lettres be*n* wryten. Neu*er* þe late*re* it suffisith, *þat* a man defye þe medycine, afte*re* þe *co*mplexiou*n* may bere; ffor kynde *þat* is wondirful fulfylleþ þynge *þat* is absent & *þat* *þat* is to myche castyth aweye, but ȝif *þat* it be to myche aȝeyne kynde ; & þa*n*ne kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchynge. A medycine mu*n*dyficatyff & exsiccatif *þat* is necessarie in eche olde holwe, vlcere,*—may be knowe by þis man*er*e : ȝif *þat* þe medyeine make þe*n*ne quyt*er* & blody & make þe wou*n*de holwere þa*n* he scholde be, þe*n*ne ys þe medyeine to aeute ; & ȝif þe quyt*er* be þikke & towȝ, þe*n*ne ys þe medyeine to lythye ; and also an o*þer*e[5] signe *þat*

Add. MS. 12,046.

[4] MS. *þat scholde*, twice.

[5] *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiþer ȝelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multiplieþ / and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seeþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeiriþ.[1]

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble driynge is, þat þe quitture & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneuene, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt ouþir wan, ouþir eleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man feliþ cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe seeunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worchinge as condicioun of kynde askith [2]boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen liȝtliche woundis with her yuel worchinge into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / Þese ben liȝt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil driynge: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,[3] aristologie rotunda, orabum[4] þat is wiilde tare, lupines,

[2 lf. 46]

An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.

A mild siccatif.

A stronger siccatif.

[1] *apeiriþ* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro. [3] *yrios*. Lat. Iris. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

[4] "*Orobus*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 63 *a*]

þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red opere to ȝelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete [5]& brennynge, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunnynge leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneuene, wan oþer pale; þe membre is colde whyte oþer wan, oþer clere in coloure, oþer softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe seennde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkynge, as condyciouns of kynde askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as *com*ponede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel*—schal helen olde woundes; wherefore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchynge, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. Þese ben lyȝte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryȝinge; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. Þese medicynes beþ sumwhat dreyere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotenesse

þe rotynes eiþ*er* þe drie poudre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,[1] rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese be*n* liȝt mu*n*dificatiuis: sugre, hony, wat*er* of barlich, gotis whay, A mild mundificatif.
4 watir of þe see, watir of brimstoon þat clensiþ & heteþ, wat*er* of alym þat clensiþ & coldiþ. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mu*n*dificatiuis, oyntmentis compou*n*ned i*n* þe antidotarie of þis book /

The .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techi*n*ge of þe firste tretis is of festre / ¶ Capm.xijm.
8

Festre is a deep old wou*n*de, & þe mouþ of hi*m* is streyt, & þe grou*n*d is brood, & he haþ [2]wiþi*n*ne hi*m* a calose[3] hardnesse al aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre haþ
12 difference from a deep vlcus & a cau*er*nose / for a deep vlcus & cau*er*nose of whom it is toold i*n* þe chapitle tofore seid, þouȝ þat þei acorden togid*er*e i*n* depnes & in streitnesse of þe mouþ, þe vlcus haþ not wiþi*n*ne hi*m* a calose hardnes / Wherfore a festre mai not
16 be clensid wiþ waischinge w*ith* which a cau*er*nose vlcus mai be clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to

A fistula [2 lf. 46, bk.] is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness, which must be removed by cauterization.

[1] "*Psidia* cortex est mali granati."—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.
[3] O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

---

oþ*er* þe dryȝe poudre of trees. Þese medycines ben streugere: Add. MS. 12,056.
balaustie, p*r*osidye, rose, notys off Cipresse et. cet. And þese[4] ben
20 lyȝte mu*n*dificatyfes in cure,[5] hony, watir*e* of barlye, gotyswheyȝ, wat*er* of þe see, wat*er* of bry*m*ston þat clansith & hetyþ, wat*er* of Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. Þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mu*n*dificatyfes, and oygnementys *com*ponede in þe
24 antitodarye of þis ilke book*e*.

¶ Cap. xii of þe þridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a[6] festr*e*.

ffestre[7] is a depe olde wou*n*de and[8] þe mouth is streyt of hy*m* &
28 þe grou*n*de is brod, & he haþ wiþ y*n*ne hy*m* a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose pe*n*ne oþ*er* ellys a kane, & a ffestre haþ
[9]diffence fro*m* a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlc*us* & a [9 fol. 63 b]
Cau*er*nose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þowȝ
32 þ*a*t þey acorde*n* togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus haþ noȝt wiþyn hy*m* a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festr*e* may noȝt be clensyde w*ith* wasschynges, w*ith* þe whiche a[10] cavernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, after*e* þat

[4] MS. *þese*, twice. [5] *in cure*, a scribal mistake from *sugre*.
[6] *of a*, above line. [7] MS. *ffirste*.
[8] *in*, cancelled; *and*, above line. [10] *a*, above line.

remeue þilke calose hardnesse wiþ a cauterie eiþer with a medicyn cauterizinge þat is brennynge, þe which cauterie ouþir brennynge schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherfore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis seience, 4 þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wiþ medicyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

Nota. If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

& if þat a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunee of þe senewe be not corrupt ne þe 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoyne & staumpe it with salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe ius of þilke egrymoyne, & do it into þe [1]hole of þe festre wiþ a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe þere-vpon til he haue 12 slayn þilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wiþinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wiþ þe whiche þou schalt waisehe þe festre þat is now vlcus I-compouuned in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16 R vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed ℥ .iiij., of leeues of olyuetre bounden togidere wiþ a þred / ℥ j., of galingale[2] ʒ j, boile alle þese to þe perfiʒtnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do awey þe

[1 fol. 47]

[2] *galingale*, ne. galangale, for *sagitelle*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn þilke callose hardnesse with a 20 cauterye, opere wiþ a medycine cauterysynge þat ys brennynge, þe whiche cauterye oper brennynge scholde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe þe difference of þis seyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre with medycines different þat longyth to hem boþe. And ʒif þat a festre be in þe flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be noʒt corupte ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medycine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wiþ salt, as þon woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of þilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre with a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe þere-vpon, tyl he hane slaw[3] alle þilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is withynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, with þe whiehe þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere:[4] R water ℔ .j., of vynegre ℔. ß, of hony despumed ℥ iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre with a þrede, ʒ .j., of [5]sagytelle ℥ .j., boylle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

[5 fol. 64 a]

[3] At the end of the line. One letter wanting.
[4] *Confection of syrup mellyne*, in margin.

leeues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup with þe leeues of sagittel & waische þe vleus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir-
4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leeues of sagittelle & leie a sagittel-leef aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn I-preued, but if þat substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be
8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if þat þe calosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn of egrimoyne [1]ne suffisiþ nouȝt, but it is nessessarie to haue a cauterie of fier eiþer a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou
12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowynge in þe book / & if þat þe boone were corrupt in þe depþe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge tauȝt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi þilke weie,
16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi erokid placis & hid placis of þe face[2] persinge into depþe, it is[3] an vnperfiȝt cure, but þou maist pale[4] it, & do it awey þe stinche with hony waischinge, enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & with defensiuis aboute þe place

If parts of a bone or sinew are rotten,

[1 If. 47, bk.]

use cauterization, or a caustic medicine, and remove the morbid bone.

[2] Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. [3] *it is*, above line.
[4] *pale*, Lat. palliare. Dufr., *Gloss.*: 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

---

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of þe surype with þe leffys of sagytelle, & wasschе þe Vleus þat was festre tofore with þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
24 sagytelle, & leye a sagitelle leff aboue, and þis medyeine þou schalt conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde with þis medyeine y-prefed, but ȝif þe substaunce of þe synwe & of þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be
28 nouȝt old & ȝif þat þe callosite be noȝt to hard. In þese tweye eases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffiseþ noȝt, but it ys necessarye a kanterye of fyre oþer a medycine caustyke; & of þese medyeins þou schalt han a ful techynge, folwynge in þe boke. And ȝif
32 þat þe bon were corupte in þe depþe of þe festre, do yt aweye after þe techynge, þat y haue tauȝte þe in þe chapiteH tofore. And hereof take hede: ȝif þat a festere perse be þe weyȝes of þe vryne, so þat þe Vryne go out by þilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
36 oþer ellys þat he go by erokyde placys and hudel[4] places of þe face, persynge into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste noȝt perseyue, hit ys bettyre noȝt for to cure with a perfyte cure, but þou maiste pale it & don awey þe stynke, with hony & wasschynges of
40 emplastre in mundificatyfes & with defensifes aboute þe place, þat

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5] *hudel*, adj. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hýdels*, hiding-place.

cauterizacioun of þe senew þat is hirt.

þat his maliee mowe[1] þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynturis as þe feet eiþer þe knee, eiþer þe hand, eiþir þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiþer rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it be greuous for to cure it, þer is noon oþer wey, but a liȝt eauterizaeioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizaeioun wiþ hoot iren eiþer wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensiþ & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & reetifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & [2]a medecyn caustik worchiþ þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle[3] in[4] antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of eauterisynge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowynge. & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificaeioun of þilke eolose fleiseh, regendre fleisch & consowde with medieyns regeneratius & eonsolidatiuis þe whiehe þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

[2 lf. 48]

¶ Capm xiijm canser vlcirat

The xiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comeþ of openynge, eiþer of kuttinge, eiþer of brekynge of a eankre not I-woundid, whos teehinge þou schalt

[1] MS. *moore.* [3] See page 86, note 3.

[4] *þe þridde tretis folowynge / & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundificaeioun* struck through in red. after *to þe fulle in.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juneturys as þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard forto hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an oþere plaee & he haue eoroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þowȝ þat it be greffes forto cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyȝt cauterysaeioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysaeioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeþ [5]þe synwe þat ys eorupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medyeine caustyke worehep þe contrarye. Brennynge medycines, boþe symple & componed, þou sehalt han to þe fulle in þe antitodarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of eauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwynge; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundyfieacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenere fleseh & consoude with medyeines regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou sehalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

[5 fol. 64 b]

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techynge off þe ffirste tretys is Off a Canker.

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde eomyth of opnynge, oþere of kuttynge, oþere of brekynge of a eanere noȝt y-woundyde, whose teehynge þou

haue *in* þe chapitle of þe apostymes *in* þe þridde techi*n*ge / & he comeþ of a wou*n*de yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comeþ to þe wou*n*de is þe*re* cor-
4 ru*m*pid & chau*n*giþ þe vlcus into a cankre / arises from a badly healed or purulent wound.

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynkynge, þe lippis be*n* grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wiþi*n*ne kirnely, & ou*er* al aboute arerid and [1]holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene
8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue m*aa*d mencio*un* aboue, þat if þat þou waische he*m* boþe wiþ liȝe, þe cankre schal be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þe*re* schal falle out of hi*m* pecis gobetmele.[2] & þe vlcus is clensid wiþ þilke liȝe, & þe fleisch
12 is m*aa*d fairer þa*n* it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkiþ not bi þe same stinche as þe cankre doiþ; for þe cankre haþ a p*ro*pre sauour, þe which mai not be write wiþ lettre; but þilke sauour is best knowe of me*n* whiche þat best han seiȝe cankreis.[3]

Its signs are: the peculiar condition of the wound, [1 lf. 48, bk.]

Nota the effect of a lye lotion, and the smell of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not be heelid, but if þat he be do awey wiþ alle hise rotis / þe seco*un*de rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wiþ hoot iren ne w*ith* hoot medicyn caustik, þat is to seie bre*n*ny*n*ge, but he be *in* place

A cancer must either be left untouched or entirely removed.

[2] *gobetmele*, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further, Mätzner, *Dict.* [3] MS. *cankre is.*

---

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostem*es* in þe þridde techynge & he comyth of a wou*n*de yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a malycolient rotyde matere, o*per* for þ*at* þe matere comeþ to þe wou*n*de is þ*ere* coruppyd, & chau*n*gyth þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ
24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ule*us* ys foule & stynkynge, þe lippes beþ grete, wanne, o*per*e blake, harde, and w*i*þi*n*ne kernelly, & ou*er*e alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene canere & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensiou*n* aboue,
28 þ*at* ȝif þ*at* þou wassche hem boþe[4] wiþ leyȝe, þe cancre schal be*n* pale & foulere þe*n*ne he was tofore, & þ*ere* schal fallen out of hy*m* pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede w*ith* þilke leyȝe, & þe flesch ys made fayrere þe*n*ne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ
32 noȝt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath a p*ro*pre saffoure, þe which may noȝt be wryte*n* wiþ lettres, but þilke safoure ys best knowyn to of me*n*, whiche þ*at* beste han seye cankrys. A [5]gene*ra*lle rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þ*at* a cankyre
36 may noȝt be*n* helyde bot ȝif þ*at* he be done awey wiþ alle hys rotys. The seco*un*de rule ys, þ*at* he schal noȝt ben touchyde w*ith* hot yren ne wiþ hot medycyne caustyk—þ*at* is to sigge, bre*n*nynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 65 *a*]

[4] MS. o*per*e.

Nota

If possible, cut away and burn the cancer, and apply a cleansing poultice.

[1 If. 49]

where he may al be doon awey / for þe more þat þou touchist him wiþ a violent þing eiþer medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid / Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al awey wiþ alle hise rotis / & þanne þriste out al þe malancolient [1]blood þat is wiþinne þe veynes þat ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis confeccioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,[2] til þat he be perfiȝtliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice. 4 8

Nota

the consel off ypocras: If the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all.

ypocras.

To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt wiþ sirurgie heelen a cancre: first euacue þe malancolient mater, for þat is ypocras techinge; & if þat he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not be doon al awey, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouȝt to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For & he be curid, þat is to seie kutt or I-brent, þei perischen þe sunnere; & if þei ben not curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro vj°. afforismorum: Cancri absconditi multum tempus perfuciunt 12 16

[2] *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. "Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley." See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

Add. MS. 12,056.

—but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thynge oþer medycine, þe more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede ȝif he be in a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte hym al aweye wiþ alle hys rotys, & þruste out þe malencolyent blod þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat beþ aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wiþ hote yren. Afterward leye on þis confectioun y-mad of floure of whete hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfitly y-clansyde. After regenere flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou wylt wiþ surgerye helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & ȝif he be growen in swyche a place, þere as he may noȝt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore in þe tetys, oþere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oþer in þe marys, and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes buþ, as ypocras seith, yt ys betyre noȝt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte oþere y-brent, þey peryssehen sonnere; & ȝif þey be noȝt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—**libro sexto afforismorum Cancri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt** 20 24 28 32 36

Regula, in margin.

curati vero cici*us* p*er*eunt / But defende þe lyme þat is hool aboute w*it*h defensif of bole þat I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe wou*n*de of þe cankre wiþ gotis whey, & drie it softly, [1]& anoynte
4 þe wounde wiþi*n*ne & wiþoute w*it*h þis oynement of rasis &[2] tutie[3] / take ceruse,[4] tutie I-waische & medle he*m* wiþ oile of rosis & wiþ ius of purcelane[5] or of sum oþ*er*e cold eerbe, putte y*n*ne sum of þe toon, & now su*m* of þat oþ*er*, til þe oynement be weel I-m*a*ad /
8 þis oynement is myche worþ for to defende þat þe malice of þe cancre schal not wexen, & also þat þe pacient vse a good gou*er*naile: as dri*n*ke good wiyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leeue reed wiyn & troublid & þicke wiyn, & he m*a*y ete good fleisch, as
12 motou*n*[6] of a weþ*er*, kide fleisch sowkynge, capou*n*s, he*n*nes, chikenes, partrichis,[7] fesau*n*tis, & smale briddis, & he muste leeue: beeues fleisch[8] & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos, dokis, & alle greete briddis þat lyuen in wat*r*i placis, & al salt
16 þi*n*g & acute þing: as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]*

Use a lotion

R

[1 lf. 49, bk.]

and vnguentu*m* tute

the diet for þe canker:

the patient shall only take white wine and digestible food.

[2] *&*, erroneously for *of*.

[3] *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtiā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

[4] *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

[5] *purcelane*, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

[6] *moton*, carnes ovine. Wr. Wü., 741, 39. xvth cent.

[7] *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* [8] *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

---

curati v*er*o cici*us* p*er*eu*n*t. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol aboute w*it*h defensiff of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche þe wou*n*de of þe cancre w*it*h gotys wheyȝ, & drye yt softlyche &
20 anoynt þe wou*n*de w*it*h*i*nne & w*it*hout, wit*h* þis oygnement of rasys of tutye, ℞ ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle he*m* wiþ oyle of roses & wiþ jus of poslane, [9]oþ*er*e of su*m* oþ*er*e colde erbe, now puttynge in su*m* of þe on & now su*m* of þe oþ*er*e, tyl þe oygnement
24 be ful mad. Þis oygnement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe malys of þe cancre þat is y-wou*n*dyde schal noȝt waxen, and also þat þe pacient vse a gode gou*er*naylle: as drynkinge gode wyn & clere & lyȝt, & he mote leue*n* red wyn and troblyde & þykke wyn;
28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motou*n* of a weþire, kyde fflesch sokkynge, Capou*n*s, hen*n*ys, Chykenys, partryches, ffesauntes, & smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch, gotys fflesch, hertys flesch, harys fflesch, goses, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyue*n*
32 in watrye places, & alle salt þynge & acute þynge: as garlyke, Oynou*n*s, vynegre, &c., þat* þe syke me*n* mowe lyue*n* þe lengere vpon

Add. MS. 12,056.

[9 fol. 65 b]

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if vlcus be riȝt foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward
[1 lf. 50] weel be clensid ; & for *þat* þis vlcus [1]*þat* was so foul may be heelid / 4

Rogeryn and Roland pretended to have healed old cancers.

Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye o*þer*e settide in her bokis þe cure of a cankre, þouȝ *þat* he be i*n* a senewey place, & þei seien *þat* þei han heelid hi*m* / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, *þat* an olde cankre mai not be heelid bi noon o*þer* wey, but bi þe same wey *þat* 8 I haue seid i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge of þis chapitle / & if *þat* þou dredist wheþ*er* *þat* it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes

In doubtful cases rub with a powder;

& þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigy*n*ne to mortifie it wiþ su*m* man*er* of poud*re* : as wiþ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12 of erbe robert[2] / & loke aftirward þe prosis of þi worchinge seiþ

In the case of cancer the patient will grow worse.

þis boke[3] / For if *þat* he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more þou woldist clense hi*m*, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if he be not a cankre, he schal be cle*n*sid riȝt as an vlcus / Wha*n*ne *þat* 16 þou seest þe wexynge of a cankre & his malice agme*n*te*n*, ceesse from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oynement of tutie, þe which *þat* paliþ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

[2] *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. Geranium Robertianum. See *Prior*, p. 113. Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. Ruprechtskraut : Roberti herba (Geranii species).

[3] *seiþ þis book*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

erthe. Naþeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20 a cancre, off þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde wiþ poudre of affedylle, and aft*er*warde wel be clansyde, & for *þat* þis Vlc*us* *þat* was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland & manye o*þer*e settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, powȝ 24 *þat* he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen *þat* þey haue helyde hym. But vndirstande wel for certeyne, *þat* an olde cancre may noȝt ben helyde by none o*þer*e wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche *þat* y haue seyde in þe bygy*n*nynge of þys chapyteH. & ȝif *þat* þou dredyst, 28 wheþ*er*e *þat* yt be a cancre o*þer*e a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes, begy*n*ne to mortefye yt wiþ su*m* man*er* poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke afterwarde þe p*ro*cesse of þy worchynge ; ffor ȝif *þat* he be a verrey 32 cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clanse*n* hy*m* þe more hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
[4 fol. 66 *a*] clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Wha*n*ne *þat* þou seste þe waxyng [4]of þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36 ageyne to þe forseyde cure of þe oygnement of tuetye, whiche *þat* palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou p*ro*-

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

The .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis / [lf. 50, bk.] ¶ Capm xiiijm.

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heelid / & also I tolde þe teehinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat lettem mai be don awey bi a good surgien & a wijs; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge. If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eiþer in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heelid of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &[1] if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curynge of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn[2] þe sike man neiþir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttynge, ne with puttynge into þe woundis greete tentis; but do aboue þe vlcus liȝt

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

[1] The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original: si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

[2] *in deueyn* = in veyn.

---

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe paeientes lyff. And ȝif þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techynge of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytle of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges pleuerlyehe þat beþ neeessarye to remywe eehe sengle eause, þat is necessarye to be done awey. And now y schal in þis specyal chapytle teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may be done awey by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat ȝif þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapyteH to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plenere techynge. ȝif þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye; loke ȝif þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & penne hele hym ȝif þat þou canst, and ȝif þat he be noȝt ful of elde humorys; whiche þat nedytli to curynge of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle noȝt in deveyne þe syke man, nowþere with medycines corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyȝte mundyficatyfes & swote

and in the mean time only mild mundificatifs applied.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepiþ þe membre liȝtliche clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel disposiciou*n*, thanne turne aȝen to þe principal cure / & þis same

[1 If. 51 a]

þing [1] I saye of yuel disposiciou*n* of þe lyuere of what maner cause 4

The same must be done if the liver or the spleen is bad.

þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese tweyne ben in her kyndely disposiciou*n*, olde wou*n*dis mou*n* not be heelid. If [2] þat greet multitude of blood lettiþ, þat may be knowen

If the patient has too much blood,

bi ful replecciou*n* of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8 ciou*n* of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating [3] / Wha*n*ne þat a man is fastynge, bi henynes of þe browis, & bi ȝong age. & his complexiou*n* is hoot & moist, & þat he haþ vsid in his dietynge

use phlebotomy.

wiyn and fleisch; & make hi*m* þa*n*ne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12 which þat bryngiþ norischi*n*ge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne þat mai best voide*n* þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood trespace oonly i*n* qualite, amende hi*m* as if þat he be to hoot, voide hi*m* a litil & diete hi*m* wi*th* colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16 pro*c*ede forþ i*n* alle maner oþir causis as it is told i*n* þe general chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben su*m*me maner medicyns whiche þat ben driynge & clensynge, & han a priuy [4] pro*p*irte to consowde

[2] *if* above line.
[3] *flating*, Add. MS. *wlattynge*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.
[4] *privy*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, pryvay. occultus.
[a] Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

smellynge *þat* kepyth the me*m*bre lyȝtlyche elene, *þat* he stynke 20 noȝt. And wha*n*ne *þat* he is curyde fro*m* an yuele disposiciou*n*, tu*r*ne aȝeyne to þe pr*i*ncypal cure; & þis same þynge y sugge of yuele disposiciou*n* of þe lyfere, of what man*e*re cause *þat* þe enfeblyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but ȝif þese tweyne 24 ben in here kendlye dysposiciou*n*, olde wou*n*des mowe noȝt ben helyde. ȝif *þat* grete multitude off blode lette þe, *þat* may be knowe by ful replecciou*n* of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse & extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattynge, 28

[3 fol. 66 b]

whe*n*ne *þat* a man ys fastynge, by [5] henynesse of þe browys, & by ȝonge age, & *þat* hys *com*plexou*n* ys hot & moyst, and *þat* he hath y-vsyde in hys dyotynge wyn & fflesch, and þe*n*ne make hym be lete blode on þe veyne, whiche *þat* bryngeth norysschynge to þe 32 lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne *þat* may beste voyden þe membre *þat* ys y-hurt. And ȝif *þat* þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte, amende hy*m* as ȝif *þat* he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And afte*r*warde pro*c*ede forth in 36 alle o*þe*re manere cases as it ys tolde in þe gene*r*aH chapyteH, takynge hede *þat* þere ben su*m* man*e*re medycines, whiche *þat* beþ dryȝinge & clansynge, & haue a prefe pro*p*rete to. *con*sonde olde wou*n*dys,

olde woundis whiche þat ben difficult to be consowdid; of þe whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe [1]ben compounned / [1 lf. 51, bk.]
Symple ben: limature of iren, flour of bras brent, vitriol leed Simple consolidatifs.
4 brent, & alle scharpe corosiuis if þat þei ben brent; for þat þei han vertu more to consowden, & also her corrisoun is lessid / þis is
a medicyn compounned: take floris[2] eris, limature of bras ana. ℥ j. a compound consoledatiff
litarge of gold, litarge of siluir, ʒ .viij. gumme of cipresse, ʒ .iiij.
8 sal gemme,[3] ʒ .ij. aristologia I-brent smal to poudre of frankencense, ana. ʒ .v. wex & oile of mirtill þat suffisiþ // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a crampe þat comeþ to a wounde / ¶ Capm. xvm.

12 Nessessarie þing is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of a crampe, þe which þat comeþ to a wounde þat schulde be heelid, & also þat he knowe þe disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe, & also what þing þat þe crampe is, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /
16 þe crampe is a sijknes cordous eiþer neruous, in þe which sijknes Cramp is a contraction of the tendons or nerves arising from
cordis & þe senewis weren drawen to her bigynnynge; of þe whiche drawynge þat ben .ij. causis coniunct: þe toon is repleccioun of þe

[2] Lat. flor. æris.
[3] *sal gemme.* A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

---

whiche þat beþ deffykel to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medycines Add. MS.
20 some beth̃ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature 12,056.
of bras, lymature of Iren, ffloure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent, and alle scharpe corosifes, ȝif þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde.
24 þis ys a medycine componyde: R. ffloris eris, lymature of bras ana .ʒ. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. ʒ. viij., gumme of cypresse .ʒ. iiij, sal gemme .ʒ. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of ffrank Ensence ana. ʒ. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the þridde techynge of þe ffirste tretys is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

Necessarye thynge ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe crampe whiche þat comyth̃ to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,
32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat haþ þe crampe. And also what þynge þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, oþere ellys nervose, in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to
36 here bygynnynge; of þe whiche drawynge þere beþ tweye causes

repletion or inanition.

[2 lf. 52]

senewe, þe oþ*er*e of þe corde, þe oþ*er* is *in*anisiou*n*.[1] He þ*at* is of in-anisiou*n*, [2]ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche cuacuaciou*n* of blood eiþ*er* of su*m* oþer þi*n*g, as to longe afflicciou*n* for long akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike ma*n* haþ be*n* longe tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ litil & litil, & þe crampe þ*at* comeþ of boþe þese causis may not be heelid. & he þ*at* comeþ of repleciou*n* haþ oon of þe .iij. cansis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iij. canse is putrifacciou*n* eiþer rotynge / & þou3 þat oon sengle cause su*m*tyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togiders / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat he be confermed, & aftir þat he is confermed seelde*n* or neuere / A surgian muste þa*n*ne be bisy i*n* al þat he my3te, þat a crampe ne wexe not i*n* þe won*n*de þat schulde be heelid, wiþ obuiaciou*n*[3] defendi*n*ge þe lyme, þat noon of þe .iij. causis tofore seid ne come nou3t into þe wou*n*de: þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifacciou*n* / þe toþ*er*e is for kepi*n*ge þe lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gou*er*ne hi*m* from a greet akynge / for it is more sikir to defende þat a crampe [4]ne come not, þa*n*ne aftir þ*at* he is come with medicyns þat is douteful or dredeful to

Repletion occurs after .1. great pain, .2. cold, .3. putrefaction.

Cramp must be prevented in three ways: .1. .2. .3.

[4 lf. 52, bk.]

as it is difficult to heal.

[1] *inanisiou*n, Lat. inanitio. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."
[3] *obuiaciou*n. Lat. cum obuiatione defensiuorum.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 67 *a*]

*con*juncte: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, oþ*er*e of þe corde, þe oþ*er*e is Inanysion. He þ*at* ys in[5] avision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fo*r*e, [6]as to myche evacuaciou*n* of blod, oþ*er*e of su*m* othire thynge; as to longe afflictiou*n* for longe akþe, oþ*er*e ellys, for þe Apetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enffeblyde; & þis comyth lytel & lyteH, and þe crampe þ*at* comyth of boþe þese causys may no3t be*n* helyde. And he þ*at* comyth of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefacciou*n* oþ*er* rotynge; and þow3 þ*at* one sengle cause su*m*tyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þ*at* he be comfermyde, & after þ*at* he ys *con*fermyde selden oþ*er*e neffe*r*e. A surgyne moste þe*n*ne be busye; in alle þ*at* he my3te, þ*at* a crampe no wexe no3t in þe wou*n*de þ*at* scholde be helyde, wiþ obuiacion dyffendynge þ*at* none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come no3te to þe wounde; þe one ys in deffendynge þe lyme fro*m* putrefacciou*n*, þe oþ*er*e is in kepynge þe lyme fro*m* rotenesse, þe þridde is to gou*er*ne hy*m* fro*m* gret akynge; ffor it is mo*r*e sykere to dyffende, þ*at* a crampe ne come no3t, þe*n*ne after*e* þ*at* he ys come wi*th* medycine þ*at* is doutes oþ*er*e dredful to

[5] Scribal mistake.

do awey / For if a fenere come to an heed or to a senewe þat is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it is deedliche.

Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anoyntynge of oile of rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe comeþ fro woundis þat ben maad in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so greet, þat makiþ þe crampe for þe prickynge of a senewe or ellis of a corde / & if þat þou myȝtist nouȝt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusynge, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ suppositorie, ne wiþ defensif in anoyntynge þe necke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo þilke senewe or þilke corde þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þe felynge or þe meuynge of þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde seruеþ in parti or in al be lost / For it is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge & þe menynge of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it is bettere, if þat þou cowdist, to kepe a man þer-fro with opere [1] medicyns þan þat þe senewe or þe corde be kutt al atwo. & if [2] þat þou were not at þe bigynnynge, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a wounde, do þou as I dide at melain. Þer was a scoler of myn þat was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a scheþere

Treatment of cramp. Allay the suffering with an ointment, if necessary, cut the injured nerve or tendon. [1 lf. 53] Nota.

[2] *if*, above line.

---

don aweye, Ffor ȝif þat a ffeuyre come to an hed opere to a synwe þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche. Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe with anoyngtynge of oyle of rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys, þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis[3] in þe synwe: And ȝif þat akþe were so grete, þat makyth a crampe for þe prikynge off a synwe oþer ellys of a corde, and ȝif þou myȝtest noȝt deffende þe crampe, newhere wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ suppositorye, ne with defensif in anoyntynge þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þowȝ þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oþer in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre [4] þat a man lese þe felynge & þe meffynge of a lyme þenne þawȝ þat he deyȝe. But yt is bettyre ȝif þat þou couþest kepen a man with opere manere medycines, þenne þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And ȝif þat þou were noȝt at þe bygynninge, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. Þere was a Scolere of myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

Add. MS. 12,056. [4 fol. 67 b]

[3] *ellis*, above line.

Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wounde þe pannicle
ouþir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch
was hurt, & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. &

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

þilke leche, or þanne he hadde perfiȝtlich purified þilke pannicle, 4
sowdide þe wounde wiþoutforþ[1]; & whanne þilke wounde was
sowdid, þe panniele þat was not weel heelid hadde a dedein[2] &
was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. & at þe

Lanfranc found the patient dying.

laste I was elepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe 8
crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute
his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—&
þanne I demede him for deed / Neþeles at þe instaunce of hise

[4 lf. 53, bk.]

freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made 12

He reopened the wound,

his heed to be schaue,[3] & I kutte aȝen þe wounde þat was [4]con-
sowdid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I

anointed

fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe
heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16
I anoyntide þe nolle & þe neeke oonly wiþ oile of rosis, & I dide
on þe wounde þe ȝelke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, and I boond al

[1] *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

[2] *dedein*, Lat. panniculus *indignatus* causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. indegnare 3.—Compare *þe ludych lorde—hade dedayn of þat dede.*—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

[3] *I made his hed to be schaue*, abradi caput feci.

Add. MS. 12,056.

curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke
wounde þe pannyele oþere þe skyn þat keuerytħ þe breyne panne, 20
þat is vndire þe fflesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne
was noȝt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde perfytlyche
y-puryfiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde withouten forth; &
whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was noȝt 24
wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a
crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was elepyde to þilke
syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe
he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28
yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for
ded. Nabeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe
worchynge of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schaue, and
y kutte aȝeyne þe wounde, þat was consoudid, with a rasoure to þe 32
deppe of þe same wounde, & afterewarde y fulfylde þilke wounde
with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same
oyle of roses & a lytell vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe
nolle & þe nekke onlye wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36
þe ȝolke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

þe heed wiþ a boond leiynge *þer* vndir herdis[1] or towȝ smal I tosid, and I openede his mouþ & putte into his mouþ þe broþ maad of a chiken, wiþ comyn & also wiþ cleer wiyn medlid wiþ myche wat*er*; on þe morowe I turnede aȝen & I foond þe sike of bettere disposiciou*n*, & I openede bettere his mouþ, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond þe wou*n*de drie, & þa*n*ne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe same oyntur*e*. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of þe heed was m*aa*d moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe fier, & i*n* so miche[2] þe skyn was maad þi*n*ne, þ*at* þer was no þi*n*g bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn pa*n*ne. & at þe laste þe wou*n*de quytturide wiþ contynuau*n*ce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis [3]maner þe ȝonge man was heelid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wou*n*de / But þilke crampe was wiþoute feuere; for I may not þenke þ*at* I haue seen a feuere i*n* þe wou*n*des of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis prickid a crampe, þ*at* nouȝt aȝenstondynge remedie eiþ*er* medicyns þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete him blood i*n* þe bigy*n*nynge þ*at* haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be strong & replete, & if þ*at* he haue not bled ynouȝ at his wou*n*dis; & anoynte his nolle & his necke wiþ hoote oynementis as wiþ oile

and bandaged the head,
gave strengthening nourishment,
[3 lf. 54]
and so eured the patient.
If fever occurs death ensues.
Bleed the patient,
use ointments,

[1] *herdis.* See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." [2] *þat*, inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056.

bonde leggynge *þere* undyre hurdys o*þere* towȝ smal tosyde, and y opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde w*ith* myche watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde aȝeyne & y fonde þe syke of bettyre dysposiciou*n*, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak bettyre; & naþeles [4]y fonde þe wou*n*de drye, & þe*n*ne y dede efte sonys þe same medycine & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þ*at* was to forne as drye as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was y-made þu*n*ne, þ*at* þ*er*e was noþynge betwene þe skyn & þe breyne pa*n*ne. & at þe laste þe wou*n*de quyteryde w*i*þ *con*tynewau*n*ce of þe same cur*e* tofor*e* seyde, & in þis man*er*e þe ȝonge man was helyde boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wou*n*de. But þilke crampe was w*ith*outen ffeuyre; ffor y ne may noȝt þynke þ*at* y haue seyn[5] a ffevyre in þe wou*n*des of synwes, o*þere* ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þ*at* noȝt aȝeyne stondynge remedye / o*þere* medycynes þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste *con*seyle is to letyn hym blod in the bygy*n*ninge þ*at* haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge & replete, and ȝif þ*at* he haue nouȝt bled ynowȝ at hys wou*n*de; and anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wiþ hote oynementys, as wit*h* oyle of

[4 fol. 68 *a*]

[5] *a wounde* struck through after *seyn*.

Nota. of' nardine, euforbine, oile of' rue,[1] lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make
small cauteries, smale cauteries punctale, þat' is to seie as smal as þe eende of' a
pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of' þe necke, so neuere-þe-lattere þat'
bandages. þe cauterie go not' ouer depe / Aftirward bynde long' wolle to his 4
heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do þeron hoot'
oile, & leie him in a soft' bed & lete him be in reste & in pees /
But' þer ben summe þat' setten in her bookis medicyns þat' prouoken þe feueris; for þat' ypocras techiþ in .iiij^to^ afforismoris: a 8
ypocras. **spasmo[2] vel te[3]tano habito febre[4] superueniente soluit' egritudinem** / þat' is to seie: if' þat' a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane
[3 lf. 54, bk.] says that fever takes away the cramp or tetanus; þat' is a sijknes þat' halt' þe membre lich streit' on boþe sidis as a
crampe halt' þe oon side of' þe membre & þe feuere come on þilke 12
crampe eiþir þilke tetane, he distrieþ þe crampe eiþir þe sijknes; &
also þei anoynte wiþ to hoot' an oynement' to prouoke þe feueres, þe
he is wrong, if the cramp comes from a wound. which þing' I ne apreue not in þe crampe of' a wounde þouȝ þat'
þilke oynement' myȝte be profitable in a crampe wiþoute wounde, & 16
where þat' humouris abounde, namely, if' it' be fleume.

Signs (symptoms) of cramp. General signs. Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of' schewynge
of' þe crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet' akþe, crokidnes[5]

[1] *rue*, ruta. Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pegamon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch Weinraut. [2] Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.

[4] *febre superveniente*, error for *febris superveniens*.

[5] *crokidness*, Lat. obliquitas.

Add. MS. 12,056. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylyes &c., and also to make smale 20
cauteryes punctales, þat is to sigge as smale as þe eude of a prykke,
bytwene euery whirlebone of þe nekke, so neuere þe latere þat þe
cauterye go nouȝt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolle to
hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þere 24
on hote oyle, & leye hym in a softe bed, & lete hym ben in reste &
in pees. But þere be summe þat setten in here bokys medycines,
þat provocen þe ffeuerys: ffor þat ypocras techyth in quarto affoirismorum: **a spasmo vel detano habito febre superveniente soluit** 28
egritudinem þat ys to sigge; ȝif þat a man haff þe crampe, oþere
ellys a tetane, þat is a syknesse þat halt the membre y-lyche streyt
on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe membre, & þe
ffeuere come on þilke crampe oþere þilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32
crampe oþere þe seknesse, and also þey anoynte with to hote oynement to provoke þe ffeuerys, þe whyche þynge y ne apreff' nouȝt in
þe crampe of a wounde, þowȝ þat þilke oynement myȝte be profitable
[6 fol. 68 b] in a crampe withouten [6] wounde, & where þat humores habounde, 36
namlye, ȝif yt be fflewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be
speciaH of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

of ȝen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose
þrillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe
cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuynge, and namely, of
4 þe neeke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakynge
togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe Special signs.
toon is clepid amprostonos[1], þe toþer empistenos[2], þe .iij. tetanus / .1. .2. .3.
In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid ampros[3]tonos, þe senewis tofore [3 lf. 55] amprostonos
8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike
man may not heuen it vp, he beriþ his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,
& his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his
hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, Empistonos.
12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand
ben streyned bacward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe Tetanus.
body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe
bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his neeke & out
16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewiþ þe
disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese
tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei
teehen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide
20 & cure /

[1] Latin, *Emprosthotonos.* [2] Latin, *Opisthotonos.*

---

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreH Add. MS.
& of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may noȝt speke, & þe chekys ben 12,056.
constreynde, & dyfieulte of swolwynge, & diffyculte of mevynge,
24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne
schakynge togedire. Special signes maken one of pre manere of
crampes: þe on ys y-elepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe
þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is elepyde Empros-
28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed
ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may noȝt heffyn it vp, he berith hys
chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may
noȝt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys
32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,
his chekes beþ opyne, & þe fyngres of hys handys ben streynde
bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he
may nouȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe
36 & streynde, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle
þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym
þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe
wounde of an hed oþere ellys of[4] a synwe, þey teche bettire þe leche
40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

[4] *of*, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is eendid wiþ þe help of almyȝty god. Now *with* þe help of þe same, go to þe secu*n*de /

¶ Cap^m j^m. NOw bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of p*ar*ticuler woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigy*n*ne at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 lf. 55, bk.] [2] Al þi*n*g[1] brefly ordeyned aftir my symple wiH diuisynge, which þat[1] longiþ to þe firste tretis of[1] þis book which þat[1] holdiþ certeyn rulis & techinge of[1] surgerie vndir general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt[1] / now we wolen bigy*n*ne to treten of[1] curis aftir þat[1] þe lymes be*n* i*n* ma*n*nes bodi. & first[1] I wole bigy*n*ne at[1] þe heed & at[1] his anotamie, & so p*ro*cede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of[1] ech me*m*bre, & i*n* ordeynynge þe curis of[1] wou*n*dis þat[1] ben ma*a*d in ech sengle membre. I seie þat[1] þe heed is ma*a*d of[1] þre p*ar*ties: of[1] a fleischi p*ar*tie, of[1] a bony p*ar*tie, & a brawni p*ar*tie. þe fleischi p*ar*tie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat[1] is ma*a*d of[1] an hery skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wiþ braynes in euery p*ar*tie /

The head consists of three parts.

[2] Heading to this page: *Anotemy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-endyde wiþ helpe of almyȝtie god, now *with* þe helpe of[3] þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begy*n*neþ þe secunde tretys off particuler wou*n*des of membris of office fro*m* þe hede to þe ffot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

Al thynge breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysinge of my Symple wytt, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this [4] boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulys & techynges off[1] surgerye vndire gene*r*al chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begy*n*ne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in ma*n*nys body. & firste y wyl begy*n*ne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe p*ro*cesse forþ to eu*er*yche me*m*bre devysinge þe Anotamye of eu*er*y me*m*bre, & in ordeyny*n*ge þe cures of wou*n*dys þat beþ made in eche sengle me*m*bre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre p*ar*tyes: of a fflesch̄y party, a bony p*ar*tye, and a braynie p*ar*tye. þe fflesch̄ p*ar*tye is aboue þe brayn pa*n*ne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde w*ith* brawnys in eu*er*y place. þe

[1 fol. 69 a]

[3] MS. *of* twice.

þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer cold ne hoot, ne schulde not sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn, & neuer-þe-lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myȝte go out bi þe poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myȝte be þe more semeloker, & þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myȝte schewen þe compleccioun*s* of þe heedis // [1 lf. 56]

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

þe skyn þat is [1]aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of þicke fleisch, þat he myȝte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad of sutil predis of senewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes & of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more þickere þan þe brain sculle, þat it schulde ben more rare[2] & more porose, þat is to seie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goynge procediþ of þe heeris /

skyn. is muscular, is made of fibrous cords and veins, is thick and porous.

þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe firste summe,[3] þe whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouȝ þat an hurtynge come to oon boon, neuere-þe-lattere he schulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe seconde help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not be so

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as .1. touching the skull itself.

[2] *rare.* Lat. rarus. [3] Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

---

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere colde ne hete ne scholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosyte of þe hed myȝte go out be þe pores þere as þe here growyth, and þat þe hed myȝte be þe more semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myȝte schewe þe complexioun of þe hed. þe skyn þat is abouen þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of þykke flesch, þat he myȝte wreyen þe breyn panne, þat he scholde noȝt fele to sodeynlyche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyll predys of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-Ioyned with þe skyn off alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þenne þe brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to sigge more ful of holys. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat þe goynge procedyth of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye bonys. þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyth þe profites þat longyth to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpynges; on helpynge ys, þowȝ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe seconde helpe is þat on bon þat is to harde in on partye, ne scholde noȝt be so [4]hard in an oþere [4 fol. 69 b]

Add. MS. 12,056.

.2. the organs under the skull.

[1 lf. 56, bk.]

The sutures of the skull a. form the ways for the veins, .b. let the nerves go out .c. and the fumosity, .d. support the dura mater and pia mater.

The brain pan is formed of two tables,

has seven bones.

1. Coronal.

hard in anoþir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat wiþhalt þe helpingis þat ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wiþinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe [1]semis þat ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myȝte not be maad, but if þat þer were manye boonys / þe first help is, þat þe veynes myȝten go doun bi þe semis of þe brayn panne berynge[2] norischinge to þe same brayn[3] / þe secunde help is, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myȝte haue wey in goynge out / þe þridde help is, þat þe fumes of þe brayn myȝten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þat neiþer dura mater, ne pia mater, þat as þei ben hangid, ne myȝte not greue þe brayn.

So þat þe brayn panne is maad of ij. smeþe liȝt tablis, þat oon is aboue, þe toþir is bynepe / & þei ben summwhat spongious in þe myddis, & rare þat þe smoke of þe heete myȝte bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þat þei myȝten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne dinerslych / summen noumbren mo boonys þan summe oþir speken of / but soþenes is, þat þer ben .vj. & oon which þat susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he bigynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat departiþ þe heed quarter.

[2] MS. inserts *&*. [3] *panne* after *brayn* cancelled.

Add. MS. 12,056.

partye. Seeunde summe, whiche þat withhalt helpynges, þat beþ vnder þe brayn panne, haþ with hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges beþ ful mad be þe semys þat beþ of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myȝte noȝt be mad, but ȝif þat þere were manye bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes myȝte go doun by the semys of[4] þe brayn panne, berynge norosschynge to þe same brayn.

Seeunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comyth out of þe brayn, myȝte habbe wey in goynge out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes of þe brayn myȝte habbe wey of smokynge out. þe ffourþe ys, þat neiþere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myȝte noȝt greue þe brayn. Sytthe þat þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyȝte tablys, þat one ys aboue & þe oþere bynepe, & þey be summwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed myȝte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey myȝte noȝt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat makyth dyuerse Anotamye devydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo bonys, penne summe oþere spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe[5] fforhed oþere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed

[4] *of* above line. [5] *þe* above line.

[1 lf. 57]

[1] & þilke is clepid coronale / þis boon haþ *in* sum maner of[1] men a smal seem in foldynge of[1] þe forheed, & *per*fore su*m* me*n* seyn þat[1] *per* ben .ij. boonis. ij oþir boonys ben ioyned *with* þilke boon coronable *in* þe myddis of[1] þe heed ou*er*þwert[1] ouer; þat[2] þei be*n* bou*n*de togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat[1] streechiþ fro*m* bifore to bihynde to þe lenkþe of[1] þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales, by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben clepid nerualia bi-cause þat[1] þe figure of[1] þe seem þat[1] is *with* þe coronable is þe figure of[1] a senewe eiþ*er* of[1] a corde / þese boonys ben in þe hiȝeste coppe of[1] þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon þe which is clepid alauda.[3] & it[1] is maad *in* þe symilitude of þis : Λ : which þat[1] is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualib*us* tofore seid bi þe mene of[1] oon þa*n* I-made to þe lijknes of[1] þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre semes whiche þat[1] ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben maad as it[1] were two sawis, þe whiche teeþ ben ioyned, eeh of[1] he*m* in oþir in þis mane*r* ⋀⋀⋀⋀ / & þis ioyny*n*ge togidere of[1] oon boon wiþ anoþir was maad bi-cause of[1] iuvamentis þat[1] I haue told to[5]forn; þer is no boon ioyned *with* anoþ*er* as þese boonys be*n*. [5 lf. 57, bk.]

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.

figure in augrim[4]

[2] *þat* insertion.

[3] Latin : "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi ; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

[4] *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. algorism.

Add. MS. 12,056.

twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath in some mane*re* of me*n* a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed, & þe*re* fore su*m* me*n* siggeþ þat þe*re* beþ tweye bonys. Tweye oþ*er*e bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bou*n*de togedyre by one Iuctu*re*, þe whiche þat streechiþ fro*m* tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde **Nerualia**, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale, [6 fol. 70 *a*]
[6] ys þe ffigure of a synwe oþ*er*e of a corde. And þese bonys ben in þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þ*er*e ys a bon whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of þis eyffre of Augrym Λ, whiche þat ys Ioynede *with* þe bonys nerualib*us* tofore seyde, by þe mene of on ȝem y-mad to þe lyknesse of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre ȝemes whiche þat Ioyneþ togedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye[7] ȝawes, whos teth joyned eche of hem in oþ*er*e in thys mane*re* / WNDOW & þis ioyninge togedire of on bon *with* an oþ*er* was y-made by-cause Iuvamentes þat y haue tolde beforn; þ*er*e nys no bon y-ioynede with an oþ*er*e as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

[7] MS. *tweye* twice.

V. Tassillus (Basilar bone) supports all the other bones.

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, *þer* is a ful hard boon & holid *in* þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. Þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned bynebe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. Þe schap of þe coniu*n*ccioun of þe .v. boonis of þe heed is in þis maner ЄГM. Boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat ben clepid nerualia *[whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese boonys *in* oon p*a*rtie be*n* ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passiþ þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & su*m*men seien þat *per* be*n* .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & wha*n*ne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonys, wha*n*ne þat þou rekenest os[1] coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat be*n* clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat be*n* iij, & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat ben clepid nerualia þat be*n* .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe o*per*e boonys of þe heed.[2] & iij. ma*ner* of semes [3]makiþ coniuneciou*n* of alle þe boonys i*n* þis maner ȝȝ

VI, VII. Temporal bones (mendosa); one portion is called os petrosum.

The skull has seven bones,

three true sutures, [3 If. 58]

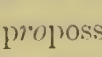
[1] MS. *as*.

[2] Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberynge in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or paxillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056.

y-clepyde Alauda, *þere* ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteynetħ alle þe bonys of þe hed. Þe whiche bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede bynebe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. Þe schappe of þe *coni*uecciou*n* of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis ma*nere* ЄЄWEN. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseyde bonys whiche *þat* beþ y-clepyde **nerualia,*** whiche *þat* beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, *þere* ben twey bonys on eiþ*ere* syde*; þe whiche *þat* beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys *þat* beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**; & þo bonys *þat* vndir*e* set'en, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one p*ar*tye ben ful harde, *þere* as þe hole of þe ere passytħ þorwȝ, & þey ben y-clepede [4]petrosa & su*m* men siggen *þat* *þere* ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & wha*n*ne *þat* alle bonys of þe hed be Ioynede togedire *þou* schalt fynde in sotfastnesse, *þat* *þere* ben but sixe bonys wha*n*ne *þat* *þou* reknyste **os**[5] **coronale** ffor on bon, & tweye bonys *þat* beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne *þat* beþ þre, and o bon *þat* ys y-clepyde Alanda, & tweye bonys *þat* is y-clepyde nerualia—*þat* beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe bonys of þe hed, but he susteynetħ alle þe o*pere* bonys of þe hed. And þre ma*ner* of semys makytħ *coni*uccion*n* of alle þe bonys on þis

[4] MS. petotra. [5] MS. as.

& wiþ .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 22O. & whanne þat þe crounne of þe heed is perfiȝt, þe heed is maad in þis maner 110 / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propossiound, round  þat he myȝte more wiþholde, & þat he myȝte lasse be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid[1], hauynge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seie apeirynge, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myȝten haue a porose place of goynge out. & neþeles as ypocras & galion, whiche þat expownep ypocras, telliþ[2], it is possible to fynde oþir in maner of makyng of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleynes þe seem is lost, þat is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleynes þe seeme is lost þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þer be noon eminence bifore ne bihinde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þer is but oon seem in þe myddil of þe brayn panne: for it is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oþer [3]schap wiþoute lesynge of sum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious aȝens þe lijf / Bi þe myddil seem which þat is in þe heed, þere discendiþ a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe

two false sutures (mendosæ).

A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,

ypocras. & Galion enumerate peculiar forms:

.1. front part flat,

.2. back part flat,

.3. without any prominence.

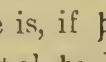
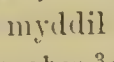
.Nota.

[3 lf. 58, bk.]

A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,

[1] *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge. [2] *telliþ*, error for *tellen*.

---

manere  , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys perfyt, þe hed [4]ys mad in þis manere  . þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be ronde because þat he myghte þe more withholde, & þat he myȝte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped havynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperynge, þat þe synwes þat comyth out of þe brayn, myghte haue a porose place of goynge out. And naþelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypocras, tellyn: it is possible to fynden þre oþere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, ȝif eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for ȝif þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat pleynnesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde **coronalis**. Secunde ys ȝif þe hed haff non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore party be playn, and by þat playnnesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.[5] þe þridde ys ȝif þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a cercle. And þenne þere nys but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn panne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye oþere schappe wiþouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendyth a veyne comynge

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 70 b]

[5] MS. *Abauda*.

brayn panne of a boon which þat is holid þat is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle þat is to seie a clooþ þat is vndir þe brayn panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of þe semes. þe which panniele byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it is clepid dura mater. & it is riȝtful þat an arterie schulde arise vpward from bynebe, for þe blood þat is in him is sutil, & his meuynge is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue dounward, he schulde hane discendid wiþ to greet an hastynes, but þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it is couenable þat þe veyne discende bicause þat þe blood þat is in þe veynes is more þickere, & þe blood þat is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat ben pulsatif & not pulsatif ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe [1] veyne streechiþ more lower, & of hem is engendrid pia mater / Aftir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe norischinge & cordialle[2] spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of vndirstondynge. Pia mater enuyrounneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iij. celoles þat

and make the **dura mater.**

The blood flows upwards in the artery,

downwards in the vein.

The veins from the **pia mater**

[1 lf. 59]

bring the vital spirit to the brain, and turn it into understanding.

iij. cellis of þe brayn

[2] MS. inserts *þe*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioynde togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a cloth þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde **dura mater.** And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from bynebyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyH, & hys meffynge þat ys pulsatyff[3]; and he hadde discendyde from abone dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret [4]an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge temprith pulke flux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ[5] pulsatyf & nouȝt pulsatyf beþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowȝ þe veyne streche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf & dywe norysschynge & cordyal spirites, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environeþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe þre celoles[6] þat beþ chaumbres :

[4 fol. 71 *a*]

[3] MS. *prilsatyff*. [5] *buþ*, above line. [6] MS. *cololes*.

ben chaumbris: þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þou3 þat alle
þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole[1]
þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties; & bi þat cause
4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventrielis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie
of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye
spiritis þat ben sent to him; for þat place is propre instrument of
ymagynacioun þe which resceyneþ þingis þat comprehendiþ of
8 fantasie;[2] & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyneþ[3] bi propre
instrumentis þat longiþ. & þou3 þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of
þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold &
moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed
12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse [4] þan ony opere
of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat[5] brood twoward þe
forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat
he my3te be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
16 þingis to 3eue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben 3eue to wiþ-
holde / þis ventriele is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn;
þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben
ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventriele as it were a sittynge

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.

Nota [4 lf. 59, bk.] The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two additaments of the brain (optical lobes),

[1] MS. *celose.* [2] Lat.: res a phantasia comprehensas.
[3] Read, *þo þingis comyn undirstondynge resceyneþ.* Lat.: quas(res) communis sensus recipit. [5] *punat.* Lat.: pineatus.

---

20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þow3 þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventrieles of þe brayn. þe
24 furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resseyue manye spirites þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyneþ þynges þat buþ comprehendide of fantasie; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
28 ynge resceyneþ by propre Instrementys þat longyth to hym, and þaw3 þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dry3e. þe myddel
32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe opere two partyes, & here forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he my3te be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to 3efe to þe ynnere
36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-3efe to with holde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-loynede togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttynge place

Add. MS. 12,056.

place eiþir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abrood, whanne
stretches and contracts during perception, þat he resseyueþ ymagynatif þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere
as a worm, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatijf þingis; & whanne
þat þe sentence of þilke ymagynacioun is brouȝt forþ, þanne þilke 4
is smaller than the other Ventricles, ventricle is drawe along, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventriele
entriþ into þe ventricle þat is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is
myche lasse þan þe opere tweyne, bicause þat no senewis proceden[1]
not out of him, & þat manye þingis myȝte be comprehendid [in 8
litel]* place þat vertu of witt myȝte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere
[2 lf. 60] to take his [2]counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of opere ven-
The third Ventricle is the largest, trielis is deemed hoot & drie. & aftir þat þe hyndere ventricle, þe
which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comparisoun to 12
from it starts the Spinal Marrow. þe opere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward
þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ
sentence þat ben schewid & kepiþ hem priuyliche as a cheste kepiþ
tresour. & out of him goiþ out nucha þoruȝ þe hole of þe boon, 16
þat is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is cloþid wiþ two pannieles
þat goon out of þe brayn.

The brain is cold and moist, & al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat he schulde

[1] MS. *procende.*

Add. MS. opere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abrode, whenne 20
12,056. þat he resseyueþ [3]y-maginatyff þynges. And afterwarde he ys
[3 fol. 71 b] y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat he resceyueth y-magina-
tyff þynges; and whenne þat þe sentence of þilke y-magynacioun
ys y-brought forth, þenne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And 24
also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entrith into þe ventricle þat
ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventriele ys myche lasse þenne þe
opere tweyne bycause þat non synwes proecedent not out of hym,
and þat manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel* place, þat vertue 28
of wytt myghte þe somnere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys
counseyH. And thys ventrycle to comparson of opere ventricles ys
y-demyde hot & drye. After þat ys þe hyndere ventriele, whiche
ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in *comparson of þe 32
opere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde
þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche ressey-
uyth sentense þat beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a
chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out[4] nucha[5] prowe þe 36
hole of þe bon þat ys y-clepyde passilarys. And þilke nucha ys
y-clothyde[6] wiþ tweye pannycles þat goth out of þe brayn. And
alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þat he scholde

[4] *in þe a*, struck through after *goth out.*
[5] *nucha* on margin. [6] MS. *ys y-clothyde* twice.

atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuynge þat he haþ in worchinge of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere resseyue resoun & vnderstondynge / For if peyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whiȝt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruȝ him; & it is neische þat þe meuynge of vertues myȝte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towȝ þat þe senewis þat goon out of hym [1]myȝte be þe more towȝ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnynge & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowȝ & nouȝt aȝenstondyuge her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be cloþid wiþ .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. cloþis, þat in his meuynge, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iij. colules[2] with addiamentis of þe panniclis of pie matris, þat þe spiritis myȝten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myȝte fulfille his accidens[3] in his ventricle, or þan þe vois[4] þat is comprehendid

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1 lf. 60, bk.]

The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

[2] *cellis*, written above line. [3] *accidens* for *accioun*.

[4] *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

---

atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyth of þe herte, and þat he scholde noȝte ben y-dreyȝede fforto myche meffynge þat he haþ in worchynge of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyne þe bettere resoun & vnderstondynge. Ffor þese peyntores, whenne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne opere rare, because þat vndirstondynge myȝte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffynges off vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towȝ, þat þe synwes þat goth out of hym, myȝte be þe [5]more towȝere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynninge, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowȝ noughtt aȝeynestondynge here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe brayn scholde be cloþed with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffynge as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe addita-mentes of þe pannycles of pie[6] matris, þat þe spirites myȝt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfylle hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 72 *a*]

[6] MS. *pie*, twice.

Part of the brain is most essential to life,

Nota

[3 lf. 61]

especially the substance of the Ventricles.

myȝte passe to þe ventricle þat is sewingge.[1] Not azenstondynge
þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of marie þe which
fulfilliþ þe voidenes of þe forseid pannicliß. & þilke mary enuyroun-
neþ þe forseid pannicliß, of þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4
hurtynge of þe heed be lost; & not azenstondynge þe goynge out[2]
of sum partie of þilke mary, a man schal noȝt die. For þis mary
[3]is not of þe substaunce of þe ventriclis of þe brayn of þe which
mynde is maad; for þei ben of so greet nobilite, þouȝ þat þer be 8
neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng
of hem[4] þei ben depriued of her heelþe, in so myche þat oon colule[5]
may not be lost & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen con-
trarie / [6]Anotamie of yȝen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12
teeþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if god
wole we þenken to treten, & of opere siknessis, & of opere lymes
out-eept woundis.

Different kinds of wounds on the head.

& þo hurtyngis þat ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat ben maad 16
wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat þei ben wiþoute
wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekynge of þe brayn

[1] MS. *swingge.*
[2] MS. inserts *&.*
[4] *of hem* written on margin.
[5] *cellul* written above.
[6] The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

þanne þe foys þat ys comprehendyde myghte passe to þe ventricle
þat ys sywynge. Nowȝt azeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20
haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilleþ þe voydenesses of þe
forseyde pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrownyth þe foreseyde
pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge
of þe hed ben y-lost; and noȝt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24
sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal noȝt deye. Ffor þis marye
is nonght of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche
mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere
so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesynge 28
of hem, þey ben depreffyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on
celele may noȝt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye
ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes,
mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32
þe distynciou whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere
syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat
beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad without wounde, opere
with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wythi wounde opere wiþouten 36
wounde, opere þey ben with brekynge of þe brayn panne, opere

panne or wiþoute brekynge of þe brayn panne / Or whe*þer* þat it be maad wiþ breche of þe brayn panne, or wiþoute breche of þe bray*n* panne, su*m*me ben wiþ hurtynge of þe brayn, & su*m*me ben
4 wiþoute hurtynge of þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue difference i*n* tokenes, so þei han difference i*n* pe*r*els & p*r*onosticaciou*n*s & maners w*ith* þe whiche þei musten be*n* holpe*n* /

[1 lf. 61, bk.] hurt of þe heed without any wound or fracture.

[1]& if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wiþoute ony wou*n*de as wiþ
8 fallynge or wiþ smytynge of a stoon or of a staf or wiþ su*m* oþir þi*n*g þat brusiþ, & if þat it be wiþoute breche of þe brayn panne & wiþ hirtynge of þe brayn panne, it nediþ not but schauynge of þe heed & anoyntynge w*ith* hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vncture]*
12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wiþ a boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid awey /

Nota. Have the head shaved and an ointment applied.

In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corru*m*pid, or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupci*ou*n, & if þat ony þing of
16 corru*m*pciou*n* abide, þe place schal be opened wiþ an instrument, & so schal þe quytt*ur* be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as o*þe*re empostymes þat ben wou*n*did.

Fracture of the skull, without any open wound.

& if þat þe bray*n* panne were broke wiþoute wou*n*de of þe
20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicio*u*n of þe cause & also of þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytiþ were strong, or ellis

---

Add. MS. 12,056. [2 fol. 72 b]

w*ith*out brekynge of þe breyn pa*n*ne. And whe*þer* [2]þat yt be mad wiþ þe breche of þe brayn pa*n*ne o*þe*re w*ith*outen breche of þe breyn
24 pa*n*ne, some ben w*ith* hurtynge of þe brayn, some w*ith*out hurtynge of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey haue*n* differens in pereles & p*r*onosticaciou*n*s & maners, w*ith* þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And ȝif an hurt be
28 in þe hed w*ith*outen wou*n*de, as w*ith* fallynge, o*þe*re w*ith* smytinge of a ston, o*þe*re a staff, o*þe*re w*ith* su*m* o*þe*re thynge þat brusythi, and ȝif þat yt be w*ith*outen breche of þe brayn pa*n*ne, & w*ith* outen hurtynge of þe brayn pa*n*ne, it nedythi noȝt but schaffynge of þe
32 hed, & anoyntynge wiþ hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place w*ith* a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-vanschyd aweye. In þis mane*r*e þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat
36 noþyng schal be coru*m*ped, o*þe*re ellys þe*r*e schall dwelle a lytel corupcio*u*n. And ȝif enye þynge of coru*m*pcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde w*ith* an Instrument, & so alle þe quyte*r* schal be excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as o*þe*re empostemys þat beþ
40 y-wou*n*dyde. And ȝif þat þe brayn pa*n*ne were y-broke wit*h*oute enye wou*n*de of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicio*u*n of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge ȝif þat þat smyt

Symptoms of the fracture: [1 lf. 62] as giddiness, vomiting, headache.

Test by harping on a thread, which the patient holds with his teeth.

þat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis þat he was smyte with strong smyting, & also if þat he fel & myȝte not hastili arise. [1]& if þat he hadde scotomie,[2] þat is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne þat þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis fleen tofore his yȝen / or ellis he spewiþ his mete, or he feliþ to gret akþe in þe heed, & if þat he may not breke a knotte of a straw wiþ hise teeþ, & if þe heed be smyte wiþ a liȝt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if þat þe boon be hool þou schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teeþ a þred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe with þi nailis vpon þe þred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wiþ þi naylis vpon þe þred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn panne broke, for if his brayn panne were broke, þe sike man myȝte not susteyne þe soun of þe þred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen þat [3 lf. 62, bk.] þe brayn panne is broken / & tweyne [3]of þe laste signys ben

[2] *scotomie.* Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia.* They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. 12 056.

were stronge, opere ellys þat þe syke haue y-fallen from hye place, opere ellys þat he was y-smyte with stronge smytynge; and also ȝif þat he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and ȝif þat he hadde scotomye: þat ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne þat þere semyth as flyeȝes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyȝen tofore hys eyȝen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grete akþe in hys hed, and ȝif þat he may nought breken a knotte of a strawȝ with hys teth, and ȝif þe hed be smyten with a lyȝt dreyȝe staff, as [4 fol. 73 a] of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn [4]ere to hys hed; & ȝif þat þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparsoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also ȝif þat þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys teþ a þrede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen with þy naylles vpon þe þrede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe with þyne naylles vpon þe þred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & ȝif þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ noȝt hys brayn panne y-broke; ffor ȝif hys breyn panne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe þred. Alle þese signes opere ellis manye of hem betokne þat þe breyn panne is broken. And to þe

more certeyn þan ony of þe o*þer*e. & vndirstonde þat þe brayn pa*nn*e mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & neþeles þe brayn felip noon harm i*n* þe bigy*nn*ynge. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtynge
4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galion witnessy*n*ge, þe brekynge of boonys in þe heed is dyue*rs* in pe*r*els fro brekynge of o*þer*e boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat falliþ ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neiþir is no man ne neuere
8 was þat myȝte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, wha*nn*e þat þe brayn was meued i*n* þe bigy*nn*y*n*ge þat not aȝenstondynge his help,[1] be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe sike ne muste die /

Galion

Fracture of the skull is very dangerous,

the following accidents (symptoms) are frequently mortal.

Euel accide*n*tis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe
12 brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben[2] alwey dwelly*n*ge as constipacio*un* of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis lokynge asquynt of þe iȝen, or ellis wepinge of þe oon yȝe, or ellis an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe ve*r*tues & chau*n*gynge.
16 Not oonly animal ve*r*tues, þat be*n* vertues of þe brayn, ben[3] I-chau*n*gid, also naturel ve*r*tues & liui[4] ve*r*tues—sensibles & [5]motifes ;

Evil symptoms: yvel accidentes

If the animal, natural, and vital functions,

[5 lf. 63]

[1] *help* in margin.

[2] One word "*spewinge*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris," etc.

[3] MS. inserts *nouȝt*.

[4] *liui*, Lat. vitales.

---

laste signes beþ more serteyne þe*nn*e enye of þe o*þer*e. And vnde*r*stonde þat þe breyn pa*nn*e may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & naþeles
20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygy*nn*inge none hurtynge. But afte*r*wardys ofte tyme of hurtynge of þe brayn pa*nn*e þe brayn ys y-hurt, Galien wytnessynge; the brekynge of þe bonys of þe hed ys dyuers in perclys fro*m* brekyng of o*þer* bonys of þe body, for þe
24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn pa*nn*e. Ne þe*re* nys no ma*n*, ne neue*re* ne was, þat myȝte euyre more helpe*n* to alle accidentes whe*nn*e þat þe brayn was meffyde in þe bygy*nn*inge, þat nouȝt ageynestondynge his helpe, be he neue*re*
28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyle accidentes whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pa*nn*ycle, be*n* alwey dwellynge: as *con*stipacio*un* of þe wombe, o*þer*e ellys flux of þe wombe, o*þer*e ellys crokydnesse, o*þer*e ellys lokynge a-
32 squynte of þe eyȝen, o*þer*e ellys wepynge of þat on eyȝe, o*þer*e ellys an hard scotomye, o*þer*e ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues & chau*n*gynge. And noȝt only anymal vertues, þat beþ ve*r*tewys of þe brayn, beþ noȝt y-chau*n*gyde, but also natureh ve*r*tewys, & lyfy
36 ve*r*tewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen noȝt

Add. MS. 12,056.

the imagination, reason,

memory, and motor power are affected.

A strong fever preceded by a cold shivering,

blackness of the tongue, blains, etc., are bad symptoms.

[7 lf. 63, bk.]

sencible, for þei ben[1] not ri3tfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & o*þere* comou*n* wittis ben troublid; also p*ri*uy v*er*tues þat ben troublid as ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nou3t];* also resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn[2] & answeren wha*n*ne þei ben nou3t I-askide / also[3] memorial þat þei þenke nou3t on her owne name / also meuable v*er*tues is so myche greued þat vnneþe þei mou*n* nou3t meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. Þei syke grenousleche, & a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurgynge[4] goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing ellis, but as it were a p*ri*ckynge of nedelis, or ellis of netlis i*n* þe fleisch, & if þis rigor come wiþ a feuere, or ellis w*ith*out feuere, it is þe worste signe tokene of deeþ, & if þe erampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: blaknes of þe tu*n*ge, bleynis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony p*ar*tie of þe heed þa*n*ne [in]* þe wou*n*de, is an yuel signe.[5] & sumtyme blood comeþ out at þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if þe more p*ar*tie of þese tokenese or ellis alle come*n*, þe sike ma*n* muste nedis die, namely, & þe accidentis conteynen[6]; [7]& specialy if þe sike man haue be her-to-fore manye daies in good disposicio*n*, & after þilke

[1] *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.
[2] See page 102, note 2. [3] MS. *alle*. [4] *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.
[5] Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.
[6] *conteynen* for *contynuen*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[8 fol. 73 b]

Sygnu*m* Mortal.

al[8]so p*ri*uye vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey beleffe þ*at* þey seen, *þat þey seen nou3t; also resonable vertue, for þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren wha*n*ne þey beþ nou3t y-askyde; also memoryal, þ*at* þey þynke nou3t on here owne name; also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þ*at* vnneþe þey mowe nou3t mefen he*m* namlyche aboute þe nekke. Þey syken greuouslye, and a scharpe ffeuere fallytli, þe whiche a rigoor gotli tofore. A rigoor nys nothynge ellys but as yt were a p*ri*kynge of nedlys o*þere* of nettlys in þe flesch, and 3if þis rigoor come w*ith* a ffeuyre o*þere* ellys w*ith* oute*n* ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and 3if the erampe folwe*n*, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe tonge, bleynesse[9] aboute þe chyn o*þere* þe chekenesse, o*þere* in enye o*þere* p*ar*tye of þe hed þe*n*ne in* þe wou*n*de, ys an yuele signe, and su*m* tyme blod comytli out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And 3if þe more p*ar*tye of þese toknys, o*þere* ellys alle come*n*, þe syke man moste nedys dey3en, namlye & þo Accidentes contynewen, and specialy 3if þ*at* þe syke ma*n* haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode disposicio*n*, & after þilke disposicio*n* þese yuele accidentes fallen;

[9] *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. bley; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

good disposicioun þilke yuel accidentis fallen; but sumtyme in þe bigynnynge þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of þe leche þilke yuel accidentis ben departid & good comeþ, and þanne it is a [good]* signe, for it bitokeneþ strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sijknes, & kunnynge of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfillynge, alle þingis sanctifiynge, & alle þingis liȝtnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene þe yȝen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndirstonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene[1] þoruȝ þi cleernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas[2] where þat oonly not I þat am vnwijs & vnkunnynge, but also greete maistris & more kunnynge han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat myȝte us make sikir, specialiche in seryuyngis of þe brayn panne, in þe whiche cure[3] dyvers men haue[3] I-wrouȝt dyuersliche.

It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.

May the Holy Ghost enlighten the readers.

[4 lf. 64] *Nota*

Treatment of a symple wounde.

[4]I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in þe which þat þer is noon hurtynge of þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Biholde wheþir þilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerd or ony þing sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe þilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

[1] *demene*, O.Fr. "demener," for *demen*.
[2] *in þis caas*. Lat.: in isto passu. See below *pas*.
[3] *cure*, *hare*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

ryȝtfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but sumtyme in þe bygynninge euyle accidentes comyth, afterwarde, by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle accidentes ben departyde & good comyth, & þenne yt is a good* signe, for it betoknyth strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thynge fulfyllynge, al þinge sanctifyinge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe eyȝen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clernesse þat þat[5] ys euyle seyde, specyaliche in pas where þat only nouȝte y þat am vnwys & vnkunnynge, but also grettere maistryes & more kunnynge han y-writen dotousliche. & haþ y-sett in þis cas dyuerse vnderstondynges. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis werke þat myȝte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dynerslye; y wyth begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe whiche þat here ys non hurtynge of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne. Byholde whar þilke wounde be mad with a swerde opere enye þynge semblable to hit, & þan sowen þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

[6 fol. 71 *a*][7]

[5] MS. *at*.
[7] Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.*

wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment of a contused wound.

& if þat a wounde be maad in þe heed wiþ brusynge, as wiþ a mace,[1] or wiþ a staf, or ony þing þat brusiþ, þanne it is nessessarie to leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif maad of .iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisiþ to make it þikke,[2] til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abrood vpon a lynnen clooþ & leid to þe wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & ȝelke of an ey, & lynt of an oold lynnen clooþ medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde ȝeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt of old clooþ, & fille þe wounde of þe same lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele, [3]til þat it be perfiȝtly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigynnynge til þat þe wounde be parfiȝtly clensid, a defensif of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

Apply a maturatif,

[3 lf. 64, bk.] a mundificatif, and a defensif.

Cure of a wound which touches the membrane.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, þouȝ þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

[1] *mace*, Lat. macia.
[2] MS. *þilke*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

poudre of lym tofore seyd, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off wounde of þe flesch; and ȝif þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace opere a staf, oþer with enye þynge þat brusyth, þanne it is necessarie to leggen abofe þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt þikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abrede on a cloþ & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an neyȝe,[4] & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde ȝif quyter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde fuH of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel rosat & barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfitlye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begynnynge, tyl þat þe wonde be perfitlie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterward incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & afterwarde consoude yt; and ȝif þat þis wounde touchith þe pannycle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þowȝ þat þe bon be nouȝt to-broken,

Maturatif for brosure

[4] *neyȝe* at the beginning of a line.

take þerof' good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot' oile of' rosis doun to þe pannicle þat' byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat' þer be noon akynge in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist' kepe opere woundis of' þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold & fro heete, for cold is moost' greuous to boonys & to pannicliis þat' ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat' leien wiþout' forþ on alle maner woundis of' þe heed, wheþer it' be wiþ wounde of' þe brayn panne or wiþoute þe wounde of' þe brayn panne, in what' maner þat' þe heed be hurt', a lynnen clooþ wet' in þe oynement' þat' is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ß, oile of' rosis ℥ v, whiȝt' wex ℥ iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei maken [2]þerof' .j. bodi, & boile it' aftirward in good wyn bi þe space of' an hour; & þei leten it' aftirward nyȝ colden, & þei weten þerinne a pece of' a lynnen clout', & þei schapen þilke pece wiþ a schere aftir þat' þe wounde is, & panne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, & panne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon þilke pece on eiþir side of' þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet' in good hoot' wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of' herdis vpon þo two wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of' herdis schal comprehende þe tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei ȝeuen to summen to drynke

Apply olium ro. hoot.

Nota

Some physicians use a general treatment for wounds on the head.

Entreet.[1]

They apply Compresses with an ointment,

[2 lf. 65]

[1] *Entreet.* See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

---

charge yt noȝt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen oþer wondys of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde ys most greuest' to bonys & to pannycles þat beþ woundyde. [3]þere ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forthī on alle manere wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wiþ wounde of þe brayn panne opere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen clothī y-wett in þe oignement y-made in þis manere: ℞ whit resine ℔. ß., oyle of roses ʒ v., whyt wex ʒ iij., þey melten aH togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an Oure; & þey leten afterwarde nyȝhī colden, & þey weten þere ynne a pece of lynnen clothī, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftere þe wounde ys, & þey baþen pylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen þilke pece on þe wounde,* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke pece on eiþere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweye wete pylwes, þe whiche dreye pylwe schaH comprehende þe tweye wete & bynden hem faste; and þey ȝeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 74 b]

Cura Ancellina

and diet with wine and fowls.

rizt' good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of' hennes & of' capouns; &[1] þei comaunden to drynke a drope of' water; & þei gouernen on þis maner alle men þat' ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & þei seyn þat' mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But' bi as myche as alle auctouris ben azens þis cure, namely in dietynge, I ne was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a medicyn schal not be preued which þat' is not' acordynge to resoun / For alle autouris acorden þat' þer is no þing' [2] þat' so soone greueþ þe brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doiþ, & vsynge of' fleisch is cause of' bryngynge yn an hoot' enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if' a man þat' vsiþ of' custum sich a maner dietynge haue a strong' heed, in his hele him dredip no wiyn, & þe vertu of' him þat' is sijk be strong'— in sum manere of' folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more strenkþid, & þe sunner þei ben heelid. But I ne procede not' wiþ sich a maner dietynge bi cause of' drede lest' an hoot' enpostyme schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietynge & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

I never dared to try this treatment.

[2 lf. 65, bk.]

Nota bene.

Wine is especially dangerous.

Treatment if the skull is broken:

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]* þe brekynge of' þe brayn panne be with a greet' wounde, or smal

[1] Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ *non* bibat.

Add. MS. 12,056.

wyn, & to eten gode fflesch̃ of capouns & of hennys; & þey comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey sigge þat mo[3] men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyzen. But by as myche as alle auttorys beþ azeyns þis cure, namlyche in dyetynge, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure; ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouzt ben preuyde, whiche þat is nozt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere ys noþynge þat so sone greuytl̃ þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doþ, and vsynge of flesch̃ ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme. Neuere þe latere zif a man þat vsith̃ of custome swyche a manere dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredytl̃ non wyn, & þe vertue of hym þat ys seek [4] be stronge, in some manere of folk with þis manere of' gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouzt wiþ swyche a manere dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come to þe sore; but y procede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wounde, as y haue seyde toforn. Opere men loken* in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekynge of þe breyne panne be with a gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and zif

[4 fol. 75 *a*]

[3] MS. *no*.

wounde, or without wounde. & if þat þer be a greet wounde, þei loken whether þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-broken, & þei don it awey. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe brayn panne & duram matrem a þinne clout wet in þe white of an ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fullillen al þe wounde of þe brayn panne with sich a maner cloop. & þei leyn in þe ouer wounde which þat is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey, til þat þe blood be staunchid; [1] & þei leien aboue a plumaciol wet in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloop vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboue þe wounde a potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne þat þe quytture is engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp,[2] eiþir lynet of a cloute; & þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste eende þei leien aboue apostolicon.[3]

Broken pieces are removed, wet compresses applied to stanch the blood; [1 lf. 66] then dry compresses, a poultice, and an ointment.

& þei asaie in þis maner if þat þe brekynge of þe brayn panne be wiþ a rimel,[4] þat is to seie a chene, eiþir a creueis; & if þat ilke creueis peerse to wiþinne, makynge þe sike man to streyne his

Treatment of a fissure of the skull:

[2] *carp*, Lat. carpia, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.

[3] *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

[4] *rimel*. Lat.: si fractura esset rimalis. O.Fr. rimule, Lat. rimula, a small chink.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þat þere ben a gret wounde þey loken whether þey mowe seen ȝif enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt awey. And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & duram matrem a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, & sumwhat þe whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn panne with swiche a manere clothi. & þey leggen in þe ofere wounde whiche þat ys in þe fleschi, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an eyȝe, tyl þat þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboue a plumacyole y-wet in an eyȝe. And whanne þat þe blode ys y-staunchyde, þey leggen a dreye clothi vndire þe brayn panne in þe wounde, and þey leggen aboue þe wounde a potage, the whiche engendrythi quytere; & whenne þat þe quyter ys engendryde, þey leggen in þe wounde carp opere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt[5] aboute þe wounde with oygnement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey leggen aboue Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: ȝif þat þe brekynge of þe brayn panne be with a rimele, þat ys to seye a chyne, opere a creueys; & ȝif þat þilke creveys perse to wiþynne, makynge þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

[5] At the end of the line.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken hi*m* þa*n*ne to blowen, & þei loke*n*[1] if ony þi*ng* exale out bi þilke rimele,[2]— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle. & þa*n*ne su*m*me seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eiþir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe toþir wiþ ri*n*spindelis,[3] pe*r*ischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument þat coteleris poudren[4] wi*th* her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen i*n* þis same chapitle folowynge. & þe worste þi*ng* þat a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But o*þe*re [5]men don bettere which þat peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost hangynge; & þei make*n* as manye hoolis, oon biside ano*þe*r, as it is nessessarie to make an hole i*n* þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if ony þi*ng* be fallen vpon, dura*m* matre*m* 12 myȝte be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanaciou*n*[6] worchiþ best / & wha*n*ne þat þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to ano*þe*r hole wiþ an instrument, þat þei mou*n* drawe out þe boon þat is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat was 16 ma*a*d & þe rimele, & þei casten hi*m* awey, & aftirward þei pro*c*eden

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.

[5 lf. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

[1] *þa*nne struck through after *loken*.

[2] *as blod or ony oþer mater . þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle*, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

[3] *rinspindil*, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

[4] *poudren* for *boren*, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.

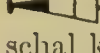
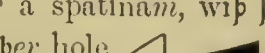
[6] Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

Add. MS. 12,056.

maken hy*m* þe*n*ne to blowen, & þey loken ȝif enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. *& ȝif þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye o*þe*re matere, þey drede noȝt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þe*n*ne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke o*þe*re y-pe*r*ced. fro*m* þat one ende to þat o*þe*re wi*th* Rynspyndles, pe*r*synge [7 fol. 75 *b*] þe braynscolle. [7]A rynspyndeH ys an Instrume*n*t þat Cutlers poudre*n* wiþ here hefftes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde[8] in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwynge. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, ys to pe*r*ce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But o*þe*re me*n* don bettyre whiche þat perce*n* þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongynge; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an o*þe*re, as 28 beþ necessarie to maken an hole in þe bray*n* pa*n*ne, be þe whiche hole ȝif enye þynge beþ[9] fallen vpon þe duram matrem myȝte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchynge trepanaciou*n* worchiþ best. And whe*n*ne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 fro*m* on hole to an o*þe*re wiþ an spatymyne,[10] þat ys an Instrume*n*t, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hy*m* aweye, afte*r*warde

[8] MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

[9] þ above line. [10] Lat.: cum spatumine.

forþ in o*pe*re maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For wha*n*ne þou desirist way of[1] trepaninge [þis man*e*re trepanynge]* sufficiþ to þee i*n* þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. Þis schal be þe foorme of a
4 trepane [w*ith* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]*  . & þis is þe foorme of a spatina*m*, wiþ þe which a man schal kutte fro*m* oon hole to anoþ*er* hole  . & þou schalt smyte wiþ a mal[2] eiþ*er* an hamer on þe greet eende; & wha*n*ne þou
8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis w*ith* schauy*n*ge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes i*n* þe brynkis. Þis is þe man*er* of þe schap , [3]& þis schaue schal kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon
12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wou*n*de þat is wiþi*n*ne þe fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, w*ith* þe cloop expressid of þe white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wou*n*de be ful, & also til þat þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which sch*a*l fulfille
16 þe place þe*r*e as þe boon w*a*s don awey. Aftirward þei curen þe wou*n*de aftir comou*n* cure of wou*n*dis / Alle o*pe*re maner of trepanaciou*n* is comp*re*hendid vndir o su*m*me, þou3 þat su*m*men ordeyne p*ar*ticuler aftir her dyuyse, diu*er*s maners.

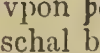
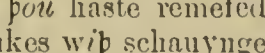
A description of the instruments used: the trepan, the spatina (spattle).

[3 lf. 67]

The further treatment is the usual one for wounds.

20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen i*n* þis caas no way þat

[1] *þe* struck through after *of*. [2] *mal*, Lat. malleus.

þey p*ro*ceden forth̃ in o*pe*re manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. And whe*n*ne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepany*n*ge, * þis man*e*re trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn pa*n*ne. Þis schal
24 be*n* þe forme of a trepane, * w*ith* þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ  . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, w*ith* þe whiche a man schal kutte w*ith* fro*m* on hole to an o*pe*re hole  . And þou schalt smyte*n* w*ith* a Mal o*pe*re an hamere
28 vpon þe gret ende; and whe*n*ne þ*ou* haste remefed of þe bon þat schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes w*i*þ schauynge, þat þe*r*e mowe no3t lefe no*n* man*e*re scharpnesse in þe brynkes. Þis ys þe man*e*re of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutte*n* on þe syde þat
32 feldyth̃ inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde. And þe*n*ne fulfyllen þe wou*n*de þat is in þe flesch̃, wiþoutforþ as y haue seyde tofore, w*ith* cloþ expressyde of þe whyte of an ey3e, & lynet to þat þe wou*n*de be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue
36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfylle þe place where þat þe bon was don awey. [4]Afte*r*warde þey cure þe wou*n*de aftere comyn cure of wondys. Alle o*pe*re man*e*re of trepanaciou*n* ys *comp*re*h*endyde vndire on So*m*me, þow3 þat su*m* me*n* ordeynen
40 p*ar*tyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyu*er*se maners. But be as myche as y haue no3t seyne in þis place no wey þat my3te remefe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 76 *a*]

Trepanning is dangerous.

Galien and Auicen used medicines instead of operating.

[3 lf. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if the broken piece .1. gets under the healthy bone, .2. or hurts the dura mater,

causing a tumour,

then cramp,

myȝte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I hane saied bi longe tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experiment, & þat wei is not certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat seiþ: if we mowe remeue quytture wiþoute doynge awei of boonys þat schulde be do awey, it is good / And auicen & serapie[1] acorden to þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe þat comeþ of smytynge or ellis of fallynge, where þat he towehiþ[2] þe worehinge of hurtis of þe brayn [3]panne, not bi trepanaciou*n*, but bi emplastris & medicyns / & also I took good hede þat manye mo men ben heelid bi maner of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat ben peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remene the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if þat þe brayn panne be so myche I-slend[4] þat þe part þat is broke, entre vndir þe partie þat is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony peee be departid from þe brayn panne, þe which þat prickiþ duram matrem / In þe firste caas dura mater is compressid. In þe sceunde caas dura mater is priekid, which is cause of akþe, & akynge is cause of drawynge humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe which is cause of a crampe, & of opere aceidentis tofore seid; &

[1] *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.
[2] *towehiþ* for *tehiþ*.
[4] *islend*, Add. MS. *yselend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS. 12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y hane assayede longe tyme boþe by sum auctores experyment, & also by myn experyment, & þat wey is noȝt certeyn, þerefore here þey Galien, whiche þat seith: ȝif we mowe remywe quyter without doynge awey bonys þat seholde be do awey, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyth off smytinge opere ellys of fallynge, where þat he teehith þe worehynge of hurtynges of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, noȝt by trepanaeioun, but by emplastres & by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde by trepanes þat beþ persynge opere þryllynge. Ffor y ne vse noȝt Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye eases—þat on cas ys ȝif þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-sclend, þat þe part þat ys y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys ȝif þat enye peee be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketh duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, & akynge ys cause of drawynge of humonres, the whiche engendrith a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a[5] crampe, & of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen deþ

[5] *a*, above line.

at þe laste þei bryngen deep to þe pacient / In þese .ij. cansis finally death.
I leene hem[1] constreyned to remeue a boon wiþ handely[2] instrumentis. In alle opere maners of brechis eiþer in creueis, in what In all other cases I use
4 maner þat þei happen, þouȝ þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf, medicine,
neþeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekynge alwey
help of god, þe which þat [3]haþ heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat [3 lf. 68]
am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nouȝt azenstondynge alle and by God's help I have generally been successful.
8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde soþliche resonis
& þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan
ony opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seiþ: Galien
if þat a man haue but o wei to his hele,[4] it is good þat he holde
12 þilke wey, þouȝ þat it be yuel.

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is wounded in þe heed, & I Treatment of fractures of the skull, without trepanning:
knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I
considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle
16 opere particuler þing, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure,
if þat I se ony deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wiþ
þe grettere instaunce of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azenstondynge her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

[1] *hem* for *am*; *leeue* is erroneously added in margin.
[2] *handely* ne. handy. [4] MS. *ixele*.

---

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS. 12,056.
bon with handly Instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches
opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þowȝ þat y be
noȝt sykere of þe paciente, naþeles y procede in þis manere with
24 more trest, by sechynge alweye help of god, þe whyche þat haþ
y-helyde mo m[5]en be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne
han be ded, nouȝt azeynestondynge al my cauteles & [6]helpynge. [6 fol. 76 b]
Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes
28 of opere auctorys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.
Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: ȝif þat a man
hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde þilke weye,
þowȝ þat þilke wey be euch. And whenne þat y come to a Man
32 þat is wonndyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys
to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of
hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oþer[7] partyclere thynge,
& namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, ȝif þat y se enye
36 dedlye signes; but ȝif þat so be þat y be preyde wiþ the grettere
Instaunce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And noȝt azeynestondynge
here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

[5] MS. *m, en* cut away. [7] *oþer*, above line.

If there are no mortal symptoms and if the wound is large,

[1 lf. 68, bk.]

I shave the head and apply Oliu*m* Ros*arum*,

a defensif ointment,

compresses,

and bandages.

pacient schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute hi*m* as i*n* a man i*n* who*m* yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn panne be wi*th* a greet wo*n*de of þe heed, & þat a greet pa*r*tie of þe brayn pa*n*ne be do awey al 4 togidere, so þat I mowe [1] haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon dura*m* matre*m* / First I do schaue his heed, afte*r*ward I leie on an eold ly*n*nen clout & a þenne,[2] wett i*n* .ij. pa*r*ties of oile of rosis swete smellynge, & oon pa*r*tie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe dura*m* 8 matre*m* & þe brayn panne sliȝly & softli, þat dura mate*r* be not compre*s*sid wiþ þe cloop þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe wou*n*de of þe fleisch wiþ lint of oold ly*n*nen cloop wett i*n* þe ȝelke of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12 wou*n*de wiþ a defensif of bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie aboue þe wou*n*de a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe wou*n*de; & þa*n*ne aboue al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett i*n* good hoot wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wou*n*de wiþ a boond, 16 byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wiþ þe lynet & þe cloop, þe which þat is i*n* þe wou*n*de & aboute þe wou*n*de myȝte not slide to no pa*r*tie, & bynde þe wou*n*de i*n* þat mane*r* þat dura mate*r* bi no

[2] MS. *þanne*. error for *a þenne*. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et subtile. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056.

deyȝe, & þe*n*ne y wirehe aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20 whom yuel aceidentes apere. And ȝif þat þe signes be nought dedlyehe, & þe breche of þe breyn pa*n*ne be wi*th* a gret wou*n*de of þe hed, & þat a grete pa*r*tye of þe breyn pa*n*ne be don aweye alle togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24 duram matrem. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afte*r*warde y legge an olde ly*n*nen elout & a þe*n*ne, y-wett in two pa*r*tyes of oyle of rosys swote smellynge, & on pa*r*tye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe duram matrem and þe brayn pa*n*ne, slyȝlye & softlye, þat dura mater be 28 noȝt *com*pressyde wi*th* þe clothi þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y fulfille þe wou*n*de of þe flleseh wi*th* lynt of olde ly*n*nen cloþ wet in þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyehe myche; & y anoynte aboute þe wou*n*de wi*th* deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 32 tymes seyde, & y legge abou*e*n þe wou*n*de a plumacyole whiche þat [3 fol. 77 *a*] schal keuere alle þe wou*n*de, and þe*n*ne [3] abou*e*n alle togedre y legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterewarde y bynde þe wounde wi*th* a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36 hed, þat þe lynet & þe cloþ whyche þat is in þe wou*n*de & aboute þe wou*n*de myȝte noȝt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wou*n*de in þat mane*r*e þat dura mater be no weye be *com*pressyde. Þe

wey be compressid. Þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued awey on þis maner: clippe hem first with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oile [1]of rosis in somer, & make hoot þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it wiþ a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe pacient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe pacient be ful of blood, & his vertu be strong, & if he be ȝong, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe coral[2] veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him oonys aday, or wiþ suppositories or wiþ clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietynge / & whanne þat þe wounde makiþ sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

How to shave the head. [1 lf. 69]

If the patient is strong,

I bleed and purge.

If pus is discharged

I use a mundificatif and puluis capitalis.

[2] *coral veyne*, vena cephalica.

---

herys of þe hed schul be remywede awey on þis manere: clippe hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Nafeles y consydere ȝif þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & ȝif þat he be ȝonge, & lytel blod haue nouȝt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe coral veyne of þe arme; & but ȝif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wiþ suppositorye opere wiþ clisterye; and y procede in dyetynge as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetynge. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toforn, & above þe wounde y legge a mundyficatyff of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wiþ þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R ffrank Ensence, ciperi, þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[1 lf. 69, bk.][2] note of a cipres, [1]seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, ℥ j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þredis of lynnen cloop, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whiȝt rosyn,[3] & oon partie of wex 4 moltun togidere vpon strong vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe[4] it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whiȝt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8 partis of rosyn,* & þe .v part of wex, & drawe abrood þat treet[5] on a cloop, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfiȝtliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforee me to remeue þilke partie þat 12 priekiþ wiþ pynsouns,[6] if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat priekiþ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued awey, þanne I remeue him awey wiþ rugement[7] from þe partie þat halt,[8] in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all an Entreet (Plaster) made from wax and oil of roses.

I remove a bone which pricks the membrane, with pincers.

[2] At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristologe, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana. ffac puluis.*

[3] *whight rosyn*, hardened Terpentine.

[4] *malaxe*, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

[5] *treet* = *entreet*. See p. 123, note 1.

[6] *wiþ pynsouns*, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

[7] *wiþ rugement*. Lat.: cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

[8] Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

Add. MS. 12,056. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. ʒ. i., oreby. ʒ. j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þredys of lynne eloþ oþere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-[9 fol. 77 b] legge an entrete [9]y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon[10] colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure partyes of —* & þe flifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perflitliche eycatrysede. And ȝif þat þere were anye —* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouȝt be remeffyd awey, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiþ rugenynge. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, oþere two, oþere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don awey,* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

[10] MS. *a pound.*

boon þat schulde be don awey [þat halt with þe hole bon & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
4 awei; I proecde in þe cure as it is [1]seid in þis chapitle / But [1 lf. 70]
whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne, þanne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie
8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & compressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eiþir a pece of a boon holde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myȝte not liȝtliche be remeued away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
12 þanne at þe bigynnynge I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe ȝelke of an ey medlid togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may liȝtliche be remoued awey; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I proecde in þe
16 worchinge bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore /

I stop the patient's ears during the operation.

Nota

I soften the bone before removing it.

& if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a ereneis or ellis I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lowere þan oþer, þanne I considere if þat ilke slendynge[2] perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make [3]a plastre of poudre of [3 lf. 70, bk.]

[2] *slendinge*, see p. 128, note 4.

---

to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.* And whenne þe bon ys remefyde awey, y proecde in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same
24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon with Instrumentes of þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe noȝt here þe sonn of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and ȝif þat a gobbet oþere a pece of a bon helde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myȝte noȝt lyȝtlye be remeffyde awey, and he prikyde nonȝt ne compressyde nouȝt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygynninge y do on
32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfylle þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-nessehyde, and mowe lyȝtlyche be remywede aweye; þenne y remeffe þe bon, & y proecde in worchynge bytwene þe bon &
36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & ȝif þat þe breche of þe breyn panne [4]were as a eerfes, oþere ellys y-selend, & neiþere party of þe bon were lowere þenne oþere, þen y consydere ȝif þilke selendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
40 þe toknys tofore seyde, oþere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe þat neuere faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 78 a]

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as þikke[1] as hony, &
distende[2] it vpon a cloop, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro
morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & wha*n*ne
þat þe plastre is remoued awey, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruȝ þe 4
brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie aȝens þe creueis þan
in ony o*þer* place, for þe greet heete þat comeþ fro þe brayn [& ȝif þe
breyn panne]* be nouȝt I-slend þoruȝ, þe plastre sch*a*l be nomore
drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþ*er* place / & if þe creueis p*er*se 8
not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid i*n* þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge of þis
chapitle, þ*er*e as I tolde of cure of wou*n*de of þe heed, where þat þe
brayn pa*n*ne eiþ*er* þe brai*n* is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse
þe brayn panne, þ*er* is a greet doute i*n* þe caas, for su*m*men seien þat 12
it is impossible sich a wou*n*de to heele; but if þe remele be tre-
paned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon awey, þat þe sup*er*fluyte þat
is cast vpon dura*m* matre*m* may be doon awey, or ellis þe dura mat*er*
schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil[3] þe pacient schulde 16
[4 If. 71] die, þe which þat myȝte [4]be heelid bi þe remeuynge of þe boon /
Nota. Neþeles I þat haue seen i*n* trepaninge greet p*er*el, namely wha*n*ne

How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

[1] MS. *þilke.* [2] *distende.* Lat. distendo.
[3] *bi þat skil,* Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polychron.* See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS. 12,056.

whyte of an eyȝe, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende
it on a cloþ, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt fro*m* morwe tyl euene, 20
o*þer*e ellys fro*m* euene tyl þe morwe. And whe*n*ne þat þe plastre
ys remefyd awey, ȝif þat þe crefeys persith̄ þorwe þe breyn pa*n*ne,
þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde[5] þe crefeys þen in enye
o*þer* place, for þe gret hete þat comyth̄ fro*m* þe brayn;* & ȝif þe 24
breyn pa*n*ne* be noȝt y-sclend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore
rye abouen þe creffeys þenne on an o*þer*e place. And ȝif þe crefeysd
perse nouȝt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe by-
gy*n*nynge of þis chapyteH, þ*er*e as y tolde of þe cure of wou*n*de of 28
hed, where þat þe breyn pa*n*ne o*þer*e þe brayn ys noȝt y-hurt. Ffor
ȝif þat þilke ryemele persyth̄ þe breyn pa*n*ne, þ*er*e ys a gret doute
in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wou*n*de to
ben y-helyde, but ȝif þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32
of þe bon be y-don awey, þat þe sup*er*fluyte þat ys y-caste vpon
dura*m* matrem mowe be done awey, ellys þe dura mater scholde
putrefien & be corupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye,
whiche þat myȝte be helyde by remywynge of þe bon. Naþeles y 36
þat haue y-seye in trepanynge grete peryle, namlyche wha*n*ne þat

[5] Over an erasure.

þat þe creueis is bisidis þe semys, where þat þe trepaninge is deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat wiþoute trepanyng almyȝty god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wiþoute touchinge of ony brayn
4 scolle wiþ ony trepan or wiþ iren; but I helde in to þe creueis hoot oile of rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere aftir þe doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner cloþis; & aftirward leie aboue þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis
8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, til þat þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel roset & oile of rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele til þat þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe
12 brayn panne, & þat þon schalt knowe whanne þat þou seest þe boonys ben[1] ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned togidere with cole[2] or with glu; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wiþ drie þredis of clene lynnen cloop, & aboue [3]a mundificatif, til þat
16 þe boon be kenerid. Þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure[4] of lynnen cloop, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet of whiȝt rosyn; & I do alle þese þingis þat I haue seid tofore til þat þe wounde be consowdid /

de vertute Olium Rosarum.

I use oil of roses,

a defensif

and a mundificatif medicine,

[3 lf. 71, bk.]

and a plaster of terpentine.

[1] *ben*, above line.
[2] *cole*, Lat.: sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul *incolata*.
[4] *rasure*, Lat. rasura.

---

20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, and y haue seye manye þat wiþouten trepanynge almyȝtie god haþ delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle with trepane opere with eyren; but y helde into þe crefeys hote
24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, & oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre aftere þe doctryne tofore seyd, ffulfyllinge all þe [5]wounde wiþ swyche manere clothys, & afterwarde y legge abone þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses y-medlyde
28 togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore seyd, tyl þat þe quyter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wonnde, & aboffe a mundificatyf of mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede
32 on þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste þe bonys Ioynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to gedre wiþ colle opere wiþ glewȝ; & þenne y fulfylle þe wounde with drye þredys of lynnen cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf tyl þat þe
36 bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on abone þe capytale poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe rasure of lynnen cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne; & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 78 b]

Nota.

This remedy dissolves the blood and pus,

which exhales through the fissure.

[3 If. 72]

Treatment of a wound of the skull when the skin is not broken.

Some physicians use trepanning.

I apply oil of roses.

& if þe ȝe make an obiecciou*n* how þat it myȝte, wiþoute arerynge of
þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil dou*n* bi
þilke slendynge vpon dura*m* matre*m* / I answere: riȝt as þe mate*r*
of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge[1] þat is more doutes, bi 4
emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þe*r* is no slendynge of
þe brayn panne, ne no wou*n*de in þe skyn, myche more liȝtloker &
more bettere þe blood, þat is liȝt & able to be resolued, þe which
þat wente dou*n* bi þe forseid slending, may bi þe forseid slendynge 8
þe bette*r*e be exaled. Ne þilke blood is not viscat[2] in þe substau*n*ce
of dure matris, as þe mate*r* is i*n* empostymes, wherfore he is more
obeisschau*n*t* — — to þe attracciou*n* of medicyns /

& if þe brayn panne be hurt wiþoute wou*n*de [3]of þe skyn, þe 12
which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þa*n*ne su*m*men
kutte aboue þe hurtynge in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe
.iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe panniele þat keueriþ þe
boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her o*per*e comou*n* curis, as 16
it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a
crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þi*n*g þat is triangle
in þis mane*r* ◁, & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon
þat þe oile of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat þe ve*r*tu of þe medicyn, 20

[1] *litarge*, Lat. lethargus. Lethargy, stupor.
[2] *viscat*, Lat. inviscatus, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

souded. And ȝif me maken an obiectiou*n* how þat yt myȝte wi*th*-
outen arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyte*r* be dreyede whiche
þat fel dou*n* by þilke selendynge vpon þe duram matre*m*, I answere:
ryȝte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is 24
more doutes, by emplastres wi*th*outen forth leyd is desolfed, and
þere nys none selyndynge of þe breyn pa*n*ne ne no wou*n*de in þe
skyn, myche more lyȝtlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyȝt &
able to be*n* reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseyde 28
selendynge, may be þe forseyde selendynge bete*r* ben exaled. Ne
þilke blod ys noȝt inviscat in þe substau*n*ce of dure matris as þe
matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssau*n*t to* þe
expulciou*n* of kynde, & also ys more obeyssau*n*t to the attractiou*n* 32
of medycine. And ȝif þe brayn pa*n*ne be hurte wi*þ*out wou*n*de of
þe skyn, þe whiche þo*u* schalt y-knowe*n* by þe toknys tofore seyde,
þe*n*ne su*m* me*n* kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a eros, &
þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kytten & flen þe pa*n*nycle þat 36
keferith þe bonys, & afte*r*wardes þey vsen trepanys & here o*per*e
[4 fol. 79 *a*] comyn eures, as [4]yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte noȝt þe skyn
in mane*r*e of a eros, but in þe mane*r*e of a Schelde o*per*e ellys of
a thynge þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on 40
quartere & y vnwreye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

þat is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro bynepe
þe brayn-panne / & I do *in* þis caas al þing as it is declarid next
aboue. & if ȝe make obiecciou*n* aȝens me bi costantyne[1] or ellis bi **Constantyn objects,**
4 op*er*e, þat seien þat bi al oure myȝt we eschewen þat neiþ*er* oile
ne noon oyntuose þi*ng* fallip not wiþi*n*ne þe brayn-pa*n*ne / I
answere wiþ auicen, þat seiþ: þat he worchiþ riȝtfulliche þat vsiþ **but Auicen,**
teped[2] oilis, & þe same tellen galion & serapion; & also I seie þat **Galion, Serapion, and I use**
8 oile of rosis, þe which þat schal [3]be maad of g*ra*pis of olyue trees **[3 lf. 72, bk.]**
þat be*n* not ripe, is not oyntuose, but it is drie, & is clepid oile **Oleum enfancinum**
enfa*n*cinum;[4] & namely wha*n*ne þat rosis ben medlid wiþ þilke
oile, þilke oile haþ gete to hi*m* a swete smellynge & a drie þi*ng* of **as a strengthening remedy.**
12 comfortynge[5] animal spiritis; & also þat oile haþ a vertu exp*r*essif,
as galion telliþ i*n* þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe **Galion.**
brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if þ*er* be maad ony greet
blood, it is maad sutil w*it*h þat oile; & wha*n*ne alle þese þingis
16 ben congaderid & leid aboue dura*m* matre*m*, it is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet hurt eiþ*er* of su*m* **Concussion of the brain not complicated**
fallynge or of sum smytynge wiþoute ony wou*n*de or wiþoute ony

[1] Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070. [2] *teped*, Lat. tepidus.

[4] *enfancinum*, for *omfacinum* ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον, oil made from unripe olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). Vigo *Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe grape. Vigo calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnrype Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino. [5] See below.

---

and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þ*a*t ys y-mad of honye of **Add. MS. 12,056.**
20 ros*es* & oyle of roses, may drawe fro bynepe þe brayn-pa*n*ne; and
y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declariti̇ nexte aboffe. And ȝif
me*n* make obiectiou*n* aȝeyns me by *con*stantine op*er*e ellys by hy*m*,
þ*a*t seyti̇ þat by alle oure myght we enchewyn þ*a*t nep*er*e oyle ne
24 no*n* vncomys[6] þynge falle noȝt w*it*hynne þe brayn-pa*n*ne, I answere
w*it*h Avecene, þ*a*t seyti̇: þ*a*t he wirchep ryȝtfulliche þat vsiti̇
certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & *ser*apion, and also y seye
þ*a*t oyle of roses, whiche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ
28 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnctuose, but is dreyȝe; & it is clepyde oyle
Omfaci*n*um, & namlye wha*n*ne þ*a*t ros*es* ben y-medlyde w*it*h þat
oyle, þilke oyle hati̇ y-gete to hy*m* a swete smellynge & a dreyȝinge,
cu*m*fortynge animal spirites; and also þilke oyle hati̇ a vertue
32 expressif, as galien tellyti̇ in the bok of symple medycines, by þe
whyche þe brayn ys confortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & ȝif þ*er*e
be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made SotyH; & whe*n*ne alle þese
þynges ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys
36 clansed. Su*m*tyme þe brayn ys meffyde of su*m* gret hurt op*er*e of
su*m* fallynge, op*er*e of su*m* smytynge w*it*houte*n* eny wou*n*de ore enye

[6] Corrupt, probably for *vnctonys*.

by a wound or fracture.

Nota

A certain Canon fell from his horse, and was left senseless.

[1 lf. 73]

I thought him dying,

Nota

but entreated by his friends

I anointed his head

and laid on compresses,

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an hiȝ hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two hyndere feet, & þilke chanoun fel doun baeward vpon þe erþe vpon his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat anoon he loste þe meuynge and þe felynge of al his body / þanne a lewid leche [1] þat was frend to þilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he cowde not no lettrure[2] / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him neiþer heerynge, ne spekynge, ne no þing meuynge, & I deemede him for deed / & neþeless[3] I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuyliche þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil lynnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

[2] Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O. Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

[3] Lat.: meo tamen addens judicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, juvamenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056.

breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre of seint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye hors and haue seten in þe sadyH, þe hors areryde vpon hys two [3] hyndere fete, & þilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe hed þat anon he lost þe ffelynge & þe meffynge of alle his bodye. Þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to þilke Chanoun was y-clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym noȝt, for he had neuere seyne þe same cas, ne he ne couþe noȝt on lettre. And at þe laste y was clepte, & y fonde hym noȝt herynge ne spekynge ne nothynge mevynge, I demyde hym for ded, and naþeles sauyde, ȝif þat he were my broþere y nolde nouȝt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede in hym þe godnesse & þe helpynge of medycines; ffor ofte tymes kynde with gode werkys helpiþ preueliche þat semyþ vnpossible to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aH þe hed with pre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe pondre of mirtylles, and y leyde abouen a sotyH þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

[3 fol. 79 b]

oile & vynegre, & aboue *þat*' towȝ smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chau*n*gide it' þries ech day i*n* anoyntyn*g*e þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil[1] of' þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot' oile of' camomille / In þe ij. day he openede a litil hise yȝen, & he bigan to loke aboute [2]him as it' hadde be a deef' man *þat*' were i*n* a wondri*n*g' / & þa*n*ne su*m*me wolden hane asaied if' *þat*' he myȝte haue ete / & I wolde not suffre hi*m* to ete / & I seide þouȝ *þat*' he wolde ete *þat*' he schulde not' / In þe iij. day I spak to hi*m* / he answeride me babelynge as a child *þat*' bigy*n*neþ to speke, but' he myȝte forþ wiþ no word[3] / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche[4] / & þa*n*ne I ȝaf hi*m* to drynke hoot' ypocras[5] *þat*' is maad of' sugre & of' watir / In þe v. day he took þikke tiȝa*n*ne[6] / In þe vj. dai I ȝaf' hi*m* broþ of' a chiken; and þa*n*ne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil to menen / & neuer-þe-lattere he myȝte not' walke not' manye daies aftir. & wha*n*ne *þat*' he myȝte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide

a bandage, and a lamb's skin.

On the 2nd day he opened his eyes.

[2 lf. 73, bk.]

On the 3rd he babbled.

On the 4th he spoke boisterously.

From the 6th day I gave him strengthening food,

[1] *of þe myddil*, inserted.

[3] See below, note 8.

[4] *boistisliche*. Lat.: balbutiendo, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. boistous, lame, with boisterous.

[5] *ypocras*, errour for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid.*

[6] Lat. ptisana*m* spissam. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordei uel fariola."

& aboue *þat* towȝ smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed *with* a band, & abou*en* y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chan*n*gede yt twyes eu*er*ye day; in anoyntynge þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeH of þe rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde day he opnyde a lyte his eyȝen, & he bygan to loken aboute hy*m* as it hadde be a deff' ma*n*, op*er*e ellys a man *þat* were in a wondrynge; and þe*n*ne some wolde*n* hane assayede ȝif *þat* he wolde eten, & y wolde nouȝt [7]Suffren hy*m* to eten, & y seyde þowȝ *þat* he wolde eten he scholde noȝt'. In þe þridde day y spak' to hy*m*, & he answerde me bablynge as a childe *þat* begy*n*neþ to speke, but he myȝte formen no*n* worde.[8] In þe fourþe day he spak' bostynglyche, and þe*n*ne y gaf hy*m* to drynke hot ydrosacre, *þat* ys y-mad of Sugre & of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke þikke[9] tysan. In þe sixe day y gaf hy*m* þe broth off' a chykne, & þe*n*ne he gan to strengþe litel & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neu*er*e þe later*e* he myȝte noȝt walkyn by manye dayes. And wha*n*ne *þat* he myȝte take Suffisau*n*tlye mete, y comau*n*dyde hy*m* to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

Add. MS. 12,056.

[7 fol. 80 *a*]

[8] Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

[9] MS. þilke.

purgative pills, him to take pilulas chochias[1] for to resolne bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi þilke fallinge / & I comaundide

and brain of fowl and kid. him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; neþeles he was 4 neuere so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms [3 ff. 74] are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest. In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to[2] crokid, & þe yʒen to loke asquynt [3]ciþer crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wiþoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8 þe brest þat mon be saaf[4] / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon

Three ways of treatment: .1. the way used by Anselme. is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnynge of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe[5] þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / neþeles I wiste weel

.2. trepanning. þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtynge of þe heed to vsen terabracioun[6] ciþer remeu-

.3. my own way, ynge of þe boon wiþ handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

[1] *Cochia.* An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

[2] *be to*, added in margin.

[4] Lat.: præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *salvere* instead of *sallire*.

[5] Anselmus de Iauua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

[6] "*Terebration*, a boring or piereing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepaudiron." *Ibid.*

Add. MS. 12,056. resolfe by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by þilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; naþeles he was neuyre 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyʒe to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wiþout felynge, & vnmevablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat reditħ þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsyde, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynninge of þis chapitell, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsitħ þis weye, & þerby he gat myche moneye, naþeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyʒeden in his handys by þis wey. þe

[7 fol. 80 *b*] [7]secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen terebracion, opere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handlyche Instru- 32 mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

which þat I haue told openliche *in* almaner caas / & I bileue, if þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe o*þer*e .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe redere of þis werk *in* þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis sentencis & also vndirsto*ndin*ge. where fewer people die.

Þouȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of ano[1]tamie of membris þat be*n* compou*n*d, in þe bigy*nn*ynge of eueri chapitle of þis secu*n*de tretis, neþeles we leeuen[2] it for þe bettere for to treten of anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten of sijknes þat come*n* to þese me*m*bris, þe whiche syknessis ben non[3] wo*un*dis // // // [1 If. 74, bk.] The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

The secunde chapitle of wou*n*dis of þe face & anotamie of þe same. ¶ Cap. ij.

Wou*n*dis þat ben maad *in* þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum dinge[4] ellis þat wou*n*diþ, or þei ben maad wiþ p*ri*cknyge of a knyf, arowe, eiþ*er* spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue more diligence in þe wou*n*dis of þe face, for it is a place þat is myche seen, & it is wel to do make[5] a sotil[6] cicatrice / A wounde Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.

[2] Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.
[3] MS. *now.* [4] *dinge*, in margin.
[5] Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost.* Quinte Essence, p. 62. [6] *a sotil*, in margin.

---

alle man*er*e of cas; and y belene ȝif þat he wyl take hede to alle þese weyes, & þat he wyH wyslye dyscussen þe opynio*un*s of Auctores, þat he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þe*n*ne by enye o*þer*e. Almyȝtie god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe beste wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyth sentence & echyn vnd*er*stondynge. Þowȝ þat we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of me*m*bres þat ben co*m*poned, in þe bygy*nn*inge of eu*er*y chapyteH of this secu*n*de tretys, naþeles we leuen yt for þe bettire for to treten of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle tretyn of seknesse þat comyth to þis me*m*bres, whyche seknesse beþ no*n* wou*n*des. Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

Wou*n*des þat ben made in þe face, o*þer*e þey beþ mad with a swerde, ore wiþ su*m* thynge ellys þat wou*n*deþ, o*þer*e þey be*n* mad wiþ p*ri*kynge of a knyf, arwe, o*þer*e spere. Yt is necessarye, þat a surgyne haue more diligence in þe wou*n*des of þe face, for it is a place þat is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyH cicatryce. A wou*n*de þat ys mad *with* a swerde o*þer*e *with* su*m* þynge

þat is maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sumþing semblable þat is alwei in lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe wounde togidere / & for þat manye men liȝen of þe wounde of þe nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which nose was afterward sett aȝen in his owne kynde; þe which is an open lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & [1] meuynge passiþ, whanne a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is liȝt to hele / Brynge þe parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose were kutt ouerþwert doun to þe ouer lippe, & neþeles þat þe ouer lippe & þe nose were kutt al awey, but þat it held faste at boþe þe eendis of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝen þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrillis ech aȝen oþir as þei weren toforn, & make two smale tentis of wex & putte on eiþir noseþrille aboue þe wounde, if þat þou maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon eende of þe wounde, & anoþer poynt at þe opere eende of þe wounde, & anoþir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose aȝen þe forheed; and aftirward a poynt on eiþer side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]* bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis

There is a lie about replacing a nose cut off.

[1 If. 75][2]

Wounds of the nose: a longitudinal cut,

a transverse cut, the nose still hanging.

Adjust the nose, retain it in position by splints of wax,

sew it,

[2] Heading to this page: *Off wondes off the fface & Anotomy off þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS. 12,056. [3 fol. 81 *a*]

semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn & gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyȝen [3] of þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyȝen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette aȝeyne in hys owne kynde; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of felynge & of meffynge passiþ aweye, whanne a membre is departyde from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyȝt to hele; brynge þe parties togedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And ȝif þat þe nese were y-kutte twarte offere doun to þe ouere lippe, & naþeles þat þe ouyre lippe & þe nose were noȝt kutte al awey, but þat it helde faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette aȝeyne þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrellys yche aȝeyns opere as þey were tofore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe noseþrellys aboue þe wounde, ȝif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde, & an opere poynt at þe opere ende of þe wounde, and an opere poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede; & afterwarde a poynt on eiþere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt* betwene evyry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

wha*nn*e þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seid vpon þe wou*n*de, þat is maad of [1] lime, frank encense, & sandragou*n* / & take þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & bete he*m* togid*e*re, & wete þ*e*ri*n*ne a ly*n*nen cloop & leie aboue þe wou*n*de / Aftirward bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oo*n* vndirneþe, anoþ*e*r on þe oon side, anoþir on þe toþir side / & þa*n*ne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat he may not discende dou*n*ward / þe toþir schal be leid aboue þat he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat is vnd*e*r þe nose þat halt þe nose vpward, schal be knytt[2] aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be turned ouertwert ouer þe forheed, þat he mowe holde þe boond, þat þe nose decline to neiþir[3] side. & þe boond þat is leid aboue þe nose, schal be bou*n*den bihynde i*n* þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne a3e*n* aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat þei mou*n* not wagge to neiþir side aboute þe sowynge ; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt leie þe defensif of bole, & aftirward þou schalt worche on þe wou*n*de of þe nose, as I haue seid i*n* a wou*n*de of fleisch i*n* þe fourþe[4] tretis /

throw a powder on the wound, [1 lf. 75, bk.]

apply three pledgets, and two banduges,

one holds the rose in position,

the other the pledgets.

[5 lf. 76]

Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,

þe wou*n*dis þat be*n* ma*a*d i*n* oþ*e*re pa*r*ties of þe face [5]as wiþ a swerd or ony þi*n*g semblable, brynge he*m* togidere & sowe hem & cure hem, as it is conteyned in general chapitlis of wou*n*dis, takynge

[2] MS. *kutt.* [3] MS. *þe neþir.* [4] *fourþe* for *firste.*

Add. MS. 12,056.

whe*nn*e þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudr*e* þat is tofor*e* seyde vpon þe wou*n*de, þat is y-mad of lym, ffrank ensence, sandragou*n*, & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete he*m* togedire, & leye þ*e*re*y*nne a ly*n*ne cloþ & leye abou*e*n þe wou*n*de, aftirwarde [bynde]* þ*e*reto þre plumaciolus, one [6] vndirenepe, & on on þat o syde, an oþ*e*re on þe oþ*e*re syde ; & þa*n*ne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat on schall holden vp þe nose þat he may nou3t discendyn dun-ward, þat oþ*e*re schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plum-acyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat ys vnd*e*r þe nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abou*e*n on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neiþ*e*re syde. And þe bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bou*n*den behynde*n* in þe nolle ; and aft*e*rwarde he schal turnen a3eyne aboffe þe nose, hold-ynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe no3t wagge on neythere syde aboute þe sewynge ; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wou*n*de of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wou*n*de of flesch in þe firste tretys. þe wou*n*des þat beþ y-mad in oþ*e*re partye of þe face as w*i*th a swerd ore oþir*e* þynge semblable, brynge he*m* togedire, sowe hem, & cur*e* he*m*, as yt ys conteyned in gene*r*all chapitle of wou*n*dys, takynge

[6 fol. 81 b]

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more
Nota bene sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist
make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on
þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem 4
togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe þickenesse of hony, & wete
or brought together by an adhesive plaster. þerinne two pecis of lynnen cloop as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe
toon on þe oon side of þe wonnde, & þe oper on þe topir side & lete
hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde summwhat to blede, & 8
þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij.
pecis togidere, & caste aboue poudre of lyme, frankencense, san-
dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of
rosis, & leie aboue al togidere, & kepe þe partiee wiþ ligatnre & 12
prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

A wound made with a dart or an arrow. & if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe
arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is
[1 lf. 76, bk.] [1] þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16
If the arrow head is hidden, wheper þat per be a senewe prickid eiþir noon. But if þe arowe
heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myȝte
not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how
try to find it, þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20
arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchiþ, þat he mowe loke

---

Add. MS. 12,056. hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more
sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou
maiste maken a sowyng in þe face, ȝif þat þe wounde be nouȝt to 24
myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sangdragoun & poudre hem &
tempre hem togedire wiþ þe whyte of an eyȝe to þe þyknesse of
hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of lynnen cloþ as longe as þe
[2 fol. 82 a] wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe [2] wounde, & þe opere on þat 28
opere & lete hem dreyȝen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum
what to blede, & þenne brynge þe partyes of þe wounde togedires;
& sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboue þe poudre of lym,
ffranc ensence, sancdragoun tofore seyd, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32
of an eyȝe & oyle of roses, & leye abofe al togedyre, and kepe þe
partyes with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore
seyd. And ȝif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an
arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36
þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapyteH opere
ellys in þe firste tretys, whepere þat pere be a synwe prikyde opere
none. But ȝif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye privy place of
þe face, so þat yt myȝte nouȝt ben seyȝen, þenne euerye man bysie 40
hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-
smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde
strecchiþ, þat he mowe loke ȝif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if^t þat he mowe fynde ony man*er* wey how he may drawe out þilke arowe-heed; & þanne drawe hi*m* out^t þe best^t maner wey þ*at*^t he may / & if^t he may not^t, heelde he i*n* þe wounde oile of^t rosis & þe 4 ȝelke of^t an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe wounde, til þ*at*^t kynde schewe su*m* maner wey / Manye men han born an arowe-heed i*n* þe p*ar*ties of^t her face bi longe tyme; & aft*er* longe tyme kynde haþ cast^t out^t þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ 8 schewid su*m* wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myȝte be taken out^t. & þou must^t take hede bi al þi miȝt^t þ*at*^t, wha*n*ne þ*at*^t þou sowist^t þe wou*n*dis of^t þe face, þ*at*^t þe mouþ be not^t crokid, but make so sliȝly þi sowynge þ*at*^t þilke accident^t may [1]not^t fallen; & þ*at*^t þou 12 maist^t do weel, if^t þat^t þou cowdist^t ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if^t þ*at*^t þ*o*u caust, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ byndyngis // // //

and draw it out; if you fail, apply Oliu*m* Rosa*rum* till nature works.

Beware of disfiguring the mouth in making the suture.

[1 lf. 77]

The þridde chapitle of þe secu*n*de tretis is of 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

¶ Cap^m 3^m

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þ*at*^t is bitwene þe heed & þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt^t / Su*m*men maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesau*n*t^t[2] & þe

Anatomy of the neck.

[2] *wesaunt* gula; *wesande*, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 4.

---

20 wey, how he may drawe*n* out þilke arwe-hed; and þe*n*ne drawe hy*m* out þe beste mane*re* þ*at* he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde into þe wou*n*de oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke of an eyȝe tegedre, & helde into þe wou*n*de, & wiþ þis medycine 24 worche in þe wou*n*de, tyl þat kynde schewe su*m* mane*re* wey. Manye me*n* han born an arwe-hed in þ*at* partyes of here face by longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out þilke arwe-hed, op*er*e ellys haþ schewyde su*m* weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myȝte be 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þ*at* wha*n*ne þ*at* þou sowyste þe wou*n*des of þe face þ*at* þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde, but make so slylye þy sowynge þ*at* þylke accident may noȝt [3]ffallen; & þ*at* þou maiste do wel, ȝif þ*at* þou couþest ordey*n* wel þy sowynge 32 & ȝif þou couþest kepen wel þy sowy*nge* wiþ plumacyolus & wiþ byndynges.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 82 b]

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off wou*n*des of þe nekke & Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ By the nekke is co*n*tynwede alle þe place þ*at* is bytwene þe hed & þe schuldre*s*, whose Anotamye y wyH telle*n* as y haue behyght^t. ¶ Some me*n* makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe

In the neck are vij spondilis, or Vertebræ, the 1st is articulated with the occipital bone.

þrote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe neeke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirl-boonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wiþ a boon of þe heed þat is elepid passillare[1] with manye smale feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynt next to þe heed myȝte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplied in þat ioynt, þat manye smale myȝten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile [2]is bounde to þe seeunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuenþe / þe seuenþe is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe rigge, þat þe necke myȝte more liȝtliche meuen, which þat is elepid þe .viij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vii. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste spondilis and[3] þe boon of þe heed þat is elepid passillare / þe seeunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe seeunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene eeh spondile / þese senewis ben

[2 lf. 77, bk.] .1. .2.3. .4.5.6. 7

From the cervical vertebræ spring 7 pairs of sinews,

[1] See *Vicary*. page 44, note 2.

[3] MS. *of*. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is ruterberynge in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is elepid þe bevere rp or paxillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056.

wesant & þe þrote-bolle, and alle þese be conprehendyde vndire þe name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wiþ a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passilare wiþ manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte nexte þe hed myȝte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iunete, þat manye smale myȝte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & ȝif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouȝt so able to be meffyde. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe seeunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile[4] of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myȝte more lyȝtlyehe meffen, whiehe ys clepyde þe viij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off synwes growiþ out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe proeedeþ out* bytwene [5 fol. 83 *a*] þe fyrste spondile [5]& þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-elepyde passilare; þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe seeunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[4] MS. *Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed*, struck through, after *spondile*.

dyuydid *in* many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned *with* þese senewis / & þese senewis ben clepid menynge, riȝt as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore *par*tie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis *þat* comen of þe spondilis of þe necke *þere* ben maad bran*n*ys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuynge of þo *par*ties. In [1] þe necke bihynde, *þere* ben ordeyned open[2] veynes comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes *þer* ben arteries *pri*nyliche[3] comynge fro þe herte & goynge to þe heed for notable *pro*fitis. & wha*n*ne *þat* þei han[4] doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden don*n* bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe *par*tie mate*r*ie sp*er*matife: *þat* is to seie mater of sp*er*me, don*n* to þe ballokis / & *þer*fore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde nenere engendre[5] / On þe riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis[6] whiche[7] ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche *pro*ceden out of þe

communicating with the sinews of the head.

[1 lf. 78]

The neck contains veins and arteries, ascending from the heart,

and bringing spermatic matter to the ballocks,

it contains also ligaments,

[2] *open*, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. [3] Lat. arteric occulte. [4] MS. *ben*.

[5] Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. *qui*dem dixit in suis inte*n*tionib*us* *quod* plurimu*m* materiei spermatis est ex cerebro & *quod* desce*n*dit ex duab*us* venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et *pro*pter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambar*um* generationem & facit incurrere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib.* III, *Fen* XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.

[6] *nolles*, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

[7] *whiche*, struck through after *nollis*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

þese Synwys buþ devyeded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe bran*n*ches of þe synwes of the hed in some place beþ contynwede & Ioynde *with* þese synwes. And þese synwes buþ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes *þat* comyth of þe fore partye of þe brayn beþ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiþ also felynge. Of þese Synwes *þat* comyth of þe spondlis of þe nekke *þere* beþ mad brawnys, þe whiche beþ instrumentes of mevynge of þe *par*tyes. In þe nekke behynde, *þere* ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comynge fro*m* þe lyffere whiche *þat* ascendyn to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes *þere* ben Arteryes y-hud *pri*nelyche, comynge ffro*m* þe herte & goynge to þe hed for notable *pro*fetes. And wha*n*ne *þat* þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden don*n* by þe place *þat* beþ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen **materie sp*er*matice,** *þat* is to say mater of sperme, don to þe ballokes, & *þer*efore it ys y-seyde: ȝif *þat* þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neu*er*e engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke *þere* ben y-ordeynde tweye nolles, þe whyche beþ of lygamente mater, þe whiche *pro*cedeþ out of þe bonys

boonys of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe
to support the sinews. eeris[1] in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a rest-
ynge place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore
partie of þe necke here is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn 4
Gula, doun to þe forke of þe brest;[2] & bitwene þe necke & gula wiþinne-
[5 lf. 78, bk.] forþ here is ordeyned mary,[3] þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat
gullet running from the mouth to the stomach. discendiþ of[4] a smal skyn enueronnynge [5]al þe mouþ wiþinneforþ
& so goynge doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wiþ þe 8
stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun
bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuynge to þe spondilis til þat he
come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & here he is departid from
þe spondilis, & he declineþ into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse 12
The gullet has 2 coats. þoruȝ þe mydrif,[6] & is compounned of .ij. pannielis, & in þe ynnere
cloop here ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauȝtis is maad of
mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloop here ben brawnys in brede bi
þe whiche is castynge out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon tran- 16
suersarie, þat is to seie goynge ouerþwert, for wiþholdynge is not
The windpipe is made of gristle, nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest here is sett þe
canne[7] of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

[1] *eeris* for *ers.* [2] *the forke of the brest,* the clavicle.
[3] *mary,* Lat. meri siue oesophagus. Arab. mari.
[4] MS. *of,* twice.
[6] *mydrif,* diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 22, XV. cent.
[7] MS. *same.* Lat. canna pulmonis. See *Vicary,* page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in 20
lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restynge
place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye
of þe nekke here ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn doun to
þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wiþynne- 24
[8 fol. 83 b] forþ here ys [8]y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche
þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environynge alle þe mouth withynne-
forþ, & so goynge doun to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wiþ
þe Stomak, & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ 28
doun by þe hyndere partye of þe nek cleyynge to þe spondelis; tyl
þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & here he ys departyde
from þe spondelis and declyneþ into þe Innere partye tyl þat he
peree þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys composed of twey pannyeles, and 32
in þe Innore cloþ here ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauȝte
ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ here bene brawnys
in brede by whom ys made castynge out of superfluyte; and he haþ
non transversarye, þat ys to seye goynge twartoffere, for wythhold- 36
ynge ys nouȝt nedful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest
here is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys composed off grustlye

togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge *in* þe *y*nnere p*ar*tie a
ful smeþe panniele ioynynge togid*ere* þilke gristili ryngis. & þilke
ryngis wha*n*ne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defautif[1] aȝens þe
4 merie / & þe foorme of[1] þe canne of[1] þe lu*n*gis is* as it[1] were þe
foorme of[1] a eane, [1]þ*at*[1] is to seie a rehed,[2] of[1] þe which rehed þe [[1] lf. 79]
fourþe p*ar*tie were kutt[1] awey *in* lenkþe, & aftirward þilke caane is
wrie w*ith* a sotil eloop þ*at*[1] wha*n*ne þ*at*[1] a greet[1] mussel of[1] mete passe
8 dou*n* bi þe merye, he schulde not[1] haue lett*in*ge, but[1] þilke pa*n*niele and gives way to great morsels.
of[1] merye ȝeueþ stede[3] to þe greet[1] mete passynge dou*n* to þe stomak.
þe þrote-bolle[4] is maad of[1] iij gristlis, & is sett[1] aboue þese two
weies. & boþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift[1] side of[1] þe caane of[1] þe The 2 Venæ organicæ (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.
12 lungis þ*er* ben ij. greete veynes þat[1] ben elepid organiee or ellis
guydes[5]; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of[1] þe kutt-
ynge of[1] þilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete p*er*els,
& sumtyme deeþ; for þe grete affenite þat[1] þei han wiþ þe herte, An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.
16 and þe greet[1] noyousnes[6] þat[1] þei han to þe lyu*er*e, bi he*m* sonner[7]
blood is euaeued, wherfore sp*iritus* exaliþ, þe whiche þ*at*[1] ben

[2] Read *reed*.

[3] *ȝeueþ stede*, Lat. cedere. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, *to giffe stede*, cedere, locum dare. [4] *þrote-bolle*. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

[5] *gaydes*, Lat. guidegi, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. widādsch, vena jugularis. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."

[6] *noyousuesse*. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*. [7] *sonner*, in margin.

---

rynges y-bou*n*de togedire wiþ panyeleris ligamentes, habbynge in Add. MS.
þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pa*n*nicle Ioynynge togedire þilke 12,056.
20 grustly rynge*s*. And þilke rynges, whe*n*ne þ*at* þey ben ioynede w*ith*
mery, þey ben defautyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne
of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þ*at* is to say a reed,
of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere-
24 ward þe eanne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl eloth̄, þat wha*n*ne þ*at* a grete
mosseH of mete passe dou*n* be þe mery, he seholde han no*n* lettynge,
but þilke pa*n*nicle of mery ȝeuyth̄ stede to þe grete mete passynge
dou*n* to þe stomak[1]. þe þrotbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette
28 aboue þese [9]two weyȝes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe [[9] fol. 84 *a*]
lefte syde of þe eane of þese longes, þ*er*e beþ tweye grete veynes þ*at*
beþ y-clepyde **organice** o*þer*e ellys **guydes**. & vndir*e* þe veynes
þ*er*e be*n* grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of þilke Veynes &
32 Arteryes þ*er*e comyth̄ ofte tymes gret peryle & su*m*tyme sodeyne
deþ; for þe grete afynite[10] þ*at* þey han in þe herte & þe grete noye-
nesse þ*at* þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys evacued,
wherefore spirites exaleþ whyche þ*at* buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

[10] *a*, above line.

freendis boþe to þe body and also to[1] þe soule[2] / þe ligament[t] of[t] þe
The muscles, nerves, and vessels of the neck
þrote is clepid emanence eiþir þe heiȝþe of[t] þe epiglote, & in þe sidis
of[t] þe þrote *þere* is sett gula. &[3] þe goynge of[t] brawnys, senewis
[4 lf. 79, bk.]
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her brau*n*chis bi [4]*par*ties of[t] þe heed 4
pass in its longitudinal direction.
*pro*ceden aftir þe ordour of[t] eeris,[5] & þei ben ordeyned in þe neeke
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist[t] se þat[t] it[t] is necessarie
a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise bre*n*nyngis bi lenkþe of[t] þe
necke & of[t] þe þrote, & þat[t] þe woundis þat[t] ben m*aa*d ouerþwert[t] 8
ben more p*er*lous, þan þo þat[t] ben in lenkþe /

Wounds on the neck are either longitudinal or transverse.
Now we wolen tretyn of[t] wou*n*dis *þat*[t] ben maad in þis place,
wiþ a sweord or wiþ sum þi*n*g semblable to hi*m*, or wiþ an arowe or
sum þi*n*g semblable to hi*m*. & if[t] it[t] be wiþ a sweord, eiþir it[t] is ouer- 12
þwert[t] eiþir in lenkþe / & if[t] it[t] be ouerþwert[t] & *þere* be kutt[t] greete
In the latter case staunch the blood,
veynes eiþ*er* arteries, it[t] is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt[t] helpe to
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore
asigned *in* þe chapitle of[t] flux of[t] blood. & if[t] þer be a senewe kutt[t], 16
sew the vein, and the nerve,
þa*n*ne brynge boþe p*ar*ties of[t] þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis
of[t] þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of[t] wou*n*dis, as I haue tauȝt[t] tofore
and apply a preparation
in þe place of[t] sowynge of[t] senewis, & leie aboue lu*m*bricus of[t] þe

[1] *to*, above line.
[2] Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.
[3] *in*, inserted. [5] *eeris* for *heeris*.

Add. MS. 12,056.
eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe[6] eminence 20
o*þere* þe hekþe of þe **epiglote**, & in þe sydes of þe þrote *þere* is y-set
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, eordys, synwes, veynes, arteryes &
here brau*n*chys by parties of þe hed *pro*ceden aftyr*e* þe ordre of
heres, & þey ben ordeynde in þe nekke & in þe gula aftir*e* here 24
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how *þat* yt is necessarye a
surgyn to make*n* hys kuttynges, & hys bre*n*nynges by lengþe of þe
nekke & of þe þrote, and *þat* þe wou*n*dys þat ben y-mad twarte
offere beþ more perylose, þe*n* þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

Wonde of þe nekke. ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of wou*n*des þat
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a sweord o*þere* w*ith* su*m* þynge semblable
to hy*m*, o*þere* w*i*þ an arwe, o*þere* w*ith* su*m* þynge semblable to hy*m*.
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, o*þere* yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe ; 32
and ȝif it be twart offere, and *þere* ben y-kutt grete Veynes o*þere*
arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Naþeles þou schalt helpe to
stau*n*che þe blod & to *con*soude þe veyne, aftere þe techynge tofore
asygned in þe chapytle off[t] fflux of blod. And ȝif *þere* be a synwe 36
kutte, brynge þe p*ar*ties of þe synwe togedy*r*e, & sowȝ þe pellykles
of þe synwe w*ith* þe sowynge of þe wou*n*de, as y haue tauȝt tofore
[7 fol. 34 b]
in þe [7]place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lu*m*bricus of þe

[6] *þe*, above line.

erþe, þat beth erþe-wormes stanmpid & boilid wiþ oile of rosis, & kepe þe sowynge [1] with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing of þe cure, as it is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if þat þe wounde were in lenkþe, it is not necessarie but for to sowe þe wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of lyme, frankencense, & sandragoun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wiþ byndynge, til þe wounde be ful consowdid / & if þe wounde were maad in þe parties wiþ an arowe or wiþ a knyf, or with a spere or sum þing semblable to hem, & if þer be an arowe, drawe him out; & if an arowe be drawe out, loke if þer folowe emorosogie,[2] þat is to seie, a greet flux of blood, & þanne staunche it aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if þer be no flux of blood, loke if þer be akþe / & if þer be acþe, putte in þe wounde a litil tent þat may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat þou maist seen þat þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it happiþ, þat an arowe or sum þing semblable passiþ þoruȝ þe necke & þe prote, & he touche not þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it nediþ not but þat þe wounde be [3] consowdid. & if þer were akþe eiþer bigynnynge of swellynge, þanne it were necessarie to fulfille þe wounde wiþ hoote oile of rosis & to putte in a tente not to

of earth-worms. [1 If. 80]

If the wound is longitudinal it needs sewing and puluis

An arrow must be drawn out, and if Emorogie (hemorrhage) ensues, staunch the blood, if there are pains, tent the wound.

[3 If. 80, bk.]

If there are pains and swelling, tent the wound and apply oil of roses.

[2] Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis fluxus vel discursus."

Add. MS. 12,056.

erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde. And ȝif þat þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys noȝt necessarie but forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, ffrank ensence & sank dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with byndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful consouded. And ȝif þat þe wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe oþere a knyff, oþere a spere, oþere sum þynge semblable to hem, and ȝif þere be an arwe, drawe hym out, and ȝif þe arwe be drawen out, loke ȝif þere folwe emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & ȝif þere be non flux of blod, loke ȝif þere be akþe; & ȝif þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And ȝif he hane non akþe, lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happith, þat an arwe, oþer sum thynge semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote, & ȝit he touchiþ noȝt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nediþ noȝt but þat þe wonde be consouded. And ȝif þere were akþe oþere ellys a bygynnynge of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfylle þe wounde wiþ hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente noȝt to grete,

greet, wet *in* þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wou*n*de open, til þat he ȝeue quytture, & aftir clense hi*m* & aftir consowde hi*m* / Vndirstonde þe *per*ilis þat comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad *in* þis place / þe firste *per*el is: if þat þe necke be kutt ouerþwert wiþ a swerd, so þat þe necke-boon & þe marie of þe necke-boon be al atwo, it is deedliche. & if þat nucha, þat is mary of þe necke boon, is not kutt al atwo but is hurt, it is *per*ile of lesynge, felynge & meuynge,[1] & at þe laste be deed, but if þat medicyns þat I schal telle mou*n* helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt ouerþwert, I suppose þat he be heelid, þe necke schal neu*er*e haue[2] his free meuynge; & if þat ony of þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of þe arteries þat ben vndir he*m* be kutt, it is drede of sodeyn deeþ, for sodeyn exalaciou*n* of þe spiritis & also for affinite of þe herte; & also if þat þe cane of þe lungis be kutt ouer[3]þwert al atwo, for þe more p*ar*tie it is deedliche / Also it is seid, þat if þe veynes þat ben bihy*n*de þe eeris bee kutt al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre. And also sumtyme it is kutt eiþir prickid þe senewe þat is clepid reuersif, þat is vndir boþe sidis of þe eere, of þe whiche kuttynge or prickynge euermore is m*aa*d hosnesse[4] / And if þat þe places

Nota

The wound is mortal if the Spinal Cord is cut,

and generally mortal

if a great blood-vessel is cut,

[3 lf. 81]

or the wind-pipe.

Nota.

Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

[1] Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. [2] *haue*, in margin.
[4] *hosnesse*. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "*hoorsnesse*, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056.

y-wett in þe ȝolk*e* of an eyȝe & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wou*n*de open to þat he ȝyfe quyt*er*, & after*w*arde clanse hy*m* & afterwarde *con*soude hy*m*. Nota: vndirstande þe p*er*yles þat comeþ fro*m* wondys* þat ben mad in þis place. þe firste [5]Perel ys: ȝif þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and ȝif þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is noȝt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is p*er*yle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & at þe laste to be ded, but ȝif þe medycines þat y schal tellen aft*er*-warde mowe helpen. And ȝif þat enye Veynes o*þer*e enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neu*er*e haue hys fre meffynge; and ȝif enye of the veynes organyl whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, o*þer*e ellys enye of þe arteries þat beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deþ, ffor sodeyne exalaciou*n* of þe spirites & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also ȝif þat þe canne off þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al atwo, for þe more p*ar*tye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde ȝif þat þe veynes þat beþ behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also su*m* tyme ys y-kut o*þer*e y-prekyde þe sy*n*we þat is clepyde reu*er*siff, þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose kuttynge o*þer*e p*r*ekynge eu*er*e more ys mad horsnesse. And ȝif

[5 fol. 85 *a*]

ben peersid *with* an arowe, & þouȝ þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nouȝt *pr*ickid bi þe mydle, þanne ȝitt he may be heelid wiþ gode medicyns & acordynge.

4 Þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wou*n*de, *in* þe bigy*n*ny*n*ge, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & ȝelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is 8 maad, þa*n*ne leie a mu*n*dificatif wiþ medicyns comfortatiuis & incarnatiuis ma*a*d in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate ʒ .iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iij. ʒ, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. ʒ, mirre, sarcocol,[1] mu*m*mie[2] of ech ʒ .ß., barly mele ʒ ß., 12 streyne it on a cloop & [3]leie it on þe nucha *þat* is hurt. & þei *þat* hereof[4] p*ro*nosticaciou*n* schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to ynel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comeþ a rectificaciou*n* to þe nucha, & melioraciou*n* of meuynge of lymes, þat ben bynebe þe 16 place of þe nucha *þat* is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe[5] nature; namely, wha*n*ne þat it is holpen wiþ a good leche & wiþ þingis, *þat* ben

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply Oliu*m* Ros*arum*.

R

Modus confortandi & mundificandi vulnera Nuche.

[3 lf. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Nota

nature and the physician may help.

[1] *Sarcocolla*, Gr. Σαρκοκόλλα, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

[2] *mummie*, mumia. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

[4] MS. *of here*.

[5] *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. Stalwart.

þat place ben y-p*er*ced *with* an arwe, & þowȝ *þat* trachea arteria be 20 y-p*er*cyde o*per*e ellys ysophage, so þat Nucha be noȝt þrillede be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde *with* gode medycines & acordynge. *Þou* schalt helpe Nucha *þat* ys y-hurt in þis man*er*e: þou schalt helden into þe wou*n*de in þe bygy*n*ninge oyle of roses & aft*er*warde 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe ȝelke of an eyȝe, and þou schalt be busy in alle man*er*e to aswage akþe; & whe*n*ne *þat* quyt*er* ys y-mad, þe*n*ne leye a mu*n*dificatyff wiþ medicynes *con*fortatyff and [6]Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys man*er*e: R. oyle of ros*is* colat .ʒ. iiij, *with*[7] 28 resyne ana. ʒ. ij, terbentyne ʒ. iij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. ʒ. i, mirre, sarcocolle,[8] mumie ana .ʒ. ß, barly mele .ʒ. ß; streyne it on a cloþ & leye yt on þe nucha *þat* is hurt. And þawȝ *þat* hereof eu*er*e more p*ro*nosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to 32 yuele, naþeles by þis medicine þ*er*e comyth rectificaciou*n* to þe nuca, & amelioraciou*n* off mevynge of lymes þat beþ benebe þe place of þe nuca *þat* ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þe*n*ne semyth possible to þe leche. For þ*er*e ys noþynge vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche 36 wha*n*ne *þat* yt is holpen wiþ a gode leche & wiþ þynges, *þat* beþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

[6 fol. 85 *b*]

[7] *wiþ* for *wex*.

[8] MS. *sarcticolle*.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat al maner wounde þat peersiþ to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis to þe nucha, so þat bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuynge & þe felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat is maad in þe extremitees of[1] þe lacertis[2] as .iij. fyngir mele[3] brede vndir þe schuldris, eiþer .iii. fyngir mele brede abone þe elbowe eiþer bynepe, eiþir .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or bynepe / & ech wounde þat is in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, [4]schal be deemed deedlich, for þe nobilte of þilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha wiþ þe brayn, of þe which nucha passiþ as a reuere[5] from a welle, & for þe affinite of þilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherfore þou schalt euermore in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche as þou myȝt from vnresonable curis, but if þou be with þe more instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge worchiþ þat semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon sich [cures]* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of þe cure of þe sike man //

Wounds of the brain, the Spinal Cord, and the principal nerves are mortal. Avoid such hopeless cases.

[4 lf. 82]

[1] MS. *as*. Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.
[2] *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.
[3] *iij fyngir mele brede*. Lat. tribus digitis.
[5] MS. *rēuere*.

Add. MS. 12,056. helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencionn. Here vndirstande þat alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn opere ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge & þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat ys mad in þe extremites of þe lacertes as þre fyngremele brede in þe schuldres, opere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe opere bynepen, opere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne opere bynepene, & enery wounde þat ys in a synwye place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of þilke brayn, & for þe Affynite of nuca wythi þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of þilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn, by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flod, where-fore [6]þou schalt euyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst from vnresonable cures, but ȝif þou be wiþ þe more Instaunce y-preyȝede. Naþeles sumtyme nature with gode helpynges worchith þat semeþ to the leche vnpossible. Nenere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but ȝif þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe syke man.

of wounde*s* þat ben dedlich

[6 fol. 86 *a*]

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of wou*n*dis of þe spaude,[1] schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris, brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie / ¶ Capm iiijm

4 þe spawde is oon of' þe iiij. boonys, þe which þat' makþ þe foorme of' þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þi*n*ne & brood two-ward þe schuldris & i*n* hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of' hi*m* he haþ an egge su*m*what' greet' & twoward þe arm [2]i*n* þe place 8 of' þe schuldre he is greet' & rou*n*d ; & þilke eende is holowe as a box, & þis boon is lich to a pele[3] wiþ þe whiche men setten breed into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere p*ar*tie of' the schuldre he haþ an emine*n*ce. & in þe box of' þis boon — —[4] þe which is clepd adiu-12 torium ; þe which is oon boon su*m*what' crokid, greet' & holowe / þis boon is greet' for necessite of' strenkþe, & of' schap holowe, þat' he were liȝt', þat' he schulde not' þoruȝ his heuynes lette þe worch-inge of' lacertis, & þe rou*n*d extremite of' þis boon entriþ into þe 16 holownes of' þe spawde. & þei ben bou*n*den togidere wiþ a bowable ligament'. þe canel-boon[5] of' þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge

1 The Shoulder-blade.

[2 lf. 82, bk.]

2 The Adjutor (Humerus) is strong and hollow.

The Cannel bone (Clavicle)

[1] *spaude*, spatula = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352. "*spawde* Armus." O.Fr. espalde.

[3] *pele*, Lat. palla. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

[4] Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*). Lat. : In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis adiutorii.

[5] See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = clavicula.

¶ Capit. iiij. t*retis* .ij. is of wou*n*des of þe spaude, schuldre, arme, handis, ffingres, brawnes, veynes, 20 and here Anotamye. Add. MS. 12,056.

þe spawde ys one of þe iiij bonys whiche þat makiþ þe forme of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þe*n*ne & brode towarde þe schuldres & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppere syde of hy*m* he 24 haþ an egge su*m*what gret & towarde þe arme in þe place of þe schuldre he ys grete & rou*n*de. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box, and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche me*n* settyth brede into þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an 28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde adiutoriu*m* þe whiche ys a bon su*m*what crokyde, gret & holowȝ. þis bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he were lyȝte, þat he scholde nouȝt prowe*n* his hevynesse lette þe 32 wirchynge of lacertes, and þe rou*n*de extremite of þis bon entreþ into þe holwenesse of the spaude. & þey beþ y-bou*n*de togedre wit*h* a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this mane*r*e

an additament' sumwhat' round in þe neþer partie, þe which entriþ a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of' þe ouer boon of' þe .vij. boonys of' þe brest'. Euery extremite of' þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned with þe spawde, þat' þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4

Joins with the Os Rostrale (Coracoid),

& forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett' .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid rostralia[1] to þe lijknes of' þe bele [2]of' a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt' in maner of' a wegge / But' þe boon of' þe adiutori haþ in þe neþer partie twoward 8

[2 lf. 83]

and has 2 eminences.

þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of' þe eminence is more hiȝere þan þat' oþer; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it' were holf' a boket[3] wiþ þe which men drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned

The Forearm has two bones (Ulna and Radius),

wiþ þe boonys of' þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward haþ .ij. 12 bonys; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat' arecchiþ fro þe þombe to þe boon þat' is clepid adiutorium, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þat' strecchiþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. &

and an "Additament" (Olecranon).

he haþ in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament' lijk twoward 16 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makiþ þe elbowe scharp whanne þe arm is folden, & it' lettiþ þat' þe arm may not' be bowid [bakwarde]*.

[1] *rostralia.* Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

[3] Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[4 fol. 86 b]

y-made, habbynge an additamente sumwhat [4]ronnde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest'. And euerye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myghte be þe more strenger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24 **rostralis** to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie haþ in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28 þe othire; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half' a bokett' wiþ þe whiche men drawiþ water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-Ioyned with þe bonys of þe arme. Þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, haþ two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat strecchiþ 32 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde adiutorium is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he haþ in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþere a pyk', and þilke pyk' makyth þe 36 elbowe scharpe, whenne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteþ þat þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.* Þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys be*n* so ioyned togidere, þat it semeþ as þouȝ it were but oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of þese boonys be*n* ioyned *with* þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche be*n* clepid raseeta,[1] þat be*n* .viij. boonys, .iiij. of [2]he*m* ben ordeyned & ioyned *with* su*m*me additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe o*þere* .iiij. ben conteyned[3] *with* þe boonys of þe hand þat ben clepid peeten[4] / þe firste boon of pecten is ioyned *with* þe first boon of raseeta,[5] & þe o*þere* .iij. *in* þe same maner outaken þe þombe. ——[6] þat haþ .iij. boonys as þe o*þere* fyngris han, conteyneþ[3] his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of þe ouer fosile,[7] & þe þombe euenliche aȝenstondiþ þe strenkþe of þe o*þere* fyngris in cliechinge.[8] & alle þese boonys þat meneiou*n* is maad of, þat be*n* *in* ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, be*n* ioyned togidere bi mene of ligamentis, as it is seid tofore / & þese boonys be*n* cloþid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys after þat þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes askiþ /

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the **Rasceta**.

[2 lf. 83, bk.]

The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones.

The thumb has 3 phalanges.

& alle þe greete senewis p*r*oceden out of nucha, þe whiche senewis be*n* conpou*n*ned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makyn*g*e brawnys meuynge þo p*a*rties; of þe whiche brawnys su*m*me be*n* open to a ma*n*nys siȝt, & su*m*me ben hid; for þei ben dep*a*rtid *in* two [9]þe leeste p*a*rties[10] / þ*e*re be*n* .iiij. brawnys ope*n* in þe fleischy p*a*rtie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe y*n*nere half, anoþir on þe vttere half, anoþir on þe lowere half, anoþir on þe hiȝere half. Wha*n*ne þe y*n*nere brawn is drawe togid*e*re þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

The Sinews, Ligaments, and simple flesh form the Muscles.

[9 lf. 84]

The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

[1] *Rasceta.* Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rachette," and Devic Suppl. to *Littré. Dict.*

[3] *conteyned, conteyneþ* for *contynued, contynueþ.*

[4] *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasseta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

[5] MS. *paseeta.*

[6] Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

[7] *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

[8] *in cliechinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmius, et firmius retinens apprehensum.

[10] Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

---

so y-Ioynede togedire, *þat* it semyth as on bon. And þe ne*þere* ende of þese bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ y-clepyde raseeta *þat* **beth viij bonys.**

Here the Add. MS. ends.

the outer extends.

þe vttere half' is maad long'; & whanne þat' þe vttere brawn of' þe[1] arm is maad schort', þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long'; & in þe same maner by[2] oþere .ij. brawnys, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle doun / & whanne þat' alle þe brawnys traueilen 4 liche myche, þe arm stant' euene riȝtliche & declyneþ to no partie /

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm.

& þese brawnys,[3] .iiij fyngir mele from þe ioynture of' þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioynture of' þe elbowe & in þe myddil of' þe adiutorie, þat' is þe place þat' is from þe 8 schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composiciou*n* of' þe same brawnys, .iij. fyngir mele

[[4] lf. 84, bk.]

aboue þe elbowe. & .iij. fyngir mele by[4]neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anoþir[5] brawn; & in þis maner ben 12

N

maad nakid cordis & generaciou*n* of' brawnys, til euery lyme haue his meuynge, after þat' it' nediþ him.

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat' comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled[6] þoruȝ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid 16 veyne þe which wexiþ on þe vttere partie of' þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisynge, anoþir discendynge; þe veyne arisynge

where it divides into 2.

comeþ to þe mydrif'; & sum partie of' hir is sparpoiled[7] þoruȝ þe mydrif' & þe lymes of' þe brest' / þat' oþere partie of' þe veyne passiþ 20 to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat' veyne passiþ byneþe

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica[8] or ellis epatica, & aftirward he streechiþ bi þe neþir partie

in the right hand Salvatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

of' þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche[9] fiyngir, & 24 sche is clepid saluatella[10] or ellis epatica in þe riȝthond, & in þe lifthand splenatica. þe toþir partie of' þis veyne þat' is dyuydid fro þis assellari streechiþ to þe vttere partie of' þe schuldre: & þere is

[1] *brawn*, struck through after *of þe*. [2] MS. *ben*.

[3] *ben*, inserted.

[5] *corde*, cancelled, after *anoþir*.

[6] *ben schorpeled*, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

[7] *is sparpoilid*, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

[8] *Basilica*. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλὲψ βασιλική given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, De febribus, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

[9] *leche fyngir*. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, Leechd., vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

[10] *Salvatella*. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osailemon.

[1 lf. 85]

[1] dyuydid. & þe oon partie goiþ to þe heed & þe oþir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis[2]; & þe oþere partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperiþ bitwene þe fyngir and þe þombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat ben diuided þat comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is cephalica, þe oþere from assillari,[3] þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eiþer purpurea. & þere ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis[4] brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vttere partie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, & basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower partie **& communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca quod idem est** is comun veyne ciþir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperiþ openliche in þe foldynge of þe myddil of þe arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie departingis [5] & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisiþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe in what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lyme bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þerfore in euery place þere þat ben grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs.

[1 lf. 85] 2. the other runs *a.* into the head; *b.* one branch, *funis*, outside the arm; another branch, *Cephalica*, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger. The Basilica with the *Cephalica* form the *Mediana*.

Besides these 4 chief Veins, there are many smaller ones,

[5 lf. 85, bk.] which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,[6] & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe houdis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt awey, wherby þe arme schulde hane his meuynge; & it is perel of kuttynge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myȝte not be staunchid. ¶ And if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

Off perelles off wondes an quuttes,

if an important muscle is cut

or a blood-vessel,

if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

[2] *funis*, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

[3] *Vena ascellaris.* Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

[4] *finis* for *funis*.

[6] *þe arme-pittis.* See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[1 lf. 86] where cramp may arise, especially if it is the tendon of the elbow.

corde þat is in þe [1] ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,[2] þanne it is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deeþ, for þe akynge entriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akynge arisiþ vp to þe brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat a man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer is þe eende of þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þer wole come greet akynge, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal. 4

Treatment: A wound along the arm is not dangerous, and must be sewn.

¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8 þanne it is not so greet drede þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a sirurgian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þis place, & wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert or endelongis. & if þe wounde be endelongis, þanne he schal ioyne þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12 & sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & oþere þingis, as it is aforeseid, for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it is aforeseid in þe wounde of fleisch. ¶ If þer be ony nerues, or arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt [3] ouerþwert: þanne þou schalt worche 16 with þingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from akynge wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene bed. & þou schalt leie aboute þe wounde a defensif of bole & of 20 oile of rosis þat is aforseid / And þouȝ þis defensijf be forȝete in oþere woundis, in þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ Þou schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it is aforseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner 24 wounde of nerues & cordis, & if þe akynge go not awey, þou muste rippe þe sewynge aȝen, & þouȝ þis be contrarie to þe soudynge of þe nerues, ȝitt it is bettere to do[4] þus, þouȝ he lese þe meuynge of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28 for þanne it were drede of deeþ / Þerfore it is necessarie for to opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of ȝelke of an ey. & vpon [5] þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt- 32 ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne regendre fleisch as it is aforseid // If it be so þat þere come ony hoot apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt worche as it is aforseid in a propre chapitre // If it so be, þat þou leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis, & ȝelke of an ey for to do awei þe 36

[3 lf. 86, bk.] staunch the blood, join the nerves or cords and apply a defensive medicine.

If the pains do not cease, open the suture, and fill the wound with oil of roses [5 lf. 87] until pus is discharged.

[2] *thenantos*, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. τένοντες (Suidas Gloss.).

[4] *do* above line.

akynge, & if þere falle a flux of blood, & þanne if þou leidist þerto ony constreyning þingis, þe akynge wolde be þe more, & if þou leidist þerto þe ȝelke of an ey & oile, þat wole make þe flux of blood þe more—In þis caas what is for to done? Þou schalt brenne þe hedis of þe veynes & of þe cordis with an hoot yrn, but þou schalt not touche þe lippis of þe wounde wiþ iren in no maner; & þanne þou schalt leie in the wounde þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis, til al þe rynde of þe brennyng falle awei. & þanne þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt regendre fleisch, and þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes hemorrhage, and styptics pain, then use the Cauterium actuale (red-hot iron).

[1]Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia.

[1 lf. 87, bk.]

¶ V. C°.

THorax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at þe eende is cartilaginosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis maner þat euery leeneþ vpon oþir, & wiþ þese .vij. boonys ben maad fast .vij. ribbis þat ben grete ribbis, & þo .vij. ribbis ben maad fast in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben erokid / Wiþinne[2] þese .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat ben lasse, & ben elepid litil ribbis, & ben maad fast bihynde with .v. boonys of þe rigge, & in þe forside of a man þei haue no fastnynge to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast with lacertis.[3] & bitwixe þe .viij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is maad fast, for to bigynne tellyngis of boonys aboueforþ. & þis diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes þat is aboue liggiþ þe herte & þe lungis /

The Brest has 7 bones with gristly ends, 7 true, 5 false Ribs, and the Diafragma, which divides the Spiritual Members from the guts.

[4 lf. 88]

Þe herte [4]is maad of hard fleisch & strong & of lacertes þat þei miȝte be hard, þat it ne schulde take a grenaunee liȝtli.[5] & þerfore summen seiden þat it is al braun; but it is not so, for þe braun of a man meneþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuynge & not reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangiþ in þe myddil of þe hiȝere holownes, & hangiþ sum-what to þe liftsideward; & þe hiȝere þerof is brood, & þat place is medlid wiþ cartilaginosis ligaturis, & is maad fast in þe lungis[6]; & þe lungis touchiþ not þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it is maad fast togidere,

The heart is made from muscular fibres, is like a pine, is surrounded by Pannicles (Pericardium),

[2] *wiþinne.* The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

[3] *lacertis.* See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204: "Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

[6] *lungis*, a mistranslation of *panniculi.* The pericardium is also called panniculus cordis.

and has ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuaunce. & þe herte haþ two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wiþinne, & þat oon ventricle sittiþ in þe riȝtside of þe herte, & þat oþer in þe liftside[1]; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischiþ þe herte / In þe riȝt ventricle comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa[2] þat comeþ from gibbo[3] epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet [4]norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischiþ lymes of greet substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝtside of þe herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norisching blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutilliþ[5] & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynyng & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iiij. elementis. & þerfore it is turnid[6] into heuenly bodies, & it is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe lift ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries][7] and þat oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.[8] & þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe luugis & norischiþ þe lungis / And þat oþere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke[9] comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makiþ alle a mannis lymes to haue lift & spiritis; & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn [10]& þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makiþ defiynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.[11]

Into the right one comes a Vein from the liver,

[4 lf. 88, bk.]

and fills the Heart with nourishing blood,

which is refined into a clear spirit between body and soul.

From the left Ventricle springs arteria venalis

and the Aorta from which all other Arteries proceed.

[10 lf. 89]

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouea: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

[2] The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena *ex ramosa vena*." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele. or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomie*, page 78.—1565.

[3] *gibbus*. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. [5] *sutilliþ*. Latin: subtiliatur

[6] MS. *turid*. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

[7] *arteries*, wanting. [8] *Arteria venalis*. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

[9] MS. inserts, *ij cootis*

[11] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, eum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

¶ þe lungis ben maad of .iij. substanncis: of fleisch þat is recchinge,[1] & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,[2] & of cartilaginis þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is aforeseid. ¶ þe profit þat þe lungis doiþ a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of þe herte, & makiþ þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir to þe herte; & if þe lungis myȝte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / & perfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ þoruȝ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & perfore vnclene eir doiþ harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & perfore þe lungis ben [3]departid into .ij. placis, & if per falle ony harm to þe oon partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie beriþ al his charge //

þe lungs are made of 3 tissues, flesh, vessels, and ligaments.

They bring cool air to the heart.

The air ought to be clean.

[3 lf. 89, bk.]

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe holownes, þanne it is miche to drede perof, for þanne it mizte falle þat sum substaunce of þe herte mizte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde were mortal // ¶ Ouper if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, pere were greet perel: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid anoon // ¶ And if þe wounde go þoruȝ diafragma, it is mortal / And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, pere lijþ no[4] cure peron, saue he schal die anoon; for þe herte takiþ no lijf of no lyme of al þe bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lynes to euery lyme of þe bodi; & þe herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf; & perfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouper sorowe / perfore if þe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouper ony greet arterie þat is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte [5]& þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passiþ out bi þe arterijs, as þou myȝt se bi ensaumple of a candel. For if a candel þat brenneþ, ouper a weke, be putt al in oile ouper in grese, þe fier perof wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat falliþ to þe herte & stoppiþ þe spirit of lijf / Ouper if per be greet flux of blood comynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passiþ out perwiþ; as þou miȝt se bi ensaumple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon, or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt wole passe, & in þe same maner it

Wondis mad in the brest

Wounds of the lungs are dangerous,

wounds of the midriff, or the heart are mortal.

When the heart, the well of life, is hurt,

[5 lf. 89*]

either the blood rushing to the heart quenches the flame of life,

or the blood and the spirit of life flow out from the wound.

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur. [1] *recchinge.* Latin: rara.

[2] *braunche of arteriis & of veynes.* Latin: ramis arteriæ venalis.

[4] MS. *do.* Lat.: Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

fariþ bi a man*n*is lijf', as it' is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding' whanne þei be*n* hurt', but' if þe leche be þe more ku*n*nyng' & soude þe wou*n*de or it' quytture. For if' it' qutt*ur*e, þe lungis mou*n* not' be m*aa*d clene but' wiþ cowȝyng', & þe more þ*at*' þe pacie*n*t cowȝeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis be*n* euermore meuynge; & [if] wou*n*dis[1] schule*n* be soudid i*n* lymes, þe lyme [2]mote reste; & þ*er*fore for þe contynuel meuynge of' þe lungis, þe woundis þ*er*of' be*n* seid incurable // ¶ Also þouȝ a man wolde soude þe woundis of' þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat' is consolidatif', it' ne mai not' come þ*er*to but' bi a long' wey as bi þe stomak, onþ*er* bi þe lyu*er*e, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe v*er*tu of' þe medicyne ne may not' come to þe lu*n*gs, but' bi þe forseid weies; & þ*er*fore me*n* þ*at*' ben hurt' in þe lungis falliþ i*n* þe tisik[3] / ¶ If' a man be hurt' in diafragma, þ*er* is no remedie þ*er*of'; for diafragma is alwei meuynge, for þ*at*' is an instrum*en*t' of' wijnd to the herte, riȝt' as a belowe is an instrument' for a fier / For riȝt' as a below, whanne he is opened, he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out' wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

[2 lf. 89*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if þe herte be wonded,

¶ If' þe herte be woundid, i*n* þis man*er* þou schalt' knowe: þe pacient' schal swowne, & þe blood þat' comeþ out' is blak, & he schal siȝe sore, & þanne he is but' deed //

[4 lf. 90]

and if þe lungs be wonded.

¶ If' þe lungis ben hurt', þ*o*u schalt' [4]knowe i*n* þis maner bi cowȝynge, & þe blood þat' goiþ out' of' þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If' þe wou*n*de h*er*eof' be streit' wiþoutforþ, make it' larg*er*e, & þanne in þe wounde of' þe lu*n*gis caste poudre of' mastix, & olibani,[5] dragan*t*i, gu*m*me arabici, fenigreci an*a*; & he schal ete no mete saue þ*at*', þ*at*' he mai soupe, & penidis[6] medlid þ*er*on, & loke þ*at*' he haue scielence & good reste, & þ*at*' he tr*a*uaile not'; & þou schalt' not' close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wou*n*de of' þe lu*n*gis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wou*n*de wiþoutforþ //

Throw a powder into the wound, and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnere dia diafragma.

¶ If' þat' a wounde be i*n* diafragma, þes ben þe signys þ*er*of': streit' seechinge of' breeþ, & greet' agreuau*n*ce for to d*ra*we his breeþ, & greet' akynge i*n* his side, & greuous cowȝyngs; alle þese ben signys of' deeþ, & principali if' þese signys be greet' & greuous /

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

[1] *þat* inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

[3] "*Tisica*, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "*Tissick*, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "*þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik*," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

[5] *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

[6] *Penidium*, barley sugar.

If' þese signys ben but' litil & not' strong' greuous, þanne ȝeue him metis & drynkis þat' mowe swage[1] þe cowȝe, & þanne take a tent' þat' be not' to greet', & wete it' in þe ȝelke of' [2]an ey & oile of' rosis, [2 lf. 90, bk.]
4 & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist' opere woundis /

Allay the coughing and apply a tent.

If' it' so be þat' a wounde be in a caua[3] & noon of' þe forseid lymes ben not' hurt', þanne wete a tent' in oile of' rosis hoot' & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest' þi medicyne ouþer leist'
8 þerto ony medicyne, be war þat' þer passe out' noon eir þoruȝ þe wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou chaunge þi tent', loke þat' þou haue þingis þat' ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat' þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat' þere go no breeþ
12 into þe wounde, ne out' of' þe wounde / For if' þer go ony breþ out', it' wole afeble þe patient, & if' þer go ony breeþ þere, it' wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of' rosis & þe ȝelke of' an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent' til þe wounde quytture. & þanne
16 euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowȝe & spitte out' þe quytture, & avoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if' þere be mycke quytture, & may not' be avoidid bi þe wounde, þanne þou schalt' make sich a maner waischinge & putte it' yn wiþ [4 lf. 91]
20 [4]an instrument' maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. ℥ iiij., mirre, R
fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ʒ ß, boile hem to þe consumpcioun of' þe .iij. part' in lī j. of' swete wijn, & lī j. of' water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it' is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde
24 wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þat' it' quytturiþ, leie þis mundificatif' planed vpon a clooþ.[5] R mel ro. lī j., farina ordei substillissimi. ℥ R
iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ʒ j., be þei encorperat'[6] & boilid at' esi fier / & whanne þei ben weel boilid, & weel medlid togidere so þat'
28 it' be þicke, do hem doun of' þe fier, & do þerto ʒ .iij. of' terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. Þis emplastre þou schalt' vse, & þe waischingis þat' is aforseid, & þou schalt' holde open þe wounde with a tent' wet' in oile, til þe quytture þat' is withynne be
32 perfitli dried / Þis þou schalt' knowe bi þe vertu of' þe patient & bi þe sauour of' his breeþ, & whanne his cowȝynge goiþ awei, & whanne

If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest

Beware that no air passes through the wound.

Make the patient cough out the pus.

A loscion for wondis within the brest

A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.

One knows by the odour of the patient's breath

[1] *swage.* See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

[3] MS. *canna.* Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. cassus adj. void, hollow, and cassum, i = cassa, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form cassa gave origin to Ital. cassa f. See cassa del cranio, etc.

[5] &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. planer, Lat. planare.

[6] *encorperat.* Lat. incorporatus, O.Fr. encorperer.

if the wound is clean.

his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him þat ben aforseid, & þe quytture [1] be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his cowȝynge & his akynge be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his spirit be nouȝt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it so be þat he haue þe cowȝe & greet quytture in þe wounde, & he be strong, & prineipali if þer wexe ony swellyng in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib, þan þere þou schalt make a newe kuttyng & lete out þe quytture, & bi þis place drawe out þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open, & lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it be nede, caste yn þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ ofte tyme þat a man is hurt an hiȝ aboue in þis place, & þanne þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere, þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it is aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no eours to þe wounde aboue; & if he is kutt so bynepe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture mai be drawe awey; [2] & if þou doist not þus þe pacient schal die, & if þou doist þus þe pacient schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne woundis ben in thorase ouþer in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon not þoruȝ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it is aforseid in oþere woundis //

[1 lf. 91, bk.]

When suppuration continues, a weak patient dies.

If the patient is strong, make a new incision.

Do the same, if blood and pus gather on the midriff.

[2 lf. 92]

Of woundis of þornis[3] ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat ben conteyned in him & anothamie /[4]

¶ vj? c° /

The spinal column is composed of 30 Spondles or Vertebræ.

BOnys of þe neeke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij, & rigge boonys of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, & vndir þe reynes ben .iij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid[5] —þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. ¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruȝ, & þoruȝ þe ilke hoolis nucha[6] goiþ endelong þe rigge; & euery boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij. addieiouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle to a sirurgian, saue it is neeessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis:

[3] MS. *þorais*. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed *þornis*, the translation of 'spinæ,' into *þorais*, for *thoracis*, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *& of þo þat ben conteyned in him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

[4] See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

[5] One word is here wanting. Lat.: super loeum qui dieitur aboratur alahume. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum. [6] *nucha*, Arab. nukha', spinal marrow.

þat euery rig-boon haþ a greet hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoruȝ. & þer ben opere smale hoolis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & þere þoruȝ goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste [1]togidere. & so þese .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben so strongeli bounden togidere þat þei semeþ al oon boon. Þese boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ouþer spina, & þis is þe foundement of al þe bodi //

Through the Vertebræ passes the Spinal cord. [1 lf. 92, bk.]

The Spondles form the Back-bone.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þis place. If nucha be kutt þoruȝ ouerþwert, þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha þat comeþ fro þe brayn riȝt as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.[2] ¶ And þouȝ nucha be not kutt al þoruȝ saue hurt, it is greet perel þerof, for þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuynge, for þe nerues þat ben aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt. & also þe rigge-boones ben kutt & herof cometh greet perel / And if þe braun þat sittiþ endelongis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & duriþ[3] from þe heed adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if ony of alle þese be kutt ouþer prickid, it is greet perel for þe spasme, for þe causis þat ben aforseid /

The Prognosis is unfavourable, if the Spinal Cord is cut,

or the Spondles, or the Muscles along the Spine are severally injured.

Þe curis herof ben lijk to þe curis þat ben aforseid of opere woundis, saue it is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis of þis [4]place, & also if a man be hurt in þat place, he mote haue for þe causis aforseid //

The Treatment is the same as in other wounds. [4 lf. 93]

Of woundis of þe stomac / & intestinum & wombe, & anothamia /

¶ vijo. co.

I Haue seid heretofore in what maner mery[5] goiþ doun þoruȝ þe necke wiþinneforþ, and goiþ þoruȝ diafragma, & is maad fast with diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe mouþ of þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,[6] & in oon side he is gibbous, & in þe toþer side he is more playn. & þe stomac is maad of .ij. cloþis. & þat oon cloop sitt wiþoute & þat oþer wiþinne, & þe cloop þat sittiþ wiþinne is villosus & neruous, & þe cloop þat is wiþoutforþ is fleischi / ¶ In þe ynner cloop ben longe villis wherof comeþ drawynge, & þere ben villis ouerþwert, wherof

The stomach is made of 2 Membranes

with longitudinal and transverse fibres.

[2] Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2. "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluuius magnus ab eo manans."

[3] *duriþ*. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

[5] *mery*, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

[6] In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wiþholdyng / In þe cloop þat is wiþoutforþ, *þere* ben longe villis, & þat makiþ expulcioun. Þe y*n*ner cloop is neruous, þat it mowe fele wha*n*ne it is ful; wiþoutforþ it is fleischi for to make hi*m* hoot & moist, þat he mi3te helpe for to make digestiou*n*. 4 Þat skyn þat is wiþi*n*ne þe stomak is norischid *with* moisture of mete [1] þat is resseyued i*n*to þe stomac / The skyn þat is wiþoute þe stomac is norischid of blood, þat comeþ fro þe lyuere i*n* smale veynes & goiþ al aboute þe stomac. ¶ Also *þere* comeþ arterijs 8 from þe herte to þe stomak & makiþ hi*m* to haue lijf, & of þese .ij. þi*n*gis, þat is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus[2] is m*aad* þat gouerneþ þe stomac & þe guttis wiþ his fatnes, & makiþ he*m* hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomak *þere* is a mouþ, and þat mouþ is more 12 streit þan þat aboue. & þe firste gutt is m*aad* fast to þe low*er* mouþ, & þis gutt is clepid duodenu*m*.[3] Þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of xij. ynchis; & þa*n*ne *þere* ben .vj. guttis bineþe hi*m*; & þa*n*ne þis firste gutt is m*aad* of .ij. cootis, 16 as alle þe o*pere* guttis ben, but þe .ij. gutt is smal & folde togidere. Þe .iij. gutt is clepid ieiunu*m*,[4] *id est*, fastynge, for he is eu*er*more voide,[5] & þat is for he is ny3 þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre[6] for to avoide hi*m*, & *þere* goiþ to him manye veynes, wherbi he is 20 voidid / Aftir hi*m* *þere* comeþ a gutt þat is clepid orobu*m*[7] [8]ou*þer* a sak, & it haþ but oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & *þere* is fulfillid þe firste digestiou*n* of þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt *þer* is a gutt þat is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert þe wombe & resseyueþ 24 fec*es* / And aftir þis gutt comeþ langaon,[9] & is þe eende of alle; & he haþ .iiij. brawnys, & *þe*rof he haþ v*er*tu for to wiþholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte he*m* out wha*n*ne a ma*n* wole / Euery meuynge of þe guttis is kindely & eueri gutt of þese þat be*n* 28 aforseid haþ diuers kynde // ¶ Þer be*n* manye ma*ner* causis whi þat guttis be*n* folde w*ith* nerues: þe firste enchesou*n* is þis, þat a man schulde not as soone as he hadde ete, anoon ri3t go to sege as

[1 lf. 93, bk.]

Arteries bring life to the Stomach.

The Entrails or Guts: duodenu*m*.

Ieiunu*m*.

Orobu*m*, [8 lf. 94]

where the first digestion is made

Colon.

langaon.

retains and finally evacuates the faeces.

The entrails are nervous .1. that the food may be retained

[2] *gibbus*, mistake for *3irbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64. note 2; and page 86, note.

[3] *duodenum*. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

[4] *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

[5] Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieiunum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

[6] *colre*. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

[7] *orobum*. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

[9] *langaon*. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

doiþ a beest'. þe .ij. cause is þat' þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak for to make digestion, & þat' þat' is not' fulfillid in þe stomak is fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iij. cause is þis, þat' it' first' abide in oon gutt' / & þanne it' is sent' to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat' is elepid þe siphac[1]; & is a syngle skyn & is not' [2]villous, & is engendrid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it' is aforeseid, & is maad fast' at' þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of' siphac ij. þingis þat' ben clepid dindimi[3] & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat' ynner skyn of' þe ballokis; & þoruȝ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs & veynes to þe ballokis, & makiþ hem haue lijf' & norischinge & kynde of' sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in a skyn þat' is fleischi & of' lacertis maad, & is clepid mirae, & is elepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out' þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /

.2. and digested in the stomach

.3. and the guts.

[2 lf. 94, bk.]

Siphac (Great Omentum):

it is continuous in its lower part with the dindimi (Tunica vaginalis).

ciffac is þe inar sken,

mirac the vtter. (Peritoneum)

þerfore woundis þat' ben maad in þe stomac ben perilous, & in þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worehinge is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument' of' digestioun, & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat' it' mai in no maner be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if' þere be ony woundis in þis place her wor'chinge is lost', but' if' þe wounde be soudid anoon; & þat' is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous, & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuynge, & principali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of' þe stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if' þe woundis falle in þe neþir partie of' þe stomac þat' is fleischi, ouþer in þe greete guttis bineþe, if' þe leche be kunnynge, þe pacient' mai lyue /

Wounds of the stomach and the bowels are dangerous, as their functional activity is necessary.

[4 lf. 95]

The patient may recover if the fleshy part of the stomach or guts is wounded. Nota.

¶ If' it' bifalle þat' a man be hurt' in ony of' þese placis þat' ben aforseid in þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe wheþer þe substaunce of' þe guttis or of' þe stomak be prickid þoruȝ or no; þat' þou miȝt' knowe bi þe goyng' out' of' þe fecis at' þe wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If' a man be woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of' þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne be not' brood, þanne kutte it' more & þanne sewe the wounde of' þe stomak wiþ a nedele þat' is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou schalt' speciali, whanne þe wounde is in [5]a fleischi place of' þe stomak,

A wound which perforates the entrails is mortal.

Sew the wound in the stomach,

[5 lf. 95, bk.]

[1] *siphac.* See *Vicary*, page 62, note 4.
[3] *dindimi*, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat is neruous, ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it is an idil / Whanne þou hast sewid þe wounde binepe as it is aforseid, þanne springe þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde 4 open þe wounde of þe skyn wiþoute, til þe wonnde of þe stomak be hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in þe greete guttis binepe, so þat þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, & þe eendis of þe predis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal 8 be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat þe wounde of his wombe wiþoutforþ be so brood þat þe guttis falle out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat þe guttis be colde, or þat þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe 12 be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wiþ þe eir, wherfore þe guttis wolen not in aȝen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe wombe a litil more, þat þe guttis [1] mowe liȝtly falle yn aȝen wiþoute greuaunce. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in 16 þis maner togidere, so þat þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat þe wounde were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.[2] Þerfore þou must sewe in þis maner / Take þat oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so 20 þat þei be euene, & loke þat þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make oon poynt þoruȝ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, & þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist necessarie / And whanne þou hast sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a 24 good maner, þanne knytte þe predis togidere þat þei vnknytte not, as þou seest þat is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe predis hange out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wiþoutforþ til mirac & siphac 28 be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ [3] no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch, & bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof aftir as it is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat þe smale guttis moun 32 be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wiþinne þe gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt per vpon. & I seie þat it is not sooþ, for þis þing, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis þis queyntise is nouȝt; þerfore triste to þe maner þat is aforseid, 36 & take kepe of þe perels þat ben forseid.

and keep the external wound patent while the stomach heals.

When the bowels fall out from the wound, replace them,

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.

sew the Siphac and Mirac together,

and keep the external woundpatent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some physicians put a reed-pipe into the wounded intestine before sewing it.

[2] *crepature*, hernia.

Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe bladdre, and anothamia[1] /

The firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ben þe oþere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe substaunce þerof is fleischi, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne, & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to ȝeue him norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wiþoute, & wiþinne holow þat it miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe [2]lyuere makiþ þe stomac to seþe as fier makiþ a furneis to seþe.[3] ¶ The lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iij. Of sperme þe mater of þe lyuere wiþinne is gaderid. & þerof coueþ a greet veyne & is engendrid in sima[4] epatis, & is clepid þe ȝate of þe lyuere. & of þis veyne summen seien þat þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & summen seien þat þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben ȝatis riȝt as rootis of a tree.[5] & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese veynes ben maad fast wiþ þe botme of þe stomac, & wiþ a gutt þat is clepid duodeno, & summe wiþ þe smale guttis, & summe wiþ þe gutt þat is clepid ieiunum, & summe wiþ orobo ouþir wiþ þe sak //

¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝtside of þe stomac, & in þe liftside of þe stomac sitt þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat oon pore he drawiþ malancolious blood of [6]þe lyuere, & clensiþ þe lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid. & þere is anoþer pore þat goiþ to þe mouþ of þe stomac, & makiþ þe mouþ of þe stomac to haue appetite[7] //

¶ viij. C•

The Liver is made of blood.

[2 lf. 97]

The Liver is to the Stomach, what fire is to a furnace.

lyuer.

From the spermatic part of the Liver comes the Vena Porta.

The Mesenteric veins are branches of the Vena Porta.

The Spleen draws the Melancholic Blood from the Liver,

[6 lf. 97, bk.]

and incites Appetite in the Stomach.

[1] See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

[3] "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

[4] *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. σιμός, ή, όν, hollow, concave: τὰ σιμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to κυρτὸς, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauc. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyner is as it were þe palme oþer þe holwenesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oþer schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oþer leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appnll, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

[5] Lat.: venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori.

[7] *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 *b*: "*& Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap* þer*of is*

The Reynes

þe reynes ben set', þat' oon in þe riȝtside & sittiþ hiȝere, & þat' oon in þe liftside & sit' lowere, & ben maad of' hard fleisch, & ben sett' in two sidis of' þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat' oon is aboue, & þat' oþere is bineþe. þoruȝ 4

draw watery blood from the vena ramosa, and transmit urine to the

þe necke aboue of' þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from vena ramosa[1]; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it' goiþ to þe necke of' þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat' is clepid kylym,[2] & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre / 8

bladdre via the ureters.

þe bladdre is maad of' .ij. þinne skynnes, & boþe skynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of' þe bladdre is fleischi. In men þe necke is

The Bladder has a neck, longer in men than in women.

long', for it' passiþ þoruȝout' þe ȝerde, & in wymmen þe necke of' þe bladdre is schort', & is maad fast' to the cunte.[3] / þe necke of' þe 12 bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of' þe bladdre [4]& þat' makiþ a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte out' his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of' þe wombe þat' pressiþ, & of'

galle.

lacertis // ¶ Of' þe galle we makiþ noon anothamie, for al oure 16 seienee makiþ noon meneioun of' a wounde in þe galle /

¶ Woundis þat' ben maad in þe lymes aforeseid ben enermore perilous / For alle þese lymes, ouþir þei ben prineipal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei serueþ prineipal lymes, wiþoute whiehe lymes þe 20

Only small and recent wounds of the Liver can be healed.

bodi ne mai not' be susteyned / If' þe lyuere be hurt' in þe depe substaunee, þanne þe lyuere schal lese al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof' wole be disturblid þat' is matere of' þe spirit', & in þis maner þe spirit' of' lijf' is disturblid & þe foundement of' alle hise vertues; 24 saue if' þe wounde of' þe lyuere be but' litil it' may be soudid, so þat' þe wounde be freisch & not' oold hurt', forwhi a principal lyme

Even severe wounds of the splene can be cured.

mai not' suffre longe sijknes // ¶ þouȝ a man were hurt' in þe splene, ȝitt' he miȝte be wel eurid, & þouȝ þere were a gobet' þerof' kutt' 28 awey, so þat' it' ne were not' to myelie and ouer[5]þwert', for þerof' ofte tyme falliþ þe dropesie; ouþir if' þe poris were kutt', it' wolde afeble þe stomae. ¶ Woundis þat' ben in þe reynes ben not' curid,

[4 If. 98]

[5 If. 98, bk.]

euelong, and is somwhat holouȝ toward þe stomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þese tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn smale cloþinge, & me seiþ þat þe melte haþ tweye veynes, by þe on þerof he drawiþ blak colera of þe blod to þe lyuour, & by þe oþir he sendiþ what sufficeþ to þe stomak to comforte þe appetite þerof."

[1] *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

[2] Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinarii = Ureter. *Kylym*, from χυλός, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

[3] 'Hec vulva, *cunte*." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. cunne, Lat. cunnus, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat is *contra*rious to soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in menynge, & also vryne þat alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruȝ þe reynes. ¶ Þe bladdre ne mai not be soudid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat is neruous & haþ no fleisch, & is alwei menynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe vryne fretiþ & þat lettiþ þe soudinge / For ypocras seiþ / If þe bladdre be kutt, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a man þat is woundid in ony of þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng man, he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe perel þerof, he schal telle þe perel of þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal seie to þe man þat is hurt þat he schal ascape & fare weel ; and first he schal make him haue hise riȝtis[1] [2]of holy chirche, & lete him make his testament, or þat his vertu faile / þanne he schal bigynne wiþ his good worchinge, riȝt as he took no drede þerof / for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat þat semeþ vnpossible to þe leche, & principali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouȝ þe leche se goode signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticacioun as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deeþ, his passioun wole aswage ; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouȝ þe pacient haue greet peyne & þe signes of deeþ, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for þese perels þat ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakynge & of biheest // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis þat ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat ben longe for to make ony perfeccioun þerof, & he mote be war þat faire biheste, ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not /

Wounds of the kidney and bladder are incurable, as ypocras says.

The physician shall warn the patient's friends, but cheer the patient, [2 lf. 99] and advise him to arrange his spiritual and temporal affairs.

nota.

The physician must never despair, and always remember his first prognosis.

He must be cautious in a foreign country.

[3]Of woundis of þe ȝerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun of þe bladdre and anothamia.[4]

[3 lf. 99, bk.]

¶ ix. Co

GOd almyȝti þat alle þingis knewe tofore þe makyng of þe world ouþir of man, he knewe þat a man schulde be maad of moist substaunce, as of sperme, in which natural hete schal worche.[5] & for to resseyue þe mater of sperme, it is necessarie þat

Man's generative organs.

[1] Lat. : primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

[4] Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

[5] Compare *Auicenna*. Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279: "Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

It is natural to desire copulation.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & ȝaf hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he ȝaf a man greet delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat a man schulde not haue abhominacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it with greet will & wiþ greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite[1] / 4

The Yard has a Glans and Prepuce.

¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a ȝerde. & in þe bigynnynge þerof ben eartilaginis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rigboon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arterys, & is summwhat holow, 8 þat he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepucium. & þe meuynge of þat skyn [2]& of þe fleiseh tofore helpiþ for to putte out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes ȝerde comeþ of a mannes 12 herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnynge, & greet desier; & watri humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruȝ þat oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruȝ þat oþir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16 good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat þere is þe .iij. hole, & þoruȝ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man feliþ not, as whanne he halsiþ a womman wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not knowen of a eirurgian[3] // 20

[2 lf. 100]

Erection is caused by man's passion.

The yard has two passages, *a.* for urine, *b.* for sperm;

Auicen mentions a 3rd one.

The structure of the Testicles.

They make sperm of the purest blood.

[4 lf. 100, bk.]

The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens).

þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleiseh in þe maner as ben wommans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makiþ hem haue lijf & norisehinge. & superfluite of good blood & clene 24 comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis, & þere it bicomeþ whiȝt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicomeþ [4]mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe ȝerde, & ben elepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48, Add. 27,944. fol. 60 *b*: "*For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccioun of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat euerichc beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest ȝif þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost.*" This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

[3] *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

barbachi,[1] & of þese vessels comeþ sperme into þe ȝerde, & þoruȝ þe ȝerde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof comeþ of þe ballokis ; & to þe ballokis as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruȝ dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siphac as it is aforseid //

Auicen calls them Barbachi.

¶ Þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a ȝerde þat were turned aȝenheer.[2] & þe necke of þe maris is fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring, & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir maydenhode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke, & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese [3] vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseyuynge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes / And þe maris of a womman haþ wiþinne .ij. grete concauitees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruȝ þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseyued, comeþ blood to[4] þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoruȝ þe same veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrue & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood ; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hiȝere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child beryngе þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme[5] *—— /

Female generative organs.

The Matrix has two ballocks (Ovaries), and two spermatic ducts (Fallopian Tubes).

[3 lf. 101]

The Embryo is nourished by blood from the liver.

Menstruation removes superfluous blood.

If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worchinge.

Wounds of generative organs are dangerous.

¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his ȝerde or ouerþwert in a litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuis, & lete him blood, & diete him with þinne [6]mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence // ¶ If it so be þat a mannes ȝerde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for þe veynes þat comeþ þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Treatment of a wounded yard.

[6 lf. 101, bk.]

If the yard is cut away, death from hæmorrhage may ensue.

[1] *barbachi*, Arab. *bárbah*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

[2] Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Avic.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 *b*: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

[4] *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

[5] Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.

in þis cas þou schalt' take hede for to do awei þe akynge wiþ oile of' rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of' þe ȝerde, & brenne þe ȝerde wiþ an hoot' irn for to constreyne þe flux of' blood; for a cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat' ben in 4 þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þouȝ a man be not' in perel of' deep þoruȝ þe hurtyng' of' hem, ȝitt' his generacioun is lore / A wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in oþere place of' þe bodi, & þe cure schal not' be chaungid þerof' // ¶ If' 8 it' so be þat' a womman be hurt' in her marijs wiþ a swerd, ouþir wiþ a knyf', ouþer wiþ a dart', þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If' it' bifalle þat' colon[1] be hurt' wiþ sum scharp þing' ouþir wiþ hardnes of' humouris, he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting' 12 [2]of' vnguentum album rasis of' ceruse distemprid wiþ ius of' arnoglossa.[3] & if' it' so be þat' þe wounde of' þis place be olde, þanne it' is for to make a mundificatif' þerto, wiþ castynge yn of' gotis whay ouþir watir of' barly // 16

Wounds of the Testicles cause Impotence.

Wounds of the Matrix are mortal.

Treatment of wounded Colon.

[2 lf. 102]

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee, and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ xo. co/ The Haunch-bones

BOnys of' haunchis ben maad fast' wiþ þe latter boon of' þe rigboon / & riȝt' as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, 20 so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast' to him / þese boones ben cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more greet'; & eueri of' hem haþ a box þat' is clepid pixis haunche & vertebrum sit' þeron.[4] & þat' is þe eende of' þe hipe boon. & wiþ 24 this boon is maad fast' þat' boon þat' goiþ ouerþwert' vndir þe ars aboue þe ȝerde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it' is seid al oon. & þe place of' þe coniuncioun of' þese boones is clepid þe scie.[5] & sumtyme þese boones 28 goon out' of' þe ioynt, as þou schalt' haue a perfit' teching' [6]herof' in þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapiter of' dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it' is

have each a box (acetabulum) which contains the head of the thigh-bone.

[6 lf. 102, bk.]

The thigh-bone

[1] Lat. Se si *collo* vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

[3] *arnoglossum.* Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plauntein," O.E. *weghrade*, waybread.

[4] Sloane 2463, fol. 42 *b*: "*þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in þe vtter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holewnesse, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þiȝes ben receyved inne.*"

[5] *scie*, Med. Lat. scia, from *ἰσχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (XV. cent.), "*Scia* an^ee the whyrlebon."

aforseid, is maad fast' aboue wiþ ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it' is a greet' boon & miche holow wiþinne, & is ful of' marow ; & it' is greet', for it' schulde be strong' ; & it' is holow, for it' schulde be
4 liȝt'. & þis boon is maad fast' in þe knee, & þere þe boon of' þe hipe & þe boon of' þe leg' ben ioyned togidere in a box as it' is aforseid. & þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis & senewis, & vpon þe ioynt' of' þese boones & for to kepe þis ioynture from harm, is
8 ioyned þeron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of' summen it' is clepid þe yȝe of' þe knee, & alle þese boones ben bounden togidere wiþ strong' ligaturis // ¶ Vndir þe round boon of' þe knee ben ordeyned .ij. boones in þe leg', & þat' oon þerof' is grettere & sittiþ tofore in
12 þe leg', & þe toþer is smaller & sittiþ bihynde in þe leg'. & in þe neþer partie þei ben maad fast' wiþ þe boon of' calcanei þat' susteyneþ alle þe boones, & with alkarad,[1] & þat' is a boon þat' fulfilliþ þe ioynture & is [2]ioyned wiþ þe boon þat' is clepid nauicula /
16 ¶ Racheta[3] of' þe foot' is maad of' iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wiþ ligaturis. & wiþ þese boonys ben maad fast' þe bonys of' þe toos þat' ben .xiiij., for eueri boon haþ .iij. boones, saue þe boon of' þe grete too, & þat' haþ but' .ij. boones / to alle þese boones
20 comeþ nerues fro þe riggeboones—& wiþ þese nerues, & with þese ligaturis, & wiþ symple fleisch þese boones ben maad fast' togidere —& ȝeueþ to þese lymes meuynge & felynge. & þer ben greete brawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of' grete
24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle þe leggis & to þe feet' / & summe of' þese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of' þe lyuer, þat' is clepid vena ramosa as it' is aforseid in armys. & þerfore þese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne þei ben woundid, for þe perels þat'
28 ben aforseid. & þese veynes ben departid in þe foot', & .ij. þerof' ben in þe holow of' þe foot' wiþoutforþ, & þat' oon veyne þerof' is clepid sciatica, & þat oþere is clepid renalis, [4]& þis is þus miche to seie : þat' oon veyne serueþ for þe seie, & þat' oþer for þe reynes /
32 þanne þer ben ij. oþer veynes in þe holow of' þe foot' withinne, & þat' oon is clepid sophena, & þat' oþer is clepid vena ventris, *id est* a veyne of' þe wombe. ¶ þe veyne þat' is clepid renalis scheweth it-silf' bitwixe þe lift' too & þat' oþer too next, & þe blood-letyng'
36 of' þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena þat' ben in

is hollow and

is joined with the leg-bone in the knee.

Rotula.

The two bones of the leg

articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.

[2 lf. 103]

Nauicula.

The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.

The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.

The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the

Sciatica and the Renalis.

[4 lf. 103, bk.]

Saphena. Vena ventris.

[1] *alkarad*, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

[3] *Racheta*, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal[1], & for varices & for vlcera þat ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myȝt wel se, þat woundis þat be maad in þese placis ouerþwert ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting of nerues & of cordis & braun, & of veynes & of arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it is aforseid //

Treatment of such wounds.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þes placis þat ben curable, schulen be curid in þe same maner as it is aforseid in curis of armys & of hondis / Saue of o þing þou schalt take kepe, þat woundis þat ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe [2]nobilte of þe place & for þe causis þat ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor woundis þat ben in þese placis þat ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of woundis þat ben mortal as it is aforseid //

[2 lf. 104]

¶ The techinge of þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruȝ þe help of god, & now schal bigynne þe techinge of þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /[3]

the þerd book conteynes viij. c.[4]

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ i°. c° /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //[5]

HEeris ben engendrid of greet fume & of viscous mater, & þe more hoot þat a man is, þe more heer he schal haue[6] / & þer falliþ manie amendementis of heeris.[7] ¶ First we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of oþere sijknessis þat falliþ in placis of heeris.

[1] *for a mormal*, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

[3] Inserted by the translator: the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 *b*: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

[4] The marginal note ought to be: *þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.*

[5] A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor. VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor. V. 1.").

[6] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "*And here is i-bred and comeþ out of fumosite hoot & drie.*" Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

[7] Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of bletarum[1] & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anoynte with comoun oile. A wash to make the hair grow long.

4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris ȝelow, þou schalt do in þis maner. R. mirre ℥ iiij., lupinorum amarorum ʒ vj., [2]flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana ʒ .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem wiþ lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anoynte þe heeris aftir þe 8 tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wiþ þe forseid lye // An ointment to dye the hair yellow. R [2 lf. 104, bk.]

¶ If þou wolt make hem blac[3] R stercus irundinum, & enulam siccam, & orobum,[4] semen raphani & sulphurus, & florem capillaris[5] succus, grinde alle þese wiþ a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe & 12 temperе hem wiþ vinegre, & herwith anoynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie[6] hem wiþ sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anoynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid in oile r'ȝt as me makiþ oile of rosis. R An ointment to dye the hair white.

16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ȝeue þe pacient good mete, & anoynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anoynte herwith ofte / & anoynte it with muscillage seminis lini & psillij[7] // A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.

20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R farinam fenigreci, & mirre, & semen raphani gallarum, gummi arabici, calcis abluti, & wynde alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei [8]wolen bicome crisp. R An ointment to make the hair crisp. [8 lf. 105]

¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R 24 ladani[9] .℥ j, & resolue it in ℥ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwiþ anoynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro hoornes so þat þei bicome not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet 28 studijnge,[10] & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte An ointment to keep the hair from falling off. R Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.

[1] *bleta*, Alphita, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, atriplex agrestis uel domestica." [3] *blac*, O.E. blâe, albus.

[4] Lat.: orobum, qui appellatur in gallico uicia.

[5] Lat. florum cappa.; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Caper 1.

[6] *fumie*, Lat. suffumigare. Compare *Macer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon.*"

[7] *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psilliun*, i. lusesed." Cooper, "psyllion, the herb called fleawort."

[9] *Ladanum*, Landanum, Labdanum. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

[10] *fro greet studijnge*, Lat. a fastidio. The correct explanation is given in De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27,944. fol. 91b: "*And fastidium is ruskilful abhominaciouu & wlatsomnes of mete & drinke and most grenеþ þe rertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makinge noye & disese. for a man þat haþ abhominaciouu haþ noye and disese in þing þat anothir haþ solas in & lykinge.*"

purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong wijn & a litil, & vse sutil
℞ sauce, & vse of þese þingis: ℞. mirabolanorum,[1] kebulorum indorum,
emblicorum, & bellicorum[2] anа.,[3] & grinde hem alle with oile of
almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4
morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt
die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye. ¶ If a man desiriþ for to haue blae heeris as doiþ grenis[4] &
℞ spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. ℞ foliorum mirti, foliorum 8
papauueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana ℥ j.,
seþe hem in iiij lī of watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole[5]
[6 If. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto lī. j. of oile of violet[6] & boile hem in a double
vessel til al þe watir be waistid awey; þanne caste into þe oile ℥ ß 12
of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirnels ben
taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement.
& herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifieþ diuers passiouns / 16

¶ ij°c NAmys of phisice þat signifieþ diuers passiouns vndir oon name
ofte tyme bigiliþ a leche, & bringiþ him into greet errour /
The falling off of the hair called Alopecia is a sort of Leprosy. For comounli al maner lesing of heer is clepid allopucia[7]; saue for 20
to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice[8] of lepre þat comeþ of
rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopucia þat
falliþ oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for
a fox in sum tyme of þe ȝeer his heer piliþ awei, & þerfore fallyng 24
The disease is called awei of heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea[9] is as miche to seie as a

[1] *Mirobolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

[2] *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Belliriei* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz. [3] Lat. ana partes equales.

[4] Greeks. [5] *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

[7] De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "*And if suche fumosite faileþ nouȝt, but is infect or i-lette by som oþir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouȝt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopiciam.* ¶ *By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere.* ¶ *Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem falliþ happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete.* ¶ *Allopes in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englische.*"

[8] *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce: species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: *a maner kynde of sponges* (leaf 109).

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "*Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children hauen ofte, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we clepiþ þat yuel tynea, moþþe, for it fretiþ & gnaweþ þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moþþe fretiþ cloþ & cleneþ þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste.*"

reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þerfore cirurgians makiþ difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei [1]clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wiþ harde
4 crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris falliþ awei wiþoute ony wise of þe skyn.[2]

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin. [1 lf. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wiþoute comeþ of þe skyn,[3] & sumtyme it comeþ in þe eende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi
8 þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, ouþir it comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of þe bodi wiþ good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of his heed wiþ þin hond & anoynte it wiþ oile
12 of mirtillorum / If þis suffise not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicome reed; & þan frote it wiþ ryndis of an oynoun til it bicome drie, & þanne þere wole arise þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wiþ grece
16 of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen azen, lete schaue hem ofte, for miche schanynge is good þerfore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia comeþ of vijs[4] of humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe teching [5]þat is aforseid in allopucia þat comeþ
20 of long sijknes; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it come, þat þou miȝt knowe bi disposicion of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume
24 of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, & if his vryne be þicke & reed, & if he be ȝong, & if he etiþ metis þat engendriþ miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce
28 of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place be rufus ouþer ȝelow, & vlcer be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, & if he hane miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt &
32 þicke, & if he þirstiþ not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and miche moisture þeron wiþouten ony bremynge, it is a signe of fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be leene, & if his vryne be pale & þinne, [6]& if he haþ greet appetit,
36 & if his blood be blac, & if he vsiþ miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is ulcerated, [5 lf. 106, bk.] if the disease is caused by bad humours.

Signs for telling whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler, by phlegm, [6 lf. 107]

[2] *withoute ony wise of þe skyn*, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; *of viis of humouris*, Lat. propter humorum malitiem.

[3] Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

[4] See note 2.

oþere þingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne it is worse þan ony oþer aforseid / 4

or by melancholy.

First remove the cause of the disease.

Wha*n*ne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou must anoide[1] þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G. seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to anoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche in sich maner causis / If it so be þat a man be ful of humouris, þou must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, þat is, & not to ȝong ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him first, & þanne wiþinne a few daies lete him [2]blood / If it so be þat blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisiþ ynow for to lete him blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, & if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, & principali if it be hoot / 8 12 16 20

Galion. a generalle rulle off galyen.

If the patient is full of humours, bleed and purge.

[2 lf. 107, bk.]

To purge coler

℞

¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / ℞ violarum ℥ j., prunorum ℥ j & ß, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in iij lī of water, til þei come to lī j, & cole hem, & resolue þeron cassia fistula[3] ℥ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ℥ ß., & boile hem a litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þeron poudre of mirabolani citrini ʒ. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe it a litil first, & distempere it with ℥ ß of sugre rosarum, & lete him drynke it[4] / ouþer wiþ þese pelottis[5] / ℞ aloes cicotrini[6] .ʒ j., mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana .ʒ ß., scamonie quintam 24 28

℞

[1] *avoide*, Lat. evacuare. See *N. E. Dict.*, avoid, 1.

[3] *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

[4] The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera ℞ cantaridarum, mane, medulle cassia fistule ana ℥ ß, myrbol, cytri[ni] ʒ ij, boylle in lī ß watir, to the halfe put therto ℥ j suger & ß ʒ. & drenk yt.*

[5] *pelottis*, Lat. pillis, Fr. pelote, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." Charta de Foresta, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatuum, quod tres ortilli abscidantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

[6] *aloes cicotrini*, Lat. sucotrini, for socotrini, so called from the island Socotra.

partem .ʒ. j., *þat* is to seie þe .v. *part* of ʒ., & make þerof pelottis *with* sirupo violac*eo*. & þis is good to ȝeue to a strong man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to *purge* clene colre / ℞ mirab*olani* ℞
4 cit*rini* .ʒ j., scamonie cocte .℈ ℿ, mastic*is* [1] *gra*na iij., grinde he*m* & [1 lf. 108]
te*mpere* he*m* vp wiþ ius of iouis barba,[2] & make *per*of pelottis & þis ius, but colli*ge* on ȝest.[3] ¶ þis þou must wite *þat* whanne þou wolt *purge* colre, first þou muste make a *prepar*atijf tofore *with*
8 oxisacra[4] & wiþ metis *þat* ben colde & moist & wiþ reste.

¶ If þou wolt *purge* fleume þou schalt to þis medicyne *þat* Maist*er* William of Salerne vside / ℞ turbit albi gu*m*mosi .ʒ j & ℈ j, diaȝinȝiberos .ʒ ij., & medle he*m* togid*ere* & make herof a gobet, 12 & medle *per*wiþ a litil of sirupe of ros*is*. ¶ It is good forto medle ȝinȝiberos wiþ turbit for *þat* wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete eu*er*y dai fastyng wiþonten ony medlynge of ony laxatif / ℞ ȝinȝib*er*is albi .ʒ j., ℞
16 liquericie rase .ʒ iij., gariof*ili* cardamoni, nuc*is* muscat*i*, *gra*no*rum* *pa*radisi .ʒ ij., ȝuc*are* albissime .lī .ij., & make herof a letuarie not to hard soden; ouþir wiþ þese pelottis: pulu*er*is pigre,[5] turbit electi an*a* .ʒ x, pulpe coloquintide .ʒ iij & ℈ j, grynde all þese & sarce he*m*,[6]
20 & tem*per*e he*m* vp wiþ oile of almondis & make *per*of pelottis, & herof þou myȝt [7] ȝeue at oonys ʒ ij. ¶ þe poudre of pigre *þat* goiþ [7 lf. 108, bk.] to þese pelottis is good þouȝ it were bi it-silf.[8] & it is swiþe comou*n*, & R*asis* & A. acorde*n* *per*on, & hali abbot & serap*ion*[9] / ℞ ro*sarum* rubea*rum*, mastic*is*, xilob*alsami*, spice, cassie lignie, aȝari ℞
24 an*a*,[10] aloes *þat* it be good, double to alle. ¶ If fleume be medlid wiþ

To purge Flem l. h.

A prescription of William of Salerne

A powder used by Rasis & Auicen

[2] *iouis barba*. med. L. for Sempervivum tectorum. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "*Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.*"

[3] *zest*, Lat. et sit dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

[4] *oxisacra*—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

[5] *pigre*, πικρός, η, όν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "Pigra Gal. in dinamidiis .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

[6] *sarce hem*, Lat. cribellentur. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce. a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. serica, Ital. sargia, Fr. sarge.

[8] *be it-silf*. The *N. E. Dict.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

[9] *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

[10] Lat. ana partes equales.

colre, þa*n*ne do [þerto][1] þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .ʒ ij. & ß, sticados arabici[2] .ʒ .v, & þa*n*ne þou schalt do þe*r*to turbit .ʒ .v—& it was aforseid .ʒ x i*n* þe resceit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochiu*m* ras*is*, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij· humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þe*r*e ben oþe*r*e medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myʒty. Also þe*r*e ben oþe*r*e medicyns more miʒty, saue þei ben not so sure.

cochium Ras*is*.

To purge melancole ℞ ¶ Þou schalt pu*r*ge malancoli wiþ þis liʒt medicyn þat is ofte ʒeue / ℞. epith*imi* .ʒ j., & boile it i*n* lī j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it b*ut* a while, & lete he*m* stonde so al nyʒt, & a morowe chaufe [3]it a litil & cole it, & ʒeue it to drynke; ou*þe*r make it wiþ a decoccio*un* of Epith*imi* Rasis ℞ mirab*olanorum* indo*rum* .ʒ x, pollipodij ʒ .v, sene ʒ vij, turbit ʒ iij, sticados .ʒ *x*, seþe alle þes i*n* iij lī of watir, til it come to j. lī., & þa*n*ne do þe*r*to epithi*mi* ʒ .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þa*n* sette it adou*n* fro þe fier; & wha*n*ne it is cold cole it & do þe*r*to sugre ro. ℥ j., & ʒeue it to dry*n*k i*n* diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more strenger, ʒeue first bi iij. ho*u*ris þese pelottis. ℞ aloes ʒ j., sal*is* indi ʒ .ß., agarici .ϑ ij., elli*bori* nigri þe .iiij. p*ar*t of a ʒ., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ou*þe*r make herof a sirup.

[3 lf. 109]

℞

A stronger medicine: ℞

After having purged, proceed to the local cure; use rubbing and mild medicines, if necessary—stronger ones

Wha*n*ne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þa*n*ne þou must go to þe cure i*n* þis maner / Loke if frotyngis and liʒt medicyns þat ben seid i*n* þe firste bygynyng of þis chapiter suffise i*n* allopucia þat ben not vlcera, saue oonli fallyng awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þa*n* þou muste make stronger / ℞ spume maris, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,[4] saue it is more sutil & more whit, ʒ x. baurac[5] .i. [6]nitru*m*, in þe stide herof we mou*n* do þerto sal ge*m*me, sulphuris, euforbij an*a* ʒ .ij., staphisag*ri*e, cantaridaru*m* an*a* .ʒ j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoy*n*te herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & p*ri*ncipaly if he be a riche man: ℞ oliu*m* de ben[7] .℥ j., cantaridar*um* & kutte awei þe

[6 lf. 109, bk.]

℞

For rich people use an ointment of Cantharides.

[1] Wanting.

[2] *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—Stoechas d'Arabie. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

[4] See page 179, note 1. [5] *bauruc*, Arab. = nitrum.

[7] "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philipps.

hediȝ þerof & þe wyngis ana .ʒ j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,[1] & sette þe viol[2] vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole
4 bicome al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wiþ musco, & herwiþ anoynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise þeron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynne, þei wolen make a greet
8 brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat poruȝ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas[3] in þis maner: þou schalt anoynte þe place with vnguentum [4]album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie / [4 lf. 110]

Inflammatory symptoms, such as fever, to be treated with unguentum album.

12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopucia ouþer tinearum[5] summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile þereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,[6] þanne it is seid incurable // ¶ If þere ben
16 pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile[7] his heed wiþ caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anoynte al his heed wiþ oile of notis
20 ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis þerof be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese driynge medicyns / ℞, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wiþouten grauel & wiþouten stoonys, & distempere it with strong vinegre, & make it as it were
24 an oynement, & þerwiþ anoynte his heed // ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos[8] pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre [9]& anoynte herwiþ. þis is good þing þerfore & drieþ swiþe vlcera þat ben
28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis drieþ & soudiþ // ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennynge, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wiþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anoynte þerwiþ al his heed, &
32 þanne leie þerevpon a lynnen cloop wet in þe iuys of stooncroppe,[10]

Ulcers accompanying Alopecia or Tinea are sometimes incurable.

Treatment, if there are blood-pustules, and if the skin is full of humours.

℞

[9 lf. 110, bk.]

Cool with unguentum album and a lotion.

[1] *in oile of violet*, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

[2] *viol*, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

[3] Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

[5] Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

[6] *calose*, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

[7] *hile*, O.E. helan. [8] MS. *siccage*.

[10] *stooncroppe*, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cassula minor frigid. sicc. teste de soriz. stoncroppe.*"

& lete þis lye *þer*on til al þe bre*n*nynge be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anoynte his heed wiþ oile of violet. & þa*n*ne hele his heed wiþ leuys of bleta*rum* til al þe sky*n* bicome moist & neische & wiþoute brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wiþ þi*n*gis þat ben aforseid // ¶ Item, if tinea be[1] newe, þou schalt do *þer*to ano*þer* man*er* cure / ℞, abrotani agrestis,[2] fumiterre, lappacij acuti,[3] artemesie[4] an*a* .m. j. boile alle þese i*n* oile til þei bicome al drie *þer*on, & wiþ þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þa*n*ne sprynge þeron poudre of staphisag*re* & of elle*boro*; wiþ anoynti*ng* of þis oile þe mat*ere* schal be [5]taken out of þe skyn, & wiþ frotyng of þis poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mat*er* be fleumatik *þat* is i*n* þe skyn, & if *þere* be[6] myche corrupciou*n* *þer*on & if þe skyn be crusty,[7] þa*n*ne waische his heed wiþ a decocciou*n* of malowis i*n* watir, & þa*n*ne anoy*n*te his heed wiþ oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere; & wha*n*ne it is anoy*n*tid, hie his heed wiþ caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more scabbid[8] þan it was. & þa*n* frote it wel wiþ an oynon*n* til þe skyn bicome hoot & reed, & þa*n* þou schalt waische his heed wiþ lye maad wiþ aschis of a vine, & *þer*on schule*n* be dissolued wijndrastis brent.[9] & wh*a*nne þou hast waische his heed herwiþ, þa*n* þou schalt anoynte his heed wiþ þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / ℞, calcis vif .℥ iij., arsenec ℥ j., aloes ʒ .iij., & make herof a poudre & temp*ere* he*m* togidere wiþ seþing hoot wat*er*, & herwiþ take awei hise heeris, & þa*n* waische his heed aʒen wiþ þe lye *þat* is aforseid til þe mat*ere* be wel dried / þa*n* for to make þe heeris [10]wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe place w*ith* an oynemen*t* *þat* is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer ʒ j, fecis of oile, lynseed an*a*. ℥ iiij, mirre ʒ j & ß, staphisag*re* .ʒ .ij., euforbij .ʒ j., make *þer*of an oynemen*t* // ¶ If þe mat*ere* come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe mat*ere* neische and moist wiþ waisching of a decocciou*n* of violet & fumiterre i*n* wat*er*, & anoynte it wiþ oile of violet til þe mat*ere* be resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

Treatment of Tinea in an early stage.

℞

[5 lf. 111]

Treatment, if there is much phlegmatic (liquid) matter in the skin.

An ointment for removing the hair.

℞

Another for restoring the hair and skin.

[10 lf. 111, bk.] to mak heres grow

℞

Treatment, if the matter is melancholic (cold and dry).

[1] *not*, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit alit*er* cura tineæ novæ.

[2] *abrotani agrestis*. Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *suþerwude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "*Abrotanum. gallice aueroyn. anglice suthernewode.*" See *Alphita*, p. 1.

[3] Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacium acutum. anglice reddoke.*"

[4] *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort.*"

[6] *be*, in margin. [7] *crusty*, Lat. crustosus.

[8] *scabbid*, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

[9] Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid saphati,[1] & for impetiginem & morpheam,[2] & for fallyng awei of heeris, & for al maner scabbe. ℞, gallarum .ʒ iij., seminis secute ʒ .ij., baurac .ʒ j. & þe iiij part of [ʒ i],[3] sulphuris vif ʒ ij. & ß., arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana ℈ ij, salis armoniaci, fulliginis, amigdalarum [4] amarum, colloquntide, eris vsti, venarum citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terestres brent, litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,[5] radices canne siccarum, flos eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana ʒ ß., picis liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .ʒ j., grinde hem sutilly & tempere hem wiþ eysel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas, ouþer in a vessel of erþe glasid[6] wiþinne, & meue hem wel in þe sunne, til it bicome al an oynement, & herwiþ anoynte his heed, til it be perfitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

A general prescription of Galion for skin-diseases.

℞

[4 lf. 112]

Of þe fallynge of heeris //

7 Baldness is caused by old age, by sickness, by a corruption of the humours.

CAluiciem is a fallyng awey of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is][8] kindely as whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly, as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapiter here tofore. & if þis cause come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse[9] comeþ of humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tinea, & þe cure herof is bi avoidyng of humouris as it is aforseid.[10] ¶ þe

[9 lf. 112, bk.]

1 *Saphati*, Hebr. Sapahath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

2 *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

3 Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem ʒ i^{us}.

5 *fice sicce*, Lat. fisti sicce. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fistici, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut. 6 *glasid*, vitreatus.

7 This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. 8 *is*, wanting.

10 De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is priuacioun and defaute of heer, and comeþ of defaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi þat' makiþ a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn recchiþ along', & if' his bodi be drie & þinne & his skyn hoot', þan
℞ þou must' do þis cure / Take olium mirtinum & olium de mastice ouþer olium ladani, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if' þe tyme of' 4
þe ȝeer be eoold, þou muste anointe him wiþ olium de spica //

Treatment, if the patient is young.

¶ Whanne a mannes heeris falliþ awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe while he is ȝong', þan make him a baþ & anoynte him wiþ camomille & wiþ bittir[1] almondis & wiþ oile maad þerof' // If a man 8

If the skin is tender.

bicome ballid for cause þat' his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe signys þerof' as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take olium mirtinum & olium mastices wiþ oilio laurino. & herwith anointe his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &

[2 lf. 113]

with olio mirtino / If' a mannes heed be waischen [2]herwiþ, it' wole make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water þat' bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwiþ waische hise 16

An ointment for preserving the hair from falling off.

heeris & after anointe him wiþ oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat' þe falle not' / take leuys of' mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir þerof' bicome al troubly þan take li .j of' þe water & olium enfantini or of' oile þat' is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan seþe hem til 20 þe water waaste awei, & þanne easte þerto canel & ladanum grounden & resolued in wijn, & make herof' an oynement' & anointe herwiþ þe rotis of' þe heeris /

Of litil pustulis þat wexiþ in a mannes face or in children hedis /[3] 24

¶ iij°. c°/

Saphati, a scab on the head and face.

SAphati ben litil pustule þat' wexiþ in a mannes heed & in children forhedis & her face, & principali in wommens faeis, & also in mennys facis þat' ben moist', & makiþ sumtyme erustis / For 28

Treatment of Galion.

to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt' haue a good medicyn of' .G. þat' is aforseid of' aisehis of' cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun be holpen þerof' if' her norice absteyne hir fro salt' metis & scharpe & fro strong' wijn[4], & þe child schal be baþid in a decoccioun of 32

þat ofte seruen venus falliþ and bredip ballidnes litil & litil. . . . And if a man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnhonest."

[1] MS. *butir*. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalis amaris.

[3] Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

[4] Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6. fol. 55 b.: "*This seknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . . The cure of it ys* þat *euery*

camomile [1] & rosis & fenigreei, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn ; if þei be frotid wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schaue & wiþ waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anoynte his heed with an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .℥ iij, farine fenigreci, sulphuris viui, nitri croei,[2] sinapis ana .ʒ .iiij., temperc hem wiþ vinegre and watir /

[1 lf. 113, bk.]

Furfures (dandriff).

Ointment.

℞

Of clooþ[3] þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

PAnnus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ ofte in childberyng, & also whanne hir menstrue is wiþholde, & is as it were a maner ledi[4] colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere. & þou schalt first purge þe matere with a decoecioun of epithimi & gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat [5]he leue metis þat engendriþ malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe lynnen clooþ, bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcurbite, stampe hem alle togidere & temperc hem wiþ water & dissolue a litil safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be oold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum slayn[6] wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,[7] & tempere hem wiþ oximel, & sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir leehis. & after þat anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapueie[8] & staphisagre temperid

iiijo. co.

Pannus, a skin-disease on the face, which affects women, when they are with child.

Apply a purging medicine,

[5 lf. 114]

an ointment,

and leeches.

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe norysc absteine hyre fro flesses, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis."

[2] *croei*, for *crossi*.

[3] *clooþ*, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

[4] *ledi*, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

[6] *slay*, Lat. extinguere, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

[7] *mirre*, mistaken from Lat. *nitro*.

[8] catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "*Catapucia, semen spurge, catapuste, spurge sed.*" The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "*Catapodia, a swylfeude drenc.*" Compare *N. E. D.* s. v. catapuce.

Auicen. ℞ vnguntum amegdalarum.

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .ʒ j. gm̄ amigdalarum ʒ ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .ʒ iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwiþ hir face aneue & amorowe; waische hir face wiþ watir [1] þat violet haþ leye þeron / Lentigines[2] ben purgid wiþ a strong purgacioun & wiþ a strong medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

[1 lf. 114, bk.]

Cossi are small pustules on the face.

dubium ℞

¶ Cossi[3] ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, & principali aboute þe [nose],[4] & þei makiþ þe place reed, & þerfore þis medicyn is good. ℞, sulphuris viui .℥ j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //

Gutta rosacea changes the colour of a man's face.

¶ Gutta rosacea,[5] þat is a passioun þat turneþ þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propur colour & makiþ þe face reed. & þis passioun comeþ of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun þat purgiþ salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn /

A purging medicine.

℞, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana[6] & poudre of litil meis[7] brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe oþere. & þis schal be poudrid wiþ .ij. partis of trifolij [8] & þe .iiij. part of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anoynte herwiþ his face, & amorowe waische his face wiþ a decoccioun of semina frigidorum[9] & wiþ a litil campher, & þan make his face clene, & þan anoynte his face wiþ olio tartarino,[10] & al þe

[8 lf. 115]

[2] "*Lentigo*, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

[3] Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: *þe ampte, þe teter* and *þe ryngworm*. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with *cossi*, deriving it from Lat. cossis, or cossus, *m.*, a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of *cossi*.

[4] *nose*, omitted in MS., but space left free. *Dubium* in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "*And nurphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectionn is but litil diuers from infeccionn þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectiþ þe face wiþ smale pymples, and comeþ of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytweene felle and fleische.*" Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "*þo rose goute.*" Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

[6] The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. 1.

[7] *meis*, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. *meis* is probably an error for *miis*. [9] MS. fiu.

[10] The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given

remenaunt herof þou schalt do of þis eure & fulfille wiþ medicyns as it is aforseid / ad pannum /

¶ Cicatrices vulnerum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, & is good for manie maner þingis, for it doiþ awei wennys, and it doiþ awei scharpnes of þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch in woundis & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge & grinde it sotilli in a morter & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne a litil oile of ro., & þus þou schalt do til it come to a perfit oynement /[1]

To remove the scars of wounds.

℞

Of icchinge & smertynge[2] and scabbe.

¶ Capo. vo. pruritus

ICchinge & scabbe comeþ of salt humouris, & a mannys kynde haþ abhominacioun þerof, & putteþ[3] hem out of þe skyn,[4] & þis falliþ ofte of salt metis & scharpe metis & of [5]wijn þat is strong; & it falliþ ofte to hem þat wakiþ & traueiliþ & vsiþ no baþing & weriþ no lynnen cloþis, & þis is oon of þe siknes þat is contagious, for o man mai take it of anoþer / þis maner sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of blood, sumtyme of fleume, sumtyme of colre, sumtyme of malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe is wet / If it be drie, it schal propirli be clepid ieche / And if it be moist, it schal be clepid scabbe / To þe eure herof þou schalt avoide salt fleume, þou schalt defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / ℞, abstinthij,

Itch and scabs arise from acid humours, [5 lf. 115, bk.] and are caused by salt meat, strong wine, and filth. They are contagious.

Dry scab is called itch. Treatment of scabs.

℞

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114, bk.: "*oylle off tarter.* R, *tarter off whyt wyn made in pouder temperd wt venygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, ta yt be welle brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an holle benethe. & þis ys oylle off tarter.*"

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the same place:

"*aqua pro guta rosacha:* R, *lytargiri, argenty riui ana ʒ iiij, acety alby li. i, boyll yt to conschoun*[a] *in an erthen vesselle, let stande & clere & keep yt.*"

"R. *salt ar.* ʒ *i, saltpeter* ʒ *i, salt comun* ʒ *i, clece water* ℥ *iiij, mixte togeder with yᵉ sexte part off a* ʒ *off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters togeder.*"

[1] The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "*Item gos gres & dow & diaculum, alle syeatrynes it rectyfyes.*"

[2] *smertyng*, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—*emertung*, is probably a mistake for *smertung*, to O.E. *smeortan*. [3] MS. *putte*.

[4] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*Schabbe is corrupcioun of þe skynne, & cameþ of corrupt humours þat beþ bytwene felle and fleissche, & hurtiþ & greueþ & defouliþ þe body. For as Constantine seiþ, kynde puttiþ out euel humours to þe vttir parties of þe body to clense and to purge þe inner parties.*"

[a] consumption.

abrotani, cuscute, fum*us* terre, an*a* ℔ .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene ℥ j, thimi, epithi*mi* .℥ ß., sepe he*m* wel i*n* lī iij of' wa*ter* & lī j. of vinegre til þei come to lī j. & dī. cole he*m* & do þe*r*to iuys of' fumi terre & sug*ur* lī .j. & ß, & make þe*r*of' 4
a sirup & herwiþ defie þe mat*e*re / & þa*n* þou schalt purge hi*m* wiþ
℞ þese pelott*es*, ℞, aloes optimi, cortices mirab*olani*, cit*rini*, an*a* .℥ j
stampe he*m* & temp*e*re he*m* w*ith* iuys m*aa*d of' fumi terre, til þei
be þicke as it' were hony, & lete it' drie til þer mai be m*aa*d gobetis 8
[1 lf. 116] þe*r*of' & m*aa*d þe*r*of' pelottis, & herof' þou schalt' ȝeue þe [1] weiȝte of'
ij. ʒ. at' oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersid ofte. ¶ Also blood
leti*ng*' is good þe*r*fore, if' o*p*e*re* p*ar*ticlis acordiþ þe*r*fore // ¶ Also gotis
whey is good þe*r*fore, i*n* which be leid mirab*olani* wiþ sugre, & ofte 12
℞ take, for þa*t*' clensiþ miche, & is maad i*n* þis man*er* / In lī .j of' gotis
whey leie ℥ j. of' mirab*olani* citr*ini* powdrid an eue, on þe morowe
heete he*m* & cole he*m* & do þe*r*to ℥ .j of' sugre ro. // ¶ If' it' be drie
Treatment of dry scab. scabbe, hoot' watir is good for to baþe hi*m* y*n*ne, in which is soden 16
fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte hi*m* w*ith*
oile of' ro. & iuys of' ache & vinegre, & herw*ith* his bodi schal be
An ointment made by Rasis. wel frotid i*n* þe baþ ou*þe*r i*n* a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment' þa*t*' rasis
made for þe scabbe þa*t*' is drie / ℞ salis co*mmun*is, salis gemme, 20
℞ elle*bori*, nigri costi, ʒ .j., picis liquide ℥ vj., olium violaru*m* & aceti,
& herof' make an oynement' / & anoynte herwiþ i*n* his stewe & frote
him wel, & aftir lete hi*m* be þe*r*i*n*ne by an hour, & aftir baþe hi*m*
i*n* a decocciou*n* of' bra*n* & lappacij acuti, enule campane[2] & arthe- 24
de scabi hu*m*ida. *misie* // ¶ If' þe scabbe be moist' / þan make an oynement' of' rasis /
℞ ℞, argenti viui extincti, [3] & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' sle[4] it': leie it'
[3 lf. 116, bk.] in a peute*r* disch & spete þe*r*on, & frote it' wiþ mannes heeris, & do
eleborus nygr. þe*r*to: whit' litarge, elle*bor*um nigru*m*, alumen[5] vetus, oleandru*m* an*a*, 28
grynde alle þese togidere & temp*e*re he*m* w*ith* vinegre,[6] & herwiþ al
his bodi schal be anoyntid at' euen, & at' morowe he schal be stewid,[7]
and wha*n*ne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

[2] MS. *compare*. [4] *sle* = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.

[5] *alumen*, on margin.

[6] The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "*& olio* communi *miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupyam et cum sudaueret ffricet corpus cum usne et accto. rsne .i. mosse off the oke.*"

usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic.*—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Sculls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.

[7] *he schal be stewid*, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

ayen scabbe & icching, first lete þe paciente blood, & make him þis oynemente / ℞, sulphuris viui & tm̄[1] de sale & tartaro, grinde hem wel togidere til it become in þe maner of an oynemente, & wiþ þis oynemente anoynte þe paciente, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching // ¶ Also if þe paciente haue greete bremnyng & greete iching, þanne anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of ro. þate ben good, & lete him reste so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / ℞ succus affodillorum & distempere it wiþ white hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he goiþ oute of his stewe; for þis oynemente doiþ awey filþe of þe skyn and elensiþ myche / R R

Of morphue[2] and impetigine[3] //

[4 lf. 117] ¶ vj°. c°

The school of Salerno and the Arab physicians differ as to the names of the diseases.

[4] NOw we han medyeyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie maistris, þate is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, as of Ipoeras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, Auicen / Hali þe abbote, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle þese auctouris speciali yeue it us, saue þei acorden not in names / [5] Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers names, for þate men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen impetigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in arabie clepen it albaree /[5] & perfore I wole in þis book teche þe

[1] MS. *tm̄*, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

[2] *morphue.* See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*And þis euel hatte impetigo, for it lettiþ and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleissch, namliche with tikelinge and icchinge. Also þis euel hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge euel, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent oþir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracchinge and clawinge.*"

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea is speekes in þe skynne, and comeþ of corrupcionn of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comeþ of flemme, & som is blak & comeþ of malencolia, & som is red & comeþ of colera oþir of blood.*"

[5–5] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passiþ fro place to place. Þou schalt cure it wiþ gumme of cheritrees distemperid wiþ vinegre, ouþer gumme of plumtre & anoynte wiþ buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres [1] of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., ȝelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis seminis citoniorum[2] ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þerwith amorowe, & þanne waische him in watir þat þer haþ leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte baþid wiþ sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendriþ good humouris //

Treatment:

[1 lf. 117, bk.]

R

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as wханne a mannys skyn chaungiþ in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wiþouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmeþ a man, saue oonly þe colour of þe skyn chaungiþ oþir þan it schulde be //[3]

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittiþ in þe fleisch, in þe same maner riȝt so morphea sittiþ in þe skyn.[4]

Albaras.

Nota

[7 lf. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

¶ Albaras.[5] Not oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion[6] is strong / & þe mater [7] þerof is but litil, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goiþ into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to avoide humouris þat ben in þe cause[8],

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

[2] *Citonia* = Cydonia, quince.

[3] Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

[4] Not in the Lat. Origin.

[5] *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

[6] MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiua.

[8] *humouris* þat ben in þe cause. Lat. : Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause :* to be to blame.—*Littré Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse :* to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

saue *þat* oon mote haue stronger medicyns *þan* *þat* o*þer*. ¶ Impetigo muste haue abstynence fro *þingis* *þat* engendri*þ* fleume, & he muste haue a *purgaciou*n for to purge fleume / Anoynte *þe* place wi*þ* oile of whete *þat* is m*aa*d *in* *þis* maner / Take whete & leie bitwixe two platis of iren hoot / & p*r*esse he*m* togidere & *þer*of wole bicome oile // ¶ Also *in* ano*þer* maner / Take .ij. vessels of er*þe*, so *þat* *þe* mou*þ* of *þe* oon vessel go to *þe* mou*þ* of *þe* to*þer* vessel, & *þat* oon vessel schal sto*n*de *in* *þe* er*þe*, & in *þe* vessel aboue *þou* schalt do *þi* whete, & *þou* schalt stoppe *þe* mou*þ* of *þe* vessel *þat* is aboue *þat* *þe* whete is y*n*ne w*ith* a plate of bras ou*þer* of iren *þat* is bett*er*e, [1]& *þe* plate schal be ful of smale holis. & *þan* *þe* mou*þ* of *þis* pott schal be ioyned to *þe* mou*þ* of *þe* pott *þat* is in *þe* er*þe* w*ith* good lute, *þat* *þer*e mowe noon eir out *þer*of. & *þan* make a fier aboute *þe* pott *þat* is aboue *þe* er*þe*, & *þer*e wole distille oile into *þe* pott *þat* is bine*þe* in *þe* er*þe*, & wi*þ* *þis* oile *þou* schalt anoynte *þe* place ofte, & frote harde. & if *þis* suffise not, *þa*nne *þou* schalt sette vpon *þe* place watir leehis ofte, for to do awey *þe* fleumatik blood / If *þis* suffise n*o*t, leie *þer*vpon a mundificatif of cantarides stampid wi*þ* whete, til *þe* place schyne[2], & *þan* cure it vp wi*þ* an oy*n*ment of ceruce / Frote hi*m* wi*þ* an oynement m*aa*d of ar*mon*iae & w*ith* *þe* sournes of eit*ri*, & nitro is good *þer*fore //

¶ *Þe* white morphu is curid wi*þ* p*ur*gaciou*n* *þat* purgi*þ* roten fleume, & wi*þ* *þis* special medicyn / ℞, trifer*e* minor*um* .ʒ .iiij., t*ur*bit, pulu*er*is pigre .ʒ .ij., colloq*ui*ntide .ʒ ij., make herof pelottis wi*þ* hony, & he schal take *þer*of .iij pelottis euery wike, & eueri dai bitwixe he schal take .ʒ ij. of trifer*e* minor*um*, & he mote absteyne hi*m* fro metis *þat* e*n*gen*d*ri*þ* [3]fleume; & *þe* place shal be frotid *in* *þe* su*n*ne wi*þ* an oynement of tapsia, & *þe* seed of raphani, rubie maioris / ell*eboro* nigro & mustard, & diste*mpere* he*m* wi*þ* vinegre / Also froting wi*þ* squillis is good *þer*fore //

¶ *Þe* blae morphe is curid wi*þ* ofte p*urgin*g of malancoli, wi*þ* gotis whei, & wi*þ* epith*imo*, & o*þer*e medicyns *þat* purgi*þ* malancolie, *þat* be forseid *in* allopueia; & his dietyng schal be moist, & he schal absteyne hi*m* fro metis *þat* engendri*þ* malancolie, & he schal be ba*þ*id ofte *in* swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid as it is aforseid //

¶ Albaras *þat* is whit is curid wi*þ* *þe* same *þin*gis & w*ith*

Treatment of Impetigo.

Purge and use an ointment.

℞

℞

Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.

[1 If. 118, bk.]

Treatment of the whyt Morphea.

℞

[3 If. 119]

Treatment of the black morffue.

[2] *til þe place schyne*, donec locus excoriatur.

Treatment of white Albaras

stronger medicyns þat ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu, & miche castyng is good for hem, & þou schalt frote wel þe place with squillis in a stewe, & after þat sprynge þeron poudre maad of tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, & tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt anoynte him wiþ blood of a blac serpent, for þat is bi proprte good þerfore /

Black Albaras is incurable, [1 lf. 119, bk.] the attendant discoloration of the skin may be cured.

Albaras þat is blak is incurable, for it is a particuler lepre, & but [1]if it be so þat it mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it schal neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / ℞, aloxanti, þat is þe flour of þe wiþi,[2] mirram, feces of wijn brent, reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient fele prickyng & brennyng. Þis wole deye þe skyn for manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it azen.

// Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre[3] //

¶ vijo. co

Leprosy arises from the corruption of the melancholic humours and affects the whole body.

LEpra[4] is a foul sijknes þat comeþ of malancolie corrupt, ouþir of humouris þat ben brouzt to þe forme of malancolye[5] corrupt. & it goiþ into al þe bodi, rizt as a cancre is in oon lyme of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multiplieþ[6], & a mannes guttis ben not strong for to putte it out, & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotiþ complexionns of þe lymes. & þe bigynnying of þe mater myzte be of blood ouþir of fleume, colre, ouþer of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild [7]it is malancolie corrupt. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat ben contagious / ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat ben profitable for a cirurgian to kunne, & also curis þat comeþ ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[7 lf. 120]

[2] Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσαντον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

[3] Lat. de lepra et indiciis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

[4] Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lepra meselrye is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia;* 2. the *Tiria or Serpentyna, and haþ þat name of an addre þat hatte tyrus, for as an addre lenth lizliche his skynne and is skaly, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of skales;* 3. *alopicia & vulpina foxissch;* 4. *leonina, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membres.*"

[5] & inserted.

[6] *multiplieþ*, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplye, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

Men þat ben leprons,[1] in þe bigynnyng her heeris of her heed fallip awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicomep reed & as it were schynyng. ¶ Also in summe þe face wexip reed & swellip & is sumwhat ledi, & principali aboute [þe nose][2] // ¶ Also her vois is rowȝ ouþer sumtyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her iȝen bicomep al derk, & þe heeris goon awei of her browis / Her nosepprillis bicomep smal, onþer wondirly greet, & her nosepprillis ben streit for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicomep ledi / Also her breep wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit[3] & þei schulen haue greet snesyng / Also þei wilnep myche to comne[4] wip wommen / Also þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicome as it were þe skyn of a gandir [5]þat þat hise feþeris weren pilid awey / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir, anoon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his yȝen wolen bicome rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicome greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe pombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto schal be wastid awey, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole lene as it were granel. & þis sijknes aftir þe tyme þat it is conferned is incurable, sane in þe firste bigynnyng it mai be curid wel //

Signs of Leprosy: the hair falls off, the face gets red and swollen, the voice gets hoarse, the nostrils are disfigured, the breath is foetid, [5 lf. 120, bk.] the legs lose their feeling, pustules grow on the tongue, the blood is sharp and leaves a sediment like sand.

¶ Treatment of Leprosy.

¶ þe cure of lepre is not sett in þis book, for þis book is of cirurgie, saf þer ben in þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, & canterijs þerfore / For alle þese þingis falliþ for a cirurgian / Þis [6]þou schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony medicyne þerto; fforwhi, if þe sijknes be strong, þanne he muste haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn muste be ofte rehersid.[7] Saue þou schalt chese a liȝt medicyn þat

[6 lf. 121]

Strong medicines are dangerous.

[1] The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2. [2] *þe nose*, wanting.

[3] *her pisce wole be streit*, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

[4] *comne* for *comune*.

[7] Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purging medicines.

wole falle for to purge þe humour liȝtli // A medicyn maad of gotis whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purgiþ malancolie litil & litil, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi // Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it comeþ of þe veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose[1] / Þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre, þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke. & [2]þou schalt, in as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coold // ¶ Summen curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre[3] þat ben in drie lond & among stones, & þan þei kutten awey þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre & doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in[4] a vessel of erþe wiþ a litil peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolued. Þanne þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient haue scotomiam[5] & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouþer greet cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

[2 lf. 121, bk.]

Give the patient nourishing food.

A preparation made from the flesh of a black snake

is given, until the patient becomes giddy.

Then let him lie down and give a reviving medicine in case of collapse.

[1] Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum seis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum facici colorem."

[3] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "*To hele oþir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym. & he eet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recouered & had his siȝt goode & clere.*" The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

[4] *in*, in margin.

[5] *scotomia*, σκότωμα, ατος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wiþ a litil museo ouþer hoot wijn // In þis maner al his [1]fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe heeris wolen come vp azen / & þis medicyne schal be rehersid so ofte, & kepid wiþ dietyng til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie men moun be delyuerid of manye greet sijknessis, if her leche is kunnynge & diligent aboute hem, & bi neeligence & defaute of help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt fynde ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makiþ clene & soudiþ, all þese þingis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

[1 lf. 122]

A skilful physician often cures, where a negligent one fails.

¶ Of waastynge off membris and bicomen smal /

¶ viij°. c°/

A Mannes lyme bicomeþ smal wiþ greet streynyng of ligaturis þat takiþ awei þe norisching of þe lyme, or of long akyng of ioynt þat enfebliþ al þe lyme / þese þingis makiþ a mannes lymes to bicome smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomeþ greet oþer þan þei schulde be,[2] whanne veynes ben feble & matere falliþ þerto & þe vertu of souding failiþ, & in þis maner þe lyme swelliþ, & þe mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turneþ not into quitture [3]saue it abidiþ in þe lyme & swelliþ þe lyme /

Limbs become swollen after a streight ligature, they become larger by congestion.

[3 lf. 122, bk.]

¶ A lyme þat is bicome smal, in þis maner þou schalt make it greet: if þere be ony þing to take awei þerof as akynge ouþer ony strictture, ouþer ony byndyng, þan remeue awey þat first in þe manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe akynge is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wiþ a decocciou of malowis & violet & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal be in þe water no lenger þan it bigynneþ for to bicome reed & summwhat to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wiþ a lynnen clooþ & frote it a litil wiþ þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal zerde & bete þe lyme þerwiþ til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in þis maner. ℞, picis naualis, picis greece, resine albe ana, & melte alle þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem poruz a clooþ into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem for þin vss[4], herof þou schalt plane vpon [5]a leþer, & leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen

To restore a wasting limb remove the cause of the disease, apply a wash and an adhesive plaster.

℞

[5 lf. 123]

[2] Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare *þe colour . . . chaungiþ oþir þan it schulde be*, p. 194, Note 3.

[4] *vse.*

drawe it awey, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse
þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe frotinge & þe betinge. þis wiþouten
ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it schulde
be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it 4
wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet azen as it
schulde. & þouz it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be,
neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause 8
þerof be of fleume þat þou mizt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme,
for if þou priste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be
brouzt azen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wiþ a
medicyn þat is clepid trociscus de turbit þat is aforseid, & þe pacient 12
schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be
war of greet repleciou of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt eure
him wiþ medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapiter of apostemes
of fleume / Take lye maad [1] of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie 16
þeron a double lynnen clooþ & wete it wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme,
& þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it
.ij. siþis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme
schal drie. Ouþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distemperе it 20
wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe
hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete
þe sponge azen & leie it on þe lyme azen, & lete it drie azen &
alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye siþis. Or take 24
þe leues of lilie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon
þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere
wole waaste awey & þe lyme wole bicome smal as it schulde / If it
so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet 28
fleume, make him a purgaciou with gotis whey & epithimo, or
anoþir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische
wiþ oile of lilie, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis
þat [2] schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe eure þat is 32
forseid. Whanne þe swellyng of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in
hond or in arme, þat fallip ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis &
in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngris cauterijs þat
ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of 36
cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt eure as it schal
be seid in elephaneia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm, use a purging medicine, a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye, ℞ [1 lf. 123, bk.] or in a solution of saltpetre, ℞ or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them. If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment. [2 lf. 124]

Þe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & þe kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapiters /

Þe .2. doo-trine.

¶ 1°. c°. Impostems ingendred off þe iiij humors.

EVeri enpostym is engendrid of' .iiij. humouris, oupir of' water, or of' wijnd. & it' is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune a cure, but' if' he knowe þe cause þerof', & þerfore me þouȝte þat' it' was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of' þe generacioun of' humouris[1] & alle þe propurtees þerof', þat' þe redere of' þis book mai knowe þe causis of' apostyms & þe curis þerof' & metis & drinkis þat' ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching' & augmenting' [2] of' þe lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Whanne þe mete falliþ into a mannes stomac & þou haddist' anothamie þerof, þan in þe stomak þe mete is soden, & þan fro þe stomak it' goiþ into þe guttis, & þerof' þou haddist' anothamiam, & þan þe mete goiþ anoon to þe gutt' þat' is clepid orobum or þe sak. Veynes þat' ben clepid miseraice & þere ben manie maners þerof' as it' is forseid, & þei ben maad fast' wiþ þe botme of' þe stomac & wiþ þe gutt' þat' is clepid duodeno, & wiþ þe smal gutt', & wiþ þe gutt' þat' is clepid iciunium as it' is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigynneþ þe .ij. digestioun & beriþ a veyne þat' is clepid kilus[3] to þe lyuer, & þat' veyne goiþ to þe stomac fro þe lyuer. & þe .iiij. humouris of' iiij. substanceis ben engendrid in þis place of' digestioun[4] / For þere is engendrid þere a maner spumons substaunce whanne þe digestioun failiþ heete; & þere engendriþ anoþer partie þat' is sutil as it' were wijn; & þe greet' substaunce goiþ adoun & stynkiþ. If' þere be engendrid greet' fleume [5] & miche, þat' is cause for it' quenchiþ þe hete of' þe stomac / Also in þe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp hete worchiþ þeron & gaderiþ him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid collera rubea; & if' humouris wexiþ to miche, it' wole achaufe þe lyuer / & causis of' engendring' of' colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

[2 If. 124, bk.]

The first digestion.

The food is sodden in the stomach, and passes through the guts.

Incipit ij dyg°

The mesaraic veins carry the chyle to the liver.

nota

The four humours are produced in the liver.

1. Phlegm,

[5 If. 125]

2. the Cholerie humour,

[1] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "*Þise foure humores beþ i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in þe place of seepinge, þat is þe stomak, first þe more sotil partie & fletinge* þerof, *þat phisicians clepiþ pthismaria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to þe lynore, & þerby þe worchinge of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into þe foure humoures; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in þe lyuer, but it endiþ þere atte fulle.*"

[3] The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from κοιλη.

[4] Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantiæ generantur.

3. Blood,

traueile & fastyng' & stronge saueis // ¶ Also þe*r* is a elene substaun*c*e engendrid þat' kyn*d*eli hete worchiþ þe*r*on, & þat' is blood. & þe mate*r*e herof' is good metis & drynkis þat' ben swete // ¶ Also

4. the Melancholic humour.

þe*r* is engendrid anoþe*r* substaun*c*e þat' is su*m*what' stynkyng' & is 4 elepid malancoli & is enge*n*drid i*n* .ij. maners: oon man*er* is þis of' greet' hete þat' is bre*n*nyng' & of' greet' cooldnes þat' wexiþ hard[1]; & þe cause herof' be*n* grete metis,[2] & metis þat' engendriþ malancoli /

These four humours have different qualities.

And þes iiij. humo*ur*is Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8 eu*er*y of' he*m* haþ diu*er*s qu*a*litees, for blood is hoot' & moist', ffleume coold & moost', Colre hoot' & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also

[3 lf. 125, bk.]

of' þese humo*ur*is [3]su*m*me ben kindeli & su*m*me be*n* vnkyndely, & þe*r*fore i*n* þis chapitre we wole*n* make me*n*cioun of' alle, ffor bi 12 gendring' of' þese humo*ur*is enpostyms be*n* engendrid //

Phlegm is either natural or unnatural.

¶ Of' fleume þe*r*e be*n* ij. kyndis, oon is nat*ur*al & þe toþe*r* i*n*nat*ur*al / Nat*ur*al fleume is coold & moist' & whit', & goiþ su*m*-

The natural Phlegm quiets a man's nerves.

what' to swetnes,[4] of' which lordschipe[5] þer folowiþ a litil wilnyng' 16 for to comou*n* wiþ wy*m*men, & þe palesie, & [he is][6] pesible, & loueþ wel for to haue reste[7] / Saue þe moost' p*ar*t' of' fleume is i*n* a ma*n*nes brayn, & i*n* hise lu*n*gis, & in his stomac, & i*n* hise guttis,

It is chiefly in the back of the head and in the spine.

& i*n* hise ioynct*es*. And þe lordschip of' fleume is i*n* þe hynde*r* 20 p*ar*t' of' a ma*n*nes heed, & i*n* þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre p*ro*fitis, þe .j. is þis: su*m*tyme a ma*n*nes kynde failiþ blood, & þan kinde worchiþ vpon fleume & makiþ blood, & of' oþe*r*e humouris þis mai not' be do / þe ij. p*ro*fit' of' fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ wiþ 24 blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iij. p*ro*fit' of' fleume is þis, þat' it' acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makiþ he*m* moist', for ellis in greet' meuyng' þei schulde*n* wexe drie / Of' fleume þat' is innat*ur*al ben

[8 lf. 126]

.iiij. maners [8]as: fleume dulce, fleu*ma* acetosu*m*, fleu*ma* pontieu*m*, 28

fleuma dulce.

fleu*ma* salsu*m* // ¶ **ffleuma dulce** is in .ij. maners. þe firste man*er*

[1] *of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard.* Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

[2] *grete metis*, Lat. cibi grossi.

[4] *swetnes*, a mistake for *whitnes*. Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "*Kyndeliche fleume is coolde & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litwhat swete in sauour, oþir al werisch & vnsauoury.*"

[5] *of which lordshipe*, Lat. de cuius dominio.

[6] *he is*, wanting.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "*a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slowȝ, dul of wit & of þouȝt forȝetteful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bloo*[a] *of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst.*"

[a] bloo, MS. bood.

is þis: as whanne fleume is medlid wiþ blood, or as whanne hete worchiþ wiþ fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **ffleuma acetosum** is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitiun[1] comeþ to fleume dulce & makiþ him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifalliþ in oþere þingis þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ peron it bicomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makiþ fleuma dulce coold // ¶ **ffleuma salsum** is moost drie of alle, & þis is whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wiþ fleume, þan it is clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makiþ it salt / ¶ **ffleuma vitreum** was liquide fleuma, & wiþ cooldnes it is congilid, or sum partie of malancolie is medlid & congiliþ it hard // ¶ **Colre** sum is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is liȝt & scharp & reed in colour &[2] in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes it makiþ / Þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal hane hasti entendement & sotil [3]of witt, & hardi & hasti þouȝt, & hasti answere, & liȝtly meued to wraþþe[4] / Of colre innatural ben .v. maners, as citrina, [vitellina][5], adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera citrina** is medlid wiþ subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**[6] is medlid wiþ greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is þis, þat it is to miche brent in[7] þe lyuer; þan wiþ þis brennyng þe subtil partie departiþ fro þe grete parties, & in þis maner it takiþ a spice of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben brent, [ben][8] medlid þerwiþ // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid here after // ¶ Þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,[9] þat is swiþe bittir // ¶ Eruginosa is lijk þe rust of copur, & þis maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynonns, garlek, mustard, & oþere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural

fleuma acetosum.
fleuma salsum.
fleuma vitreum.
[3 lf. 126, bk.]
Colera innatura is.
Colera citrina.
Colera vitellina.
Colera adusta.
Collera prassina.
Colera eruginosa.
Galion.
Malancoli.
The natural Melancholy.

[1] *ebullitiun*, Lat. ebullitio.

[2] MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.

[4] De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "*And so colerik men beþ generalliche wraþeful, hardy, vnmeke, liȝt, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklendre & lene; in colour broun, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift.*"

[5] *vitellina*, wanting.

[6] *colera vitellina*, called *ȝellowȝ colera*, in De propr. rer. ibid.

[7] MS. *&* for *in*. [8] *ben*, wanting.

[9] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 35 b.: "*Þe þridde maner of colera hatte prassina, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte prassium, & marubium, & porrus in latyn.*"

[2 lf. 127] haþ þese signis / þe .j. is as it were feeis of blood,[1] [2]& her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouȝt, & þei schulen be dredeful & 4 ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malaneolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme haþ diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

The unnatural Melancholy.

A general word of empostyms /

¶ ij. c°.

A Postyme haþ manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians[3] seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makiþ quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat cueri swellyng in 12 a lyme, wheþir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ : litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng in lymes, ouþir inflatioun[4] þat chaungiþ þe lyme oþer 16 þan it schulde be ; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis ; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir, [5] or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malaneolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours : summe 20 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural ; & summe of sengle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wiþinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforth / þe causis wiþoutforþ is falling ouþer smiting, or of a 24 wounde, or chaunging of eir / Of þe causis wiþinneforþ : as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wiþoutforþ : or wiþ greet hete þat brenneþ, or wiþ greet cooldnes of eir þat constreyneþ, or of 28 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderiþ togidere & makiþ enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wiþ a stoon or wiþ a staf, or þoruȝ prickyng of a venimous beest : alle þese þingis moun 32 [7 lf. 128] engendre venimous[6] enpostyms / In þis maner þou [7]schalt knowe

Any swelling in a limb is called Apostema.

Auicen.

It arises from the humours, [5 lf. 127, bk.] or from water or wind in the body.

The exciting cause is either external or internal.

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36 : "*þe kyndeliche maleneolic is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne.*"

[3] *lewid cirurgians*, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

[4] *inflatioun*, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflacion. *Viyo* l. c. "*Inflatus*, Puffed vp, swellyng."

[6] *a venimous*, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of wha*t* humou*r*is þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,[1] & þes ben þe signes þe*r*of: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of blood, akynge for þe greet repleciou*n* þe*r*of, beting[2] for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akynge / He may haue greuau*n*ce of a feuer[3] / If þe blood be þi*n*ne in substaunce & hoot i*n* qnalite, þa*n* it makiþ herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þe*r*of, þat i*n* þe hiȝest place þe*r*of, it wole be moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þe*r*on, & wh*a*nne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þe*r*e þi fyngir was, & anoon it wole bicome reed aȝen, for þe mate*r* þe*r*of is subtil, & þe pacient haþ greet bre*n*nyng þe*r*of & akynge // Blood i*n* his owne substau*n*ce is more gretter & makiþ more hete, & makiþ apostym, þat is clepid carbu*n*culus / þis enpostym comeþ to a ma*n* wh*a*nne he haþ habou*n*dance of greet blood, & þe*r*for wh*a*nne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe hi*m* or trauaile hi*m*-silf, þat þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be [4]resolued w*ith* hete, & þa*n*ne it leueþ i*n* þe skyn & makiþ apostym.[5] þe signes he*r*of be*n* þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þe*r*of is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete[6] herof makiþ a man su*m*time to haue a feuer þe*r*wiþ; & su*m*tyme it makiþ a man to haue sincopin,[7] & þis is speciali wh*a*nne þe mate*r*e is brent, & in þis maner þe mate*r*e þe*r*of is turned i*n*to veny*m* /

Superfluity of blood causes **flegmon.**

Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes **herisipula*m*.**

Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes **carbunculu*s*.**

[4 lf. 128, bk.]

Symptoms.

[1] *Halle. Table*, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, απο του φλεγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

[2] *beting*, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

[3] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "*And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes* þe*r*of *beþ*[a]*: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardenesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastiþ watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge*[b] *of ventosite & fumosite, schuflynge & puttinge, sore ache of þe*[c] *strecchinge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere.*"

[5] 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiem et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema.

[6] *heete*, in margin.

[7] *Halle. Table*, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundynge."

[a] MS. *by*. [b] Lat. pulsus i. saltus. [c] MS. *ofte*.

Natural colre causes Erysipelas.

Natural colre makiþ herisipula*m*,[1] & þe signe þe*r*of' is hardnes for þe greet' drienes of' colre. & þe heed of' þe enpostym is schape as it' were a pyne, for þe grece þa*t*' it' haþ.[2] & þe colo*ur* þe*r*of' is reed medlid wiþ ȝelow // 4

Phlegm causes vdimia. (oedema).

An enpostym þa*t*' comeþ of' fleume, is clepid vdimia[3] or ȝima,[4] & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colo*ur* þe*r*of' is su*m*what' whiȝt'. & if' þou pressist' *in* þi fyngir, þe*r* wole leue þe*r*e a pitt' for þe gret' neischenes; & wha*n*ne þi fyngir is aweie, it' wole arise vp aȝen. 8 Þis enpostym is wiþout' akynge, saue it' makiþ a greuau*n*ce /

Natural mala*n*coli causes Sclirosis. [6 lf. 129]

¶ Natural mala*n*coli makiþ an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclirosis.[5] & þe signe þe*r*of' is hardnes, & þe colo*ur* þe*r*of' is as þe colour [6]of' malaneolie ledi or blac / 12

A watery apostema.

Enpostym þa*t*' comeþ of' blood & watir medlid togidere. Þis is þe signe þe*r*of': if' þou settist' þe*r*on þi .ij. fyngris of' þi .ij. hondis, & first' p*r*essist' þa*t*' oon fyngir & þanne þa*t*' oþe*r*, þou schalt' fele þe watri mater remeue fro þa*t*' oon fyngir to þa*t*' oþe*r* // 16

These are the simple Apostemas.

¶ Þese ben þe differencis of' apostyms þa*t*' ben symple, þa*t*' comeþ of' oon mate*r*e at' oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt' þe bettir knowe enpostyms þa*t*' comeþ of' double mate*r*e // 20

Apostemas arising from more than one cause: Apostema **flegmonides** and **herisipilades**

¶ Þe*r* comeþ an empostym of' blood & colre; & if' þe more p*ar*tie be of' blood, þa*n* þe enpostym schal be clepid **flegmonides**; & if' þe more p*ar*tie þe*r*of' be of' colre, þa*n*ne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes he*r*of' þou schalt' knowe bi þe signes of' 24

[1] De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrasim, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

[2] Lat. propter ignititatem ipsius.

[3] *vdimia*, οἴδημα, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbaronse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

[4] *Zima.* Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima* est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore." From ζέμα, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comeþ of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer vppon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennynge matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettiþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fingre is aweye, þe matiere comeþ aȝen & filliþ al þe place.*"

[5] Add. 16,106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. *Halle. Table*, p. 114. "*Scirrhus* Σκίῤῥος *και* σκληρότης, id est durities, writen of old *Sclirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben][1] medlid togidere, & makiþ an enpostym þat is vdimia. & þe signe herof [is][2] þat þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat opere wole be whit[3] / ¶ Also blood is medlid wiþ greet fleume & malaneolie, & engendriþ glandulas & Serophulas.[4] ¶ Colre medlid with fleume makiþ fleume rennyng, & makiþ þat fleume goiþ wiþ him into ioynctis. & herof þou sehalt haue a pleyner teching in þe ehapitre of ioinetes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & perof comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malaneolie & blood, colre & fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makiþ an enpostym þat is clepid antrax; & þe malice perof is diuers after euery humour. Saue if blood & colre be feruent togidere & malaneolie be malicious, þan pere falliþ manie harde þingis perto, as quaking of þe herte, & sineopis, & out of hise wittis, & sumtyme deeþ. & þe signes herof ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap perof as it were a pyn, & greet akynge, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And perfore .G. seiþ: hote apostyms, if þei be not felid, ben incurable. & veynes þat ben peron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe enpostym pere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,[6] & þe colour perof wole be as aisehis, & it semeþ þat it is drawe ynward wiþ a preed.[7] & þis enpostym is seid contagious.

Of humouris þat ben [in][8]natural, þese þingis [9]folowiþ perof / Of fleume þat is corrupt cometh Boeia & testudines / Of malancolie comeþ serophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou sehalt haue propre ehapitris / Of colre þat is brent & of opere humouris þat ben brent & corrupt pere comeþ manie pustulis, & summe perof ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.

are caused by the blood and choler.

[5 lf. 129, bk.]

Glandula & Scrophule.

Antrax is caused by Melancholy, Blood Choler and Phlegm.

Symptoms of Anthrax.

Galion.

Anthrax is contagious.

[9 lf. 130]

Bocia & testudines caused by corrupt Phlegm.

Diseases arising from corruption of the humours:

[1] *ben*, wanting. [2] *is*, wanting.

[3] Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.

[4] *Halle. Table*, p. 115. "*Scrophula* (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a *Scropha*, a pregnante soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhous tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the neeke."

[6] Compare *Guilelm. de Salic.*, I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "*In þe antrax . . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touched þe place.*"

[7] De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "*And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wiþ a maner prede, i-fastned to þe vttir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel.*" Not in *Gulielm. de Salic.*

[8] *in*, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

ignis persicus. Ignis persicus is a signe[1] þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & ȝelow, & occupieþ al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyng. & þis comeþ of colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so greet brennyng, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyng // ¶ Þe firste[2] is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / [3]Herpes estiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it malum nostre domine[4] / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: freting & brennyng & blac colour & stynkynge, & þat riȝt foul stynkyng. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

Miliaris. fformica. Pruna. [3 lf. 130, bk.] Herpes esthiomenus. Cancrum & lupum. Cancer vlceratus

[1] *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

[2] Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

[4] *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "mal des ardents" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coiney*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennynge sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."

vleeratus is *in* .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bigynneþ for to wexe *in* þe mychilnes of a feeche or of a pese. & þanne it[1] wole wexe alwei *in* a maner brennynge; & euere as þe matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng wexe forþ. & it wole haue veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof wole be ledi, & sum wole be purpur, summe þerof wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of colerik matere corrupt. & it haþ greet akynge, & if þou pressist it with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof wole be miche more / þis passioun comounly wole wexe *in* placis þat ben glandule / þis maner enpostym comeþ oftc *in* a mannes þies & *in* a wommans brest & *in* oþere placis / Cancer vleeratus. Alle þe signes þerof ben tofore seid *in* his propre chapitre /

Cancer non vleeratus

[1 lf. 131]

It has variously coloured veins,

and chiefly affects glandulous parts.

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / þou must take kepe, whether þe enpostym come of causis wiþoutforþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf or ony maturatif or ony resoluyng þing / forwhi a repercussijf[2] mai not do awei al þe matere, þouȝ it summwhat aswage þe akynge *in* þe firste bigynnyng / neþeles itt makiþ þe matere hard, & aftirward þe patient [3]schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluyng *in* an vnclene bodi drawiþ more matere þerto þan it resoluеþ. ¶ A maturatif makiþ þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makiþ þe matere of þe enpostym ferueut / In what maner þou schalt purge diuers maters, *in* þe chapitre of allopucia þou schalt fynde it, & *in* þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat schal be seid here aftir / þou schalt worche *in* enpostyms þat fallip *in* a mannes bodi wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei *in* þis maner: / If þe enpostym be *in* a mannes mouþ, þan þou schalt make him no gargarisme;[4] & if it be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no laxatif medicyn / & if it be *in* a wommans maris,[5] þan þou schalt ȝeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrue; sauc þou schalt alwei go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be *in* partijs abouc, þan þou schalt ȝeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan ȝeue

Treatment of apostema.

Nota.

When the causes are internal, purge before using medicines.

[3 lf. 131, bk.]

When the causes are external use a contrarious medicine, i. e.

Nota.

a purgative, when the apostema is in higher parts,

[2] MS. repercussist.

[4] *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

[5] *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "*The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sekenesses that women hauen, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice.*"

an emetic, when it is in lower parts.

[1 lf. 132] Repelling medicines must not be used in the following cases:
.1.
.2.
.3. .4.
.5.
.6. .7.
.8.
.9.
.10.

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must [1]be war of repercussiuis in ten maners. ¶ Þe j. cause is þis, if his bodi be replet / as it is aforseid. ¶ Þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. ¶ Þe .iij. is gretnes[2] of humours rotid. ¶ Þe .iiij. cause is, if apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ Þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym be in þe þrote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in ony place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ Þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ Þe .vij. cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ Þe .viij. cause is if it be in a man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ Þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema creticum.[3] ¶ Þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of þese .x. causis, þou schalt make noon repercussif in hote enpostyms as þou schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of repercussifs / ¶ To enpostyms of blood, þou miȝt do medicyns repercussifs & dissolutiuis sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng[4] repercussifs ouercome þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat[5] of þe enpostym lasse, & in þe ende þerof þou schalt [6]vse clene resoluyng þingis / If þou miȝt not wiþ repercussiuis do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, saue he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns maturatiuis, til it be wel quitturid. ¶ Of repercussiuis resolutiuis maturatiuis & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently rotid, þis þou miȝt knowe whanne þe akynge is al aweie, & whanne þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ Þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon enpostym or he be perfitli rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony oþir lyme, or þat he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct // In oþere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfitli rotid. & in þe kuttyng þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym.[7] ¶ Þe .ij. enten-

In case of a blood-apostema use a repelling followed by

[6 lf. 132, bk.] a solvent medicine.

In case of suppuration apply a maturing medicine.

Open the abscess when it is ripe.

.1. Take care not to cut, if the abscess is near a joint, looke well apon thes Rulles

[2] *gretnes*, grossities. [3] *creticum*, Lat. criticum.

[4] *þe firste bigynnyng*, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "*and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn* þou *take it not awey with violence.*"

[5] *in þe stat*, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "*whan þe posteme is in state.*"

[7] Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

ciou*n* is þis, þat þou schalt be war, wh*an*ne þou openest [1]an enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arteric. ¶ þe .iij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon tyme, & p*r*incipali wh*an*ne þe*r* is myche mat*er*e, & þe enpostym is greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Wh*an*ne þou hast opened þe e*n*postym, þa*n* þou schalt cure hi*m* vp[2] as it is aforseid in þe cure of vlcus virulentu*m*. Þa*n* þou schalt fille þe wou*n*de þe*r*of w*ith* oold ly*n*nen cloop þat is whiȝt, anoon to .iij. daies [wiþ] mundificat*iu*is of ȝelkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iij. daies wiþ vng*uentu*m ap*ostolorum*[3] & oon of þe mundificat*iu*is þat schulen be seid i*n* þe antidotarie, & wiþ regendring þi*n*gis & drijng þi*n*gis. ¶ A colerik e*n*postym comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wiþ ony mater leid wiþoutforþ; þou shalt cure þis enpostym i*n* þe same maner as þou schalt enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Carbunculis schule*n* be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid herafte*r*. [4]**Vdimia** schal not be smiten yn wiþ repe*r*cussi*u*is[5] saue it schal be waastid awei i*n* þe firste bigy*n*nyng i*n* þis maner. Þou schalt purge hi*m* w*ith* trocis[6] de turbit, or wiþ anoþe*r* medicyn þat purgiþ fleume. Þa*n* stewe[7] þat lyme wiþ a decoccioun of absinthij, abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an ook, & make þe*r*of lie & wete þe*r*i*n*ne ly*n*ne*n* cloþis & leie he*m* vpon þe place hoot, & binde he*m* streite þe*r*to þat it hile al þe enpostym, & in þis maner þe mat*er*e þe*r*of schal be drawen awei // If it so be þat þe*r*e be ony blood medlid þe*r*wiþ, or if þe*r* haþ be leid þe*r*to ony maturatif so þat þe mater þe*r*of be rotid, þa*n* opene it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stro*n*ge*r* mundificat*iu*is þa*n* ony oþe*r* for þe hardnes of þe quitture & þe greetnes þe*r*of / þis is a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,[8] opoponac

[1 lf. 133]

.2. not to injure a blood vessel.

.3. to evacuate the pus slowly.

.4. to cut in the direction of the limb.

R

Choleric apostemas ripen slowly.

Nota.

Carbuncles

[4 lf. 133, bk.]

Udimia (Oedema) shall be treated with purging medicines.

Apply compresses.

A softening plaster used by Rasis .Auicen.

[2] *cure him vp.* Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "*be it flesched vp wiþ powdres & oynementes incarnatifes.*"

[3] Phillips. "*Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

[5] Lat. vdimia proprie non repereutitur.

[6] *trocisce*, Lat. trocisens. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.). "*a trosce of þe trosces maad aȝens scrophules.*" Vigo l. c. "*Trochisces* in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

[7] *stewe*, Lat. evapora.

[8] "*Galbanum*, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

an*a*, & make he*m* neische w*ith* oile of lilie i*n* a mort*er*, & grinde he*m* wel togidere. & þa*n* do þ*er*to fenigrec*um* & lynseed as myche as alle þe o þ*er*e & medle he*m* wel togidere, & herof leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wiþ þis oonly, or medle þ*er*wiþ fatte [1]figis & leie þis enplastre þ*er*to til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makiþ a*n* hard enpostym to bicome neische & resolueþ hi*m* wiþout ony swellyng / þer be*n* o þ*er*e manye medicyns þ*at* be*n* mollificatif & resoluyng þ*at* þou schalt finde i*n* þe antidotarie // A wat*ri* apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure hi*m* i*n* þe same maner as it is seid i*n* þe chapitre, wh*an*ne a ma*n*nes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal // Ventosu*m* apostema, þ*at* is apostym þ*at* is ful of wijnd. þou schalt cure it wiþ medicyns þ*at* *con*sumeþ wijnd wiþi*n*ne & wiþoute / wiþi*n*neforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel[2] & metis þ*at* swelliþ; wiþoutforþ wiþ oilis þ*at* consumeþ wijnd, or w*ith* þis oile, ℞. rue, cimini, se*min*is fenicli, anisi, carui, ameos[3], apij, an*a* .ʒ ß., cold oile lī. ß., do alle þes i*n* a viol of glas, & do þ*at* glas i*n* a vessel wiþ wat*er*, & make þe wat*er* seþe & kepe wel þe glas þ*er*on þ*at* it breke not, & wiþ þis oile anoynte þe place hoot / Item .℞. calcem and [4]distemp*er*e it wiþ swete wijn, & make þ*er*of as it were an emplastre & leie þ*er*vpon / ℞. oli*i* anetini[5] .ʒ ij., cere. ℥ ß., ysope þ*at* it be drie & poudrid. ℥ j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades[6] or flegmonides schule*n* be curid i*n* þe same maner þ*at* ben herisipula*m* & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, we wole*n* speke i*n* her p*ro*pre chapitre //

[1 lf. 134]

a wat*ri* emposty*m* must be treated like oedema.

a windi empost*ym*

Internal treatment; external treatment.

℞

[4 lf. 134, bk.]

℞

℞

¶ Antrax schal be curid wiþ avoiding of noious mat*er*e, & wiþ þi*n*ges þ*at* comfortiþ þe herte & þe v*er*tu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her v*er*tu failiþ, & su*m*me þ*at* ben late blood or p*ur*gid ben lost / þ*er*fore manie men be*n* agast for to lete he*m* blood or ʒeue he*m* ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel[7] if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete hi*m* blood adai, & i*n* þe same nyʒt I wole ʒeue hi*m* a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þa*n* it is folie for to lete hi*m*

Treatment of Anthrax.

First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,

if the patient is strong,

[2] *growel*, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

[3] *ameos*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

[5] *oleum anetinum*, oil of Fennel.

[6] Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

[7] *ech mesel*, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwylly*, Prompt. Parv.

blood or ȝeue hi*m* ony medicyn laxatif', saue take þe cure oonly i*n* goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat' bifel i*n* þe citee of' mediolane*nsis* þat' it' mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng' / þer was a ma*n* of' xxx. wy*nter* oold, [1]& an antrax come vpon hi*m* i*n* þe riȝt-side of' his necke, & he was so greet' woxe aboute his necke & his þrote, & he was so swolle*n*, þat' þe*re* was but' litil difference bitwixe þe gretnes of' hise schuldris & his necke. & neþeles I fo*n*d his ve*r*tu strong'. & I wiste wh*at*' sijknes it' w*as* bi a bladdre þ*at*' satt' þ*er* vpon, & w*as* i*n* þe riȝtside of' his necke, & þ*at*' was þe firste bigy*n*-nyng' of' his sijknes / & neþeles þ*er* is manye lechis of' greet' name þ*at*' cowde not' knowe þat' passiou*n* / Also I lete hi*m* blood i*n* boþe his armis, & drowe out' blood ynowȝ. & þo I dietide hi*m* as a ma*n* þ*at*' hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf' þe colature of' fruit' of' mirab*olani* cit*rini*,[2] þe which þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe chapitre of' allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þ*er*e þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose grou*n*de*n* wiþ grese. I foond neue*r*e bett*er*e medicyns i*n* þis caas þa*n* þese be*n* / For þe ma*n* was al dissolued of' his sijknes of' þe bren-nyng' & of' þe akynge, saue þe place þ*at*' was to-swoollen, was not' þe lasse, & þe ma*n* was not' þe more feblid for his laxatif', ne for no medicyn þ*at*' he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete hi*m* blood i*n* his oon arm, [3]& ȝaue hi*m* a medicyn laxatif i*n* lasse qua*n*tite þa*n* I dide raþ*er*e, & þa*n* þe swellynge aswagide miche, & i*n* þe place þ*er*e þe bl[a]ddre w*as* I fond a maner cruste as it' were a þi*n*g' þ*at* were bre*n*t' w*ith* fier & w*as* of' þe brede of' iij. ynchis. & wiþi*n*ne a fewe daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient' felide no greet' greu-au*n*ce. & i*n* þe same place þ*er*e þe bladdre w*as*, þ*er*e w*as* a deep vlcus. & þoruȝ þe greet' hole I siȝ þe þrote & þe gret' veines, & I putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf' þe pacient' good norisch*in*g' metis, & I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificati*uis*, til he w*as* al hool bi þe help of' god //

and leave the cure of a feeble patient in the hands of God.

The author relates how he cured a man, who had a big anthrax on his neck;

[1 lf. 135]

first he bled him,

then he used several medicines.

Nota

[3 lf. 135, bk.]

A scab appeared on the part,

and underneath a deeply-rooted ulcer, which he cured with cleansing medicines.

¶ Pustule þat' comeþ of' humours corrupt' as ignis p*er*sicus[4] & miliaris,[5] &[6] ffor*m*ica[7] schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þ*at*' purgiþ colre

Ignis persicus, Miliaris and Formica

[2] MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

[4] *ignis persicus*. Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

[5] De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27.944: "*amonge auetoures þis euel is i-clepid herpes milii oþer grannlesus, an euel ful of graynes. But swiche bleynes beþ litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris*, or *Pustularis*, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers."

[6] MS. ¶ instead of &.

[7] MS. *ffornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated with purging medicines.

& malancolie. & *þat* same medicyn schal *purge* humours *þat*ᵗ be
bre*nt*ᵗ, as fum*us* terre, cuscute, lappaciu*m* acutu*m*, cene,[1] absinthiu*m*
& o*þer*e mo / Also þou schalt voide þe mat*er*e wiþ medicyns *þat*ᵗ
comforte*n* þe herte, & kepiþ *þat*ᵗ þe venym ne smite notᵗ to þe 4
herte; *þan* *þou* schaltᵗ cure þe place w*ith* *þing*is *þat*ᵗ makiþ cold vpon
þe place. & wh*an*ne vlc*us* is *þer*on *þan* itᵗ is no nede, saue drie itᵗ
[[2] lf. 136] vp as itᵗ is aforseid i*n* þe cure [2]ofᵗ vlcera. Saue abouteforþ *þou*
schaltᵗ leie colde *þing*is til þe cure be p*er*fitli do / & *þer*e come ony 8

Strengthen the patient's heart.

bifallingᵗ *þer*to,[3] *þan* alwei ȝeue hi*m* medicyns for to comforte þe
herte, *þat*ᵗ be*n* forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle *þinges*
p*r*una[4] be*n* good / And formicam þou schaltᵗ bre*nn*e / fforwhi a
cauterie drawiþ out al þe mat*er*e *þat*ᵗ is corruptᵗ & waastiþ itᵗ awei. 12

herpes estiomenes cura

¶ Herpes estiomen*us*[5] is curid aft*er* þe purgaciou*n* ofᵗ þe mat*er*e,
*þat*ᵗ þou schaltᵗ algatis take hede for to do / ifᵗ his v*er*tu be strongᵗ.
& þou schaltᵗ algate aboute þe sijknes[6] leie a defensifᵗ ofᵗ bole &

Auic*en*

terra sigillata & oile ofᵗ ro. & vinegre / *þis* defensifᵗ, as seiþ .A., & I 16

Apply a medicine which protects the limb from corruption,

haue ofte p*re*ued itᵗ, *þis* defendiþ eu*er*i lyme fro corrupciou*n*, & *þis*
wole notᵗ suffre *þat*ᵗ þe mat*er*e schal make noon vlceraciou*n* ne no
fretyngᵗ. & vpon þe place *þat*ᵗ is corruptᵗ & deed, þou schaltᵗ leie an

and cauterize the slough.

hootᵗ iren, & do awei alle þe p*ar*tis *þat* be*n* corrupt. & *þis* þou my*ȝ*tᵗ 20
do w*ith* a medicyne corosifᵗ, saue an hootᵗ iren is bett*er*e / Wh*an*ne
þe rotid mat*er*e is aweie, *þan*ne make clene þe place wiþ a mundificatif ofᵗ iuys ofᵗ ache, & do *þer*to a litil mirre. & wh*an*ne þe place
[[7] lf. 136, bk.] is wel clensid, *þan* do *þer*to a medici*n* [7]for to regendre fleisch, & 24
*þan*ne drie itᵗ vp /

Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ iij° c°

THow*ȝ* we han maad a gen*er*al tale ofᵗ enpostyms, neþeles apostym
i*n* eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / *þer*fore I wole make to eu*er*y 28

---

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and therfore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

[1] *cene* for *sene*.

[3] Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

[4] Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuvat prunam et formicam urere. The translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums). Compare page 208, note 2.

[5] Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereth the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge or gnawynge herpes."

[6] Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta *ægritudinem* defensiuum. . .

enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be[1] enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
4 bocium[2] / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[m]what holowȝ, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it
8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes þombe, & þei weren greuous to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
12 þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Wh*anne* I siȝ wel þat þei hadden her bigynnynge of þe scolle boon, I [4]wolde not enterrnete þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

[3]reta mirabilis

A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[4 lf. 137]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be of neische mater or of rotid mater, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende[5] þe scolle wiþ
20 liquid mater or corrupt mater. & if þe mater þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful
24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Wh*anne* þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne avoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ peeis wet in oil of rosis, & sugre molten þeron, &
28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til [6]þe place be wel maad elene. Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & oþere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde // ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon
32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leneþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of affadillorum, or of sum

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it, ◁ and cleanse the wound.

[6 lf. 137, bk.]

Nodus, must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

[1] *be*, above line.

[2] This passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulmosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.

[3] Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therfore called Rhete, for thys panniele is compouned onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

[5] *schende.* Lat.: quia sic posset cranium infecere liquida materia.

Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the particular position of the child in the mother's womb. [3 lf. 138]

li3t corosif or vnguentum viride, þat þe rotis þerof mowe frete awei þerwiþ; & þan regendre & þan drie it vp // Watir þat is gaderid in children hedis,[1] ouþer it is wiþinne þe scolle or wiþoute þe scolle / If it be withynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so perilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If þe watir be withoutforþ, it mai be curid wiþ anointing of oile of camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe forheed, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle[2] þerof, & oon aboue þe 8 hindere celle. Þese cauterijs wiþ þe forseid anoyntingis driep & waastiþ þe matere of þe watir // ¶ Þe water þat comeþ in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne [3]þe maris of a womman is watri, & þe child þat lijþ þerine lijþ foldyng adounward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture falliþ adoun & fyndiþ a void place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makiþ a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ iiij .co An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

A Postyme þat comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of a mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die eretico, whanne þat a mannes kynde is not so mi3ti for to putte out þe gretnes of þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oþer avoiding, & þan kynde worchiþ 20 what it mai, & driueþ þe matere an hi3 to þe heed & abidiþ in þe rotis of þe eeren, & þere it engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it is perilous, for it is so ny3 þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / It is often fatal. þis manere enpostym ofte sleep a man whanne þe matere comeþ 24 violently // Þe matere of þis enpostym, ouþer it is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof ben aforseid / Þe [4 lf. 138, bk.] cure of [4]þis enpostym mai not bigynne with repercussiuis, saue it mote bigynne wiþ mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat puttiþ out þe 28 matere / Waische þe place wiþ a decoccioun of camomille soden þerinne / & þanne aftir þat anoynte þe same place with oile of camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not þat þou leie in his eere oile of bittir almaundis, 32 for it is a greet help // ¶ If þe mater be deep & it be hard for to drawe it out, þan it were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

[1] Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

[2] *welle*, Lat. fontinella.

for to helpe to drawe out' þe mat*er*e, & aftir resolue þe mat*er*e & leie þ*er*to mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If' þe mat*er*e wole not' be resolued i*n* þis maner, saue it' bigynneþ to be quitt*ur*e þ*er*on, þa*n* wiþ temp*er*e maturati*u*is þ*at*' be*n* no*t* to hote, make þe enpostym quitture / Wh*an*ne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng' of' þe enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an i*n*strume*n*t' þ*at* is competent' þ*er*to / & þou muste be wel war þ*at* þou touche no veyne, ne noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þ*er*of' miȝt come [1]myche p*er*el, for þ*er*e be*n* ne*r*ues i*n* þe same place, if' þei were kutt' or p*r*ickid, þe pacient' miȝte lese his vois for ene*r*e / & if' þ*er*e were ony veyne kutt' þ*er*of', þ*er* miȝt' come greet' p*er*el þ*er*of'. & wh*an*ne þe place is opened, þa*n* make þe place clene wiþ mundificati*u*is, þ*at* schulen be seid i*n* þe antidotarie / & wh*an*ne þe place is p*er*fitli clene, þa*n*ne make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure p*er*fitli / For bi yuel cury*n*g' i*n* þis place miȝt' engendre a festre, þ*at* ofte tyme comeþ of' an enpostym /

If pus is formed, open the apostema, taking care not to injure a blood-vessel or a nerve.

[1] If. 139]

Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

¶ v°. c°.

A Postyms þ*at* ben i*n* þis place, or it' is wiþoutforþ i*n* þe senewis, or in þe braun, or it' is wiþi*n*neforþ bi þe place þ*at*' a man*n*es mete goiþ doun, or bi þe þrote, or it' is bitwixe þe .ij. placis i*n* a place þ*at*' is clepid ismon.[2] & comou*n*li þe enpostyms þ*at*' ben i*n* þis place, comeþ of' blood, or of' fleume, & ful seelden it' comeþ of' colre, & more latt*er*e of' malancoli. Þe humours þ*at*' be*n* i*n* þe cause,[3] þou schalt' knowe bi signes aforseid / If' þe mat*er*e be i*n* þe braun of' the necke wiþoutforþ, þ*at* þou miȝt knowe [4]bi schewing' of' þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt' knowe wh*an*ne þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, if' þ*er* is no lettin*g*' i*n* ysophag*us* þ*er*e þe mete schulde go adoun, & if' wijnd be not' stoppid, þa*n* þou miȝt' wite wel þ*at* þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schewing' þ*at*' is outward / And if' þe enpostym is wiþi*n*ne, þa*n* þe pacient' schal not' swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his breeþ / If' þe enpostym þ*at*' is wiþi*n*ne swelle greetly, his iȝen wolen swelle þ*er*wiþ, & he schal not' suffre his tu*n*ge i*n* his mouþ, & he ne schal

Apostemas of the neck or the throat, are either external or internal.

In the former case, an outward swelling will be seen, but the swallowing and breathing will not be affected.

[4] If. 139, bk.]

If the apostema is internal, swallowing and breathing will be difficult.

[2] *ismon. Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "*Ysinon* est inter ysofagum et tracheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon.* From ἰσθμός, neck, narrow passage. See ἰσμός in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944, fol. 49 bk.: "*& it happiþ þat þis euel matere is somtyme al i-gedred wiþinne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe breeþ from þe weye of þe mete & drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleeþ in on day.*"

[3] See page 194, note 8.

not' speke, & þer wole go out' miche spume of' his mouþ / þanne summe leechis þat' ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his þrote & breke þe enpostym, & in þat' maner þe pacient' mai be delyuered; saue þis maner worching' is not' sure, for in þis maner manie men 4 dieþ, & þe deeþ comeþ not' of' þe sijknes, saue it' is defaute in þe leche[1] / þis maner sijknes þat' is so hid wiþinneforþ, it' mai be helid wel in þe bigynnyng' in þis maner[2] / If' þe enpostym be hoot', þou schalt' lete him blood in þe veine þat' is clepid basilica, & if þe 8 patient haþ had þe [3]sijknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou schalt' lete him blood in þe middil veyne of' þe arm þat' is clepid mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost', & principali if' he be strong' & ful of' fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt' 12 lete him blood in þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat' þou do no þing' aftir her counseil þat' seien þat' in þe firste bigynnyng' þou schalt' lete him blood in veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat' in þe heed veine or in sum oþere place. For in þis manere leting' blood, 16 if' his bodi were replet', he mizt' liztli be aslekid// ¶ Whanne þou hast' lete him blood as it' is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme wiþ a decoccioun of' ro., sumac,[4] balaustiarum, lentium, & gallarum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,[5] or tordis of' 20 a sparow, or of' an hen, or þe tord of' an hound þat' etiþ manie boonys & noon oþer mete,[6] or a childis tord dried while it' is soukyng'. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat' etiþ oonly boonis & of' hennis, satureye[7] ana, & make þerof' poudre & distempere it' wiþ 24 water & hony, & make þerof' a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water of' barley, & he schal no þing' ete, saue a þing' maad of' wheete-[8]bran in þis maner[9] / Take newe bran of' whete & easte þeron hoot' water & hele it' & lete it' stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it' in a morter 28 wiþ a pestel & cole it', & þanne seþe it' wiþ a litil salt' & zeue it' þe

Some physicians 'break' this apostema with a piece of wood, but that is dangerous.

First, bleed the patient either from the Vena [3 lf. 140]

Basilica or Mediana,

on the next day from a vein under the tongue,

then give a gargarisme, mixed with the exeremeents of a sparrow, hen, dog, or a child.

The patient shall drink barley-water [8 lf. 140, bk.]

℞

and eat a preparation of wheat-bran.

[1] *it is defaute in þe leche*, Lat. medico imputatur.

[2] Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

[4] *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

[5] *diameron*, διαμώρων. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

[6] By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

[7] *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 30 (xv), sauereye.

[9] Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de furfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Candaros vel candarusium—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from χόνδρος, grain, groat.

pacient' / & do þeron penidis.[1] & if' he mai not' swolowe it' adoun, þanne sette a litil ventuse in þe welle of' his necke[2] with fier & þan he schal swolowe, & anoynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wiþ oile
4 of' camomille. & vpon þe anoyntyng' leie wolle vnwaischen,[3] & make a sutil plastre of' a nest' of' irundinis, & is good for þe squinacie,[4] & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest' of irundinis & boile it' longe in watir, & þanne cole it' þoruȝ a sene þat' þe grete
8 gobetis moun be cast' awei / þan take þe rotis of' lilie & seþe hem in oþer water & rotis of' bismalue, & þe rote of' brionie & leues of' malue & bismalue, & violet', & peritorie.[5] & whanne þei ben boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wiþ water of' irundinum þat'
12 is forseid, & do þerto leueyne & mele of' fenigreci, & þan do þerto oile or grese, & make herof' an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to resolue enpostym & make it' quitture, wheþer [6]it' be wiþinne or wiþoute, & make it' abrood upon a clooþ & leie it' vpon hoot'. & [6 lf. 141]
16 anointing' is good wiþ oile of' camomille medlid wiþ butter þat it' be oold & not' salt', & after þe anoyntyng' leie þervpon wolle vnwaische // ¶ [7]If' þe enpostym be wiþinne, it' is good þat' me leie þerto no repercussinis, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / ℞,
20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole hem, & make þerof' a gargarisme; or water of' figis medlid wiþ butter, þat' makiþ maturatif' eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

℞ Irundines *id est* swalowes.

How to prepare this plaster.

In case of an inward apostema use a gargle. ℞

[1] *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apotheearies wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. penide; Lat. penidium, from πενίον: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

[2] MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

[3] *wolle vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. lana succida. Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia:* recens lana tonsa succida appellata est.

[4] *squinacie*, Lat. squinatia, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

[5] *peritorie*, Lat. parietaria; wall-pellitory.

[7] The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wiþinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolued ne do awei wiþ repercussiuis, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resoluitur: vti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwiþ. 21, 22. medled wiþ butter] & butter & wijn. þat makiþ — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Wh*an*ne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswag*ing* of þe akynge, & if þe enpostym schewe wiþoutforþ, þa*n*ne opene it wiþ an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & wh*an*ne it is opened, make it clene 4 wiþ mundificat*iu*is þat schule*n* be seid *in* þe antidotarie / And if þe enposty*m* be wiþi*n*neforþ, þa*n* þou schalt not breke it wiþ þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a garg*arism* þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiar*um*, balaust*ie*, alum*in*is 8 iamini[1] & seþe he*m* i*n* wat*er* & cole it & make [2]þ*er*of a garg*arism*, for þis garg*arism* wole breke enpostym / Wh*an*ne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wiþ hoot wat*er*, & dissolue þ*er*i*n*ne butt*er* & oile of viol*ets*, & make þ*er*of a garg*arism*, & 12 lete hi*m* vse þis garg*arism* til al þe mat*er*e be drawe out, & þa*n* aft*er* þat make hi*m* a garg*arism* of liquiricie,[3] yreos & tamarisci / If þe mat*er*e be coold, þa*n* þou muste vse hott*er*e garg*arism*, & þa*n* þou muste vse mundificat*iu*is þat p*er* be þ*er*i*n*ne mirre, sarcocolle,[4] 16 þat schulen be seid *in* þe antidotarie *in* þe chap*iter* of mundificat*iu*is. ¶ It falliþ sumtyme þat for reume þat falliþ adou*n* of a ma*n*nis heed, þ*er* wexiþ *in* þe rote of þe tu*n*ge a man*er* rou*n*d þi*n*g in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lettiþ a man þat he mai not wel 20 drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & *in* þis man*er* þou schalt cure hi*m* as it is forseid wiþ þi*n*gis þat voidiþ þe mat*er*e & wiþ resoluynge þi*n*gis. ¶ I wole sette *in* þis place a cure þat bifel *in* þe citee of mediolane*nsis* of a ladi þat was .L. wynt*er* oold, & hadde a squi- 24 nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir neeke tofore wiþi*n*ne & wiþoute,

Rannla vndr the toung

R

[2 If. 141, bk.]

an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

1, 2. þe aswaging] ceesi*n*g. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þa*n*. 5. and] *om.* 6, 8. wiþi*n*neforþ — — galle] al wiþi*n*ne & wole not breke wiþ þe garg*arism* þat is aforseid of butt*er* & figis & wat*er* & wijn, þa*n* þou schalt breke hi*m* wiþ a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wiþ a garg*arism* of gallar*um*. (*Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate prædicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.*) 9. & seþe — — þerof a gargarism] *om.* 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butt*er* þerinne. 12. & make þ*er*of] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] *om.* mat*er*e be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawe*n* awei aft*er* þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wiþ liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

[1] *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1. "*Alumen iamem, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma,* idem."—*Matth. Sylv.* "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

[3] *liquiricie.* lycoryce, *Pr. Parv.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

[4] *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia." *Halle. Table*, p. 109.

[1] sane wiþoutforþ þe swelling was moost, & þe womman miȝte not speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of a ȝong man þat was my scoler, and he cowde not wel fare þerwiþ, & þo he was in dispeir of hir lijf, I was sent after & foond hir in wickide staat,[2] for sche eet no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche durste not slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I tastide hir pous, & it was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of þe enpostym, & I knewe wel þat sche schulde be raþere achekid þan þe enpostym wolde breke wiþoute or withynne, for þe matere was so greet / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was moost gaderid for to engendre quitture, & it was moost able vndir þe chyn, & I felide þe place wiþ myn hond & tastide it aboute þat I miȝte be war of nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, & þere I drowe out matere þat was corrupt, & it was foul stynkynge matere, & al miȝte I not avoide anoon. & þo þe pacient hadde bettere hir breeþ, & hir pous was confortid, [3] for þe lungis miȝte take yn eir, & þerwiþ þe herte was comfortid, & þan I ȝaf hir broþ, & þat ȝede out þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost part. þo I studiede how I miȝte best do, & I lete make a pipe of siluir, and putte it in at hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat it miȝte fulfille þe place of þe þrote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundificatiuis & maturatiuis for to quitture þe toþer deel of þe matere, & so I kepte it til þer come out of þe wounde a greet gobet of viscous matere & stynkyng, & was schape as it were a greet gutt. & þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute, þe stynking wente awei þerwiþ, & þe womman bigan to be stronger, & whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it vp & soudide it; & in þis maner þe pacient was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt not abide til þe enpostym breke him-silf, saue þou schalt opene it as it is aforseid / & if it be not rotid, þan make it more maturatif, & opene it as it is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat þou miȝte [4] not abide to longe wiþ þe openyng: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe not longe endure wiþouten eir.

[1 lf. 142]

she could neither speak nor eat,

nor sleep for fear of choking.

Lanfranc opened the apostema with a razor, where it was most ripe.

The patient could breathe,

[3 lf. 142, bk.]

but her food went through the open wound;

Lanfranc introduced a silver tube,

and the gangrenous parts were removed by suppuration.

When cold matter suppurates, open the apostema, before it breaks by itself.

[4 lf. 143]

[2] *in wickide staat*, in statu pessimo.

/ Of enpostym of subcilio /[1]

¶ vjo. co. If there is a hot apostema in the arm-pit, bleed from the Vena nigra or basilica. If the apostema is cold, use mild medicines,

THis maner of enpostym haþ no nede of repercussiuis for causis þat ben aforseid, saue it is[2] greet nede þat he be avoidid wel wiþ purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is elepid vena nigra,[3] or in þe veyne þat is elepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe matere wiþ medicyns maad of turbit or sum oþer medicyn þat falliþ þerfore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou schalt take þerto wiþ medicyns þat haue not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiest þerto þingis þat ben to strong drawing, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe more / Þerfore þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of camomille, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting schal be sotil. & if þis suffise not, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & whanne it is rotid þou schalt opene[4] it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Sane if[5] þere be glandule þeron, as it falliþ ofte, & it be not ouir al rotid, as in oon place hard anoþir place neische, þan þou schalt haue þis in certein, þat þis passioun schal be elepid bubo, & þe cure þerof is hard.[6] For if þou drawist out þe matere þat is neische,[7] þe matere þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof sclirosis or a festre, & it wole make a man yuel disposid & feuerous, as G. seiþ.[8] & þerfore aswage þe akynge & þan make rotyng wiþ maturatiuis; for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard. & whanne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it so be þat it breke bi it-silf or it be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie pleynlier.

and open it, when it is ripe. [4 lf. 144]

bubo. is difficult to heal.

Galion.

[1] Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis; titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

[2] *is*, above line.

[3] Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

[5] *sare if*, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

[6] Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis. [7] MS. inserts &.

[8] Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "*And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele allthouȝe þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he.*"

An enpostyme of þe helpers /[1]

¶ vijo. co/

THis enpostym if' it' be hoot', þan lete him blood in þe arm aforȝens, & not' in þe same side in þe veyne þat' is clepid basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto repercussiuis,[2] & if' repercussiuis suffisen not', þan resolue it' & leie maturatiuis þerto, & þan abide til it' be perfitli[3] quitturid, but' if' þe matere be so violent' þat' it' were in poynt[4] to schende þe lyme, þan opene it' & be wel war of' the braun þat' is in þat' place / Manie men þat' ben vnkunnyng' & supposen þat' place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,[5] makiþ þeron a deep kuttyng', & supposiþ to haue gret' worschip þerof'; & manie idiotis wolen preise hem[6] wel þerfore. & þan þe lacertis þerof' ben hurt'; & whanne þe lacertis ben soudid aȝen, þan þe lyme þat' it' seruede fore schal be contract', wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost' in sum partie or in al / þerfore whanne þou wolt' kutte þis enpostym, þou schalt' but' kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not' to depe bi no maner wei for drede of' þe braun, & of' senewis, & of' veynes & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto mundificatinis. If' þe openyng' be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be moost' quitturid, þere be wel war þat' þou opene not' þe enpostym abone þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiþer[7] wiþinne ne wiþoute. & also nyȝ þe poynt' of' þe elbowe it' is perilous, for it' is gret' hap if' it' be euere soudid. & þouȝ it' be soudid, þe mouynge of' his arme schal be lost'. If' þer falle ony enpostym in þis place, & it' come of' greet' matere so þat' his bodi be replet', þan he mote haue greet' avoidyng' wiþ laxatiuis, & þan resolue þe matere, and worche as it' is aforseid in þe general chapiter. In þe same maner þou schalt' cure þe enpostym of' his armis & of' hise hondis.

¶ Panaricium[8] is an enpostym þat' is in þe heed of' a mannes fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiþe hoot', & greuous, & reed, & ful of' fier, & sumtyme it' makiþ a man to haue þe feuere, & sumtyme it' fretiþ awei al þe poynt' of' a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of' þis enpostym is, þat' first' þou schalt' lete him blood, so þat' alle þingis

In case of an apostema on the arm, bleed the Basilic Vein, [2 lf. 144, bk.]

and open the apostema when it is ripe.

Unskillful physicians, in cutting too deep, hurt the muscles, and so the patient may lose his arm.

[7 lf. 145]

panaricium, an apostema of the fingers, near the nails.

Treatment: First bleed the patient,

[1] Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii. [3] *curid*, erased.

[4] *in poynt*, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "*And in such poynt the body bileueth.*" Wright. *Popular Treatise*. p. 140.—"*Engeloud & normandie . in god point he broȝte.*" *Reb. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint. [5] MS. inserts &.

[6] *silf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.

[8] Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. s. v. redubiæ.

if his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[2 lf. 145, bk.]

falle *per*fore as elde & stre*n*kþe & eustu*m*. & þa*n* þou schalt make hi*m* an enplastre of vinegre & opiu*m*, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a ly*n*nen cloop wet i*n* a decoeciou*n* of psillij, or anoynte it wiþ an oynement þat is coold. & in[1] al maner þou sehalt [2]take hede to do awei þe greet hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupciou*n* / If þe aki*n*ge & þe bre*n*nynge go not awei i*n* þis mane*r*, & it be i*n* wei for to quitture,[3] þa*n* leie þe*r*vpon scabiose grounden wiþ grese & do þe cure þe*r*to, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of antrax & carbunculis. & enpostyms þat come*þ* i*n* ioynctis þou schalt fy*n*de i*n* her p*ro*pre place of akynge of ioy*n*ctes /

Apostym wiþoutforþ aboute þe spa*u*dis and þe gibbositees[4] //

¶ viij°. c°.

If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

and open it when it is ripe.

A Postym þat come*þ* aboute the spa*u*dlis wiþoutforþ, leie þou noo*n* repe*r*cussif þe*r*to, saue it is bette*r* to drawe þe mate*r*e outward. First þou schalt pu*r*ge hi*m*, for it is greet nede i*n* þis place, & þa*n* þou schalt leie þe*r*to resoluinge þi*n*gis & maturatiuis; & wha*n*ne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf,[5] & p*r*incipali i*n* a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quitture, & þan þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / In þis place þou schalt take [6]hede þat ofte tyme wha*n*ne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wiþoutforþ, þa*n* it brekiþ i*n*ward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & wha*n*ne it is to-broke, þe pacie*n*t feliþ but litil greuau*n*ce þerof, & þan þe quitture leueþ wiþi*n*ne, & i*n* long tyme herof come*þ* a festre. þe*r*fore þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it wha*n*ne it is quitturid, & þa*n* leie þe*r*to mundificatiuis & cure it vp, as it is aforseid i*n* o*þe*re enpostyms /

[6 lf. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

¶ If it so be þat þe*r*e engendre a festre þe*r*on, or it be maad clene & entre i*n*ward, þa*n* he mote vse waischingis þat be*n* mu*n*dificatif, & caste it in wiþ an instrument m*aa*d in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þe*r*of be streit wiþoutforþ, þa*n* þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe piþ of eldre, or of a sponge, or of malu*m* terre,[7] or

[1] *in*, above line.

[3] in *wei for to quitture*, Lat. in via maturationis.

[4] *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

[5] Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

[7] "*Malum terre*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g^e dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. Wr. Wü., 133. 20.

brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of þe festre to wexe more wide þan it was, þat þe ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe
4 maner of [1]a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt sepe hony & mirre in [1 lf. 146, bk.]
watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, &
8 principali if þe place be wiþouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt caste into þe festre wiþ an instrument as it is aforseid, & make þat þe pacient turne hidir & þidir, vpward & dounward, þat it mowe waische wel þe place þere þe quitture is. & þan make þe
12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowȝe þat al þe quitture mai goon out wiþ þe decoccioun. & whanne it is al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anoynte it in oile þat þe wounde close not togidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe
16 waisching come out of þe festre without ony quitture. & whanne þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out [2]be bicome hard &
20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & oþere þingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan dric it & soude it.

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of [2 lf. 147] the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

24 ¶ Also it bifalliþ þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, & þat comeþ of cowȝinge þat puttiþ out þe matere, & also it comeþ of greet wynd þat puttiþ out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowȝing, as almaundis
28 groundeu wiþ penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,[4] semen citoniorum[5] ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make herof a souping medicyn,[6] þat it be as þicke as hony. & whanne
32 þe cowȝinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wiþ rotis of altea, &

Mitigatio[3] Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body.

Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

[3] MS. *Metegacho.*

[4] Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum.* Tragacantha is a brode. & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselues al about. There eleaneth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somwhat swete in tast, which they cal commenly dragagantum."

[5] *citonium* = Cotonea malus, Cydonea, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

[6] *a souping medicyn*, Lat. medicina sorbilis.

leues of malue, & fenigree, & lyne seed soden *in* watir, & þis schal be east vpon þe enpostym wiþ a vessel holden an hiȝe þe*re* from / [1 lf. 147, bk.] þ*an*ne aftirward þou schalt [1]dissolne þe mat*er*e & make it neische w*ith* medyeyns þat ben forseid *in* hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp 4 as it is aforseid *in* þe enpostyms of wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat comeþ of þe passiou*n* of þe riggeboon, whan*n*e þei ben of þe ioynt, is incurable whanne it is co*n*fermed /

Of an enpostym apperi*n*ge i*n* þe mouþ of þe stom*ac* / 8

¶ ix° c°
If there is an Apostema at the stomach, the liver, or the spleen, strengthen the affected part,

WHaune þ*er*e schewiþ an enposty*m* *in* þe mouþ of þe stomac & aboute þe regiou*n* of þe lyuer & of þe splene: þouȝ su*mm*en wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule[2] it is good & p*ro*fitable to comforte þe place wiþ oile of mast*ic*, & oile of 12 spica, & oile of lilie, & wiþ cold enplastris of rosis, & of absinth*io*, squinanto, cip*er*o, citonijs wiþ mele of barli & o þ*er*e þi*n*gis. & þou schalt be wel war of rep*er*cussiuis, wh*an*ne þe enpostym is nyȝ ony p*ri*ncipal lyme, saue þou schalt leie þ*er*to resoluy*ng* & maturatif 16 þi*n*gis. & loke þat þei be not medlid wiþ no þi*n*gis þat ben reper-

apply resolving medicines, but beware of repellents.

[3 lf. 148] eussif; for if þou leidist rep*er*cussiuis vpon þe stomak, or [3]þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be e*n*feblid þ*er*wiþ, & to al þe accio*n* of þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes seruеþ principaly for 20 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt not vse *in* þis caas pure maturatiuis, ne pure rep*er*cussiuis, ne colde þi*n*gis / What schalt þou do *in* þis caas? þou schalt avoide þe mat*er*e, & þou schalt comforte þe place w*ith* stiptikis, & temp*er*e attractiuis, & do awei þe 24

This apostema easily gets indurated, and causes dropsy.

mat*er*e. & if þou miȝt not, þa*n* resolue þe mat*er*e, for it is greet perel[4] of þis enpostym, for it wole liȝtli turne *in* to sclirosym, & þa*n* it wole be hard to resolue, & aftirward it wole be cause of þe dropesie / þerfore if þou seest[5] þat þe enposty*m* bicome hard, þa*n* 28 þou muste leie þ*er*to mollificatiuis & wiþ comfortatiuis. & þou muste be *in* þis caas ful wijs. & wh*an*ne þe enposty*m* is maturid, þa*n* opene it as it is aforseid, & leie þ*er*to mundificatiuis & cure vp þe enpostym as it is aforseid. 32

// Of an enposty*m* þat comeþ i*n* iguine .i*d est* þe gryndis

¶ x. c°/ [6 lf. 148, bk.] APostym comeþ ofte*n* time *in* iguine for vlcera of þe ȝerde & of þe feet, for [6]þe place is discendi*ng* adou*n* of humours to þat 36

[2] *rule*, above line. [4] *perel*, above line. [5] *seest*, in margin.

place,[1] & þan it is not so greet drede[2] þerof.[3] Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resolue in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þer-
4 wiþ þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaische, & if it resolue not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille[4] his dieting, & leie þerto resoluyng
8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resoluyng þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
12 makiþ maturatif & waastiþ it sotilly & drieþ it / If þou myȝt not resolue it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

℞

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

℞

Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

16 IN þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde [5] þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynetis; saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid
20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetymes an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wiþinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[cras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-
24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wiþ þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quitture, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xj. c°.

[5 If. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.

ypocras.

[1] Lat.: Sæpe prouenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

[2] *drede*, above line.

[3] Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "*This seeknesse is cleped bubo or dragunceell,*[a] *or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lynere to þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his ȝerde for filþehede of wommen or of oþer cause.*"

[4] *sotille*, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare *sotilen* with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—*Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

[a] Dufr. *Gloss.*: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."

Apostym of þe ȝerde & ballokis /

xij. c°.

RIȝt as enpostyms eomeþ in oþere lymes, riȝt so þei eomen in a mannes ȝerde & in hise ballokis, of humours hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou miȝt knowe. Sumtyme a mannes ȝerde swelliþ with wynd, þat þou miȝt knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat ben aforseid. & it falliþ ofte to ȝonge children,[1] & also þis enpostym þou miȝt knowe [2]in þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no differenee bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat oþer partie of his bodi.

A windy apostema of the yard occurs frequently with children.

[2 lf. 149, bk.]

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe ȝerde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat engendriþ blood or colre. Þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þat ben maad in þis maner. ℞, cortiees granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe hem in water til þei dissolue, & þan grinde hem in a morter wiþ oile of roses & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þeron hoot / Also take succi portulaee siluestris, & olium rosarum & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a lynnen clooþ & leie it aboute þe ȝerde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater ceessiþ, þan do þerto mele of barly & of benis, or distempere þese wiþ þe ȝelke of an ey & wiþ iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ awey, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis [3]& of fenigree & camomille distemperid with gotis talow / If þis enpostym gadere quitture & vlcera, þan cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe ȝerde.

A hot apostema of the yard and the testes is treated with blood-letting, a suitable diet, ℞ a hot plaster, ℞ and dressings.

[3 lf. 150]

¶ A coold empostym þat is in þe ballokis schal be curid wiþ anoynting of þe matere wiþ medieyns or wiþ scharpe suppositorijs; for þis drawiþ þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þat þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a morter til it bieome al poudre, & þan distempere it wiþ oximel maad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolue þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. Þis is auieens medicyns.

A cold apostema of the testes is treated with an ointment and suppositories. ℞ A plaster for an indurated apostema.

¶ If a mannes ȝerde be swollen wiþ wijnd & þe cause be hoot, þan lete him blood; if it be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

℞

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuvenibus calidis.

partis, of wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in coold water til it bicome as it were a whit oynement, & herwiþ [1]anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þan þou schalt make him caste, & þou schalt ȝeue him agnus castus,[2] & seed of rue & comyn & anise & opere þingis þat waastiþ wijnd, & make an enplaster of þese þingis þat districeþ wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat gilbert made for swellyng of a mannes ȝerde & it is mitigatif .℞. crummis of whit breed & grinde hem in a morter & tempere hem wiþ watir, & þan boile hem til þei bicome þicke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leic it vpon hoot // If a mannes ȝerde be swollen wiþ hete of liggyng bi a womman, þus þou schalt helpe him / Take leues of wiþi & seþe hem in water & baþe his ȝerde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues of malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof a plastre /

A plaster for a cold windy apostema.

[1 lf. 150, bk.]

A plaster for a hot windy apostema.

.℞.

A lenitive plaster of Gilbert.

℞

The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /[3]

¶ xiij.

CUre of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost oon, saue herof is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost part of malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most part of fleume, & ben liȝter to resolue / In boþe causis it is [4]necessarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf maad of turbit is good þerfore þat is aforseid in þe chapitre of allopucia, or in þis maner as .A. makiþ it / ℞ turbit zinzi,[5] zucare .ʒ .ij, & ȝeue þis ofte, or trociscus de turbit maad wiþ diarubarbe, & þou must sotile his dictyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no water, & he schal holde his heed an hiȝ, & he schal kepe him fro wepinge, & he schal not, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þervpon, & þou schalt anoynte þe place with oile of camomille, & wiþ oile of

Scrophula is caused by Melancholy; Glandula by Phlegm.

[4 lf. 151]

These apostemas are treated with purging.

℞

The patient shall neither drink water, nor weep, nor sleep on a full stomach.

[2] Besides the names given in *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. Agnus castus, there are: "*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c., toutsayne." Wr. Wü. p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet.* A greene Forest, fol. 39. De Propr. Rer. (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 *a*): "*Agnus Castus is an herbe hoot and dryne and haþ vertu to kepe men & wommen chaste a plinius seiþ.* ¶ *Þerfore wommen of Rome rsede to bere wiþ hem þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and serviee for dede men, whanne þey moste nedes lyre chaste for eymyn honestee.* ¶ *Þis herbe is alway grene as dyascorides seiþ, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is nameliche y-eleped agnus castus.*"

[3] Sl. 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "*Beeanse þat þe eure of scrophules & glaundules, as who seith, is bothe oone, but þer is a differenee be as moche as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malaucolye . . .*"

[5] MS. ZZ.

.℞. lilie, & wiþ þis oile þat is apreued / ℞, radices electerij,[1] radices malue viscі,[2] & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water, & make þe water to seþe, & be war þat þou saue þe glas fro breking. 4

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

& wiþ þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolle vnwaische / And if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat it be freisch / & oold,[3] or þis medicyne / ℞ staphisacre, seminis-lini,[4] farini orobi, resine [5]albe & 8

.℞. [5 lf. 151, bk.] ℞

Another prepared with dove's-dung.

make herwiþ an enplastre wiþ ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þat is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,[6] boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a þicke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12 as þou seest þat þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þat it nediþ. ¶ Also diaculon[7] rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goiþ awei, & sum 16 þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluyng þingis //

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood; it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20 hard & wole not bicome maturatif. Þou schalt [not][8] haste to opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miȝt, til it be al rotid, & þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & oþere 24 liȝt corosiuis. & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,[9] ne noon

[10 lf. 152]

violent [10]þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makiþ clene & also quitturiþ þe remenaunt of þe matere / Þou must take greet dili- 28 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

[1] Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "*Elacterium* succus cucurbite agrestis idem. sed *electerides* sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." Vigo *Interpr.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocomber."

[2] *malua viscum* = Althæa officinalis, marsh-mallow.

[3] Some words omitted. Lat.: cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

[4] MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri.*

[6] *partes æquales* om.

[7] "*Diachylon*, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

[8] *not* om. Lat.: Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

[9] *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." Vigo *Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpigmente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte þer engendriþ þerof festris / ¶ If þou desirist to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng, loke wher glandula or scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat
4 þer be no veine þere nyȝ. Þan take him vp wiþ þi lift hond & drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe necke, & be war þou touche not þe clooþ þat he is folde þerinne, & þane score[1] him & drawe him out al hool with þe clooþ, & if þer
8 leue ony þing þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer liȝt corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it vp / If it so be þat glandula or scrophula be closid with veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan kutte him not in no maner, for þer miȝt come greet perel þerof.[2]

In extirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.

12 // Þe cure of þe cancre not vlcerid & his cure /

¶ xiiij .cº. [3 If. 152, bk.] Rasis

CAusis & difference þou hast herd of a cankre [3]& in what maner þou schalt cure cancrum þat is not vlceratus / Rasis seiþ, & it is sooþ, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat wханne ony man
16 touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif, but if þei kutte him awey clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makiþ þat þe cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratum, it ne falliþ for no goodnes, saue it makiþ þe patient haste þe fastere to his
20 deeþ, & schortiþ his lijf & bringiþ him in turment // ¶ Þerfore if a cancre be in a place þat he mai be kutt awei wiþ alle hise rotis, wханne he is kutt awei, þan þou schalt brenne þe place wiþ an hoot iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure as it is
24 aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat is vlceratus.[4] ¶ If it so be þat þe cancre be perfit & greet, þan þou schalt touche him wiþ noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif, saue þou schalt kepe þe patient wiþ good dieting, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for
28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & with epithimo, & sumtyme lete him blood, & þou schalt anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

[1] *score.* Lat. discarnare.

[2] Sl. 2463, fol. 98: "*But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes*[a] *with reynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem nother with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne.*"

[4] A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115: "*The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt.*" Ibid., fol. 115 b.: "*And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit.*"

[a] Lat. intricata.

[1 lf. 153] de thutia, þat is [1] [2]aforseid *in* eura cancri vlcera*ti*. & þou schalt leie
*þe*rou colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe
Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.
þat þe canere wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye leechis
þat hadde*n* greet name *in* cirurgie *þat* fou*n*den cancris *in* me*n*, and 4
wexe not, & þe ca*ncr*is were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme
haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching *in* þis book; saue
vnku*nn*ynge eirurgians weneþ *þat* *in* kutting of a canere þei schulde
finde quitture & be*n* disseyued, & so disseyuen he*m*-silf & also þe 8
pa*tient*, & þa*n* wha*nn*e þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch
corrupt wiþout quitture *in* þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis
of þe wou*n*de wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more
stynking. & wiþ þe greet sty*n*ki*n*ge þe spirit is schent, & makiþ þe 12
pa*tient* þe raþere drawe toward þe deeþ / & if þe cancre were not
vlcerat*us* þe pa*tient* miȝte lyue lo*n*ge *þe*r*with*.

Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xv° c°. "Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [3 lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas.

BOcium is a postym *þat* comeþ of humours, & *principali* it is 16
enge*n*drid of fleume corrupt / Su*m*tyme it comeþ of [3]hote
enpostyms, as wha*nn*e þei be*n* rotid & not opened. & þouȝ þe
subtil mater be d*ra*wen out, þat o*þe*re p*art* bicomeþ hard & leueþ
*þe*re longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume[4] falliþ adou*n* of his heed *in*to 20
his necke & makiþ þe mat*e*re wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ
manie diuers signes / Su*m* maner *þe*rof is lijk as it were eley, &
su*mm*e is lijk schellis. Su*mm*e is as it were chese, & su*mm*e is as
it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym *in* his corrupcioun takiþ 24
manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ d*ra*wy*n*ge þi*n*gis & wastynge
þat schulen be take*n* bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt
ȝeue hi*m* bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þa*n* þou 28
sehalt ȝeue hi*m* a medieyn for to waaste þe mat*e*re & is maad in þis
.℞. A caustic medicine.
maner / ℞ p*a*ru*am* plantam nucis a terra cu*m* suis radicib*us* extirpa-
tam i*d est* take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground
wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of pep*er*, so *þat* if *þe*r be 32
of þe notis .℥ iiij., þa*n* do *þe*rto of pep*er* ℥ j, & þis þou schalt boile

[2] In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra ffetorem cancri.* ℞ *pulueris corticis quercus ffarine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere ffarina. Item decoque pulueremcorticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua cans*erem *a ffetore paliando.*

[4] *rume*, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

in a quart' of' wyn [1]of' paris til it' come to þe half', & þa*n*ne cole it', [[1] lf. 154]
& herof' þe pa*tient* schal take eu*er*y dai ℥ ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat' A caustic plaster.
wastiþ be*n* enplast*r*is þat' enpostyms of' fleume be wastid þ*er*w*ith* /
4 If' þou desirist' for to cure it' wiþ kuttyng', þa*n* þou must loke, wher
þe mat*er*e þat' is wiþi*n*ne be neische or hard. & wher it' be among'
veynes & arterijs, þou schalt' touche it' wiþ noon iren i*n* no man*er* /
If' it' so be þat' þe mater be neische & if' þou miȝte kutte it' for In extirpating this apostema do not injure the integument wherein the tumour is situated.
8 p*er*els þat' ben forseid, þa*n* kutte it' & drawe out þe mater, & leie
þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þi*n*gis as it' is aforseid i*n* þe general
chapitre / If' þe mat*er* be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be
fro veynes & arterijs, þa*n* kutte þe sky*n* endelongis aboue, & be war
12 þat' þou touche not' þe bagge þat' bociu*m* sittiþ þ*er*on & scarre[2] it'
al abouteforþ & drawe hi*m* out' w*ith* al his skyn. & if' þ*er* leue
þ*er*on ony þing' of' his skyn, þa*n* caste þ*er*on poudre of' affodille, &
make it' clene wiþ poudre of' su*m* liȝt' corrosif' þ*er*wiþ—vng*uentu*m
16 viride,[3] & þa*n* regendre fleisch, & þa*n* drie it' vp as it' is aforseid /

[4]Of þe akynge of ioynctis. [[4] lf. 154, bk.]

NOw it' is seid pleynlier of' alle enpostyms, now speke we of' ¶ xvj° c°.
passiouns þat' comeþ i*n* ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche Diseases of the joints are similar to apostemas,
20 lijk to enpostyms i*n* cansis & signes & curis, & also it' diuersiþ
miche fro o*þer*e enpostyms / For þouȝ þe place be greet' to-swollen,
it' comeþ but' late or neuere to quitture. Swellynge & akynge of' but they rarely terminate in suppuration.
ioinctis, þis passiou*n* is vnknowen to manie ku*n*nyng' lechis þat' han
24 greet' name. Bi þe cause þat' cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis
man*er*e passiou*n*, þ*er*fore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
of' passiou*n*s of' ioi*n*ctis. & I haue take miche þ*er*of' þe bokis of'
Rasis & of' myn owne worchi*n*g' þat' I haue p*r*oued. ¶ Þe causis Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body.
28 þat' makiþ aki*n*ge i*n* ioynctis: or it' comeþ of' yuel co*m*plexiou*n* of'
lymes, or it' comeþ of' hoot' co*m*plexiou*n* þat' hetiþ, or it' comeþ of'
coold co*m*plexiou*n* þat' cooldiþ / Drie ligaturis of' ioynctis constreineþ & makiþ akynge,[5] & moist'nes makiþ neu*er*e akynge wiþ-
32 outen o*þer* [6]mater / Mater þat' makiþ aki*n*ge of' ioy*n*cts is ofte tyme [[6] lf. 155]
habou*n*dau*n*ce of' blood, & ofte tyme it' is raw fleume, & moost'
p*r*i*n*cipali colre or blood medlid w*ith* fleume / & it' comeþ ful scelde
of' fleume, but' if' it' be medlid wiþ ony o*þer* þi*n*g' as colre / In what'

[2] *scarre.* Lat. scarnare.
[3] *vnguentum viride.* See Notes.
[5] Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be *in* þe cause of akynge of ioinctis, þou schalt finde *in* þe chapitre of allopucia & *in* þe general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is *in* cause of akynge of 4 ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik humo*ur*is makiþ akynge of ioinctis as it is forseid, & þa*n* þe colour of þe lyme schal be b*ut* litil[1] chau*n*gid þ*er*fore / & þa*n* a leche but if he be þe more expert þ*er*on mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8 quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þa*n* þe leche wole leie þ*er*to coolde þi*n*gis, & þa*n* þe mat*er* of fleume wole bicome hard, & so þe greuau*n*ce wole be worse þa*n* it was / þ*er*fore it is greet nede þat þe leche be ku*n*ny*n*g & knowe wel þe [2]mater of passiou*n*s 12 of ioyntis.

and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[2 lf. 155, bk.]

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

¶ Þe cure of akynge of ioinctis þat comeþ of yuel complexiou*n* oonly, þou schalt remeue w*ith* þingis þat ben contrarie to þat complexou*n* :[3] as if þe mater be hoot, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it w*ith* 16 colde þi*n*gis, & if þe mater be coold, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it wiþ hoot þi*n*gis, & if þe mater be of drienes, þa*n* þou schalt remeue it wiþ moist þi*n*gis, & wiþ metis & drinkis þat makiþ fatt, & wiþ rest[4] & wiþ gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomeþ fatt, he schal be 20 hool of þat passiou*n* / þis passiou*n* þat comeþ of humours, is curid w*ith* mitigacio*n* of þe akynge, & I fynde diuers opiniou*n*s þ*er*on / & þ*er*fore I wole schewe he*m* in þis chap*iter* / Auicen seiþ: þat wha*n*ne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entenciou*n* schal 24 be for to do awei þe akynge / And Rasis forbediþ þat þou schalt leie þ*er*to no rep*er*cussiuis, ne noon resolutiuis but if þe mater be avoidid tofore / For to do awey þe akynge: saue avoide þe mater, or leie þ*er*to a rep*er*cussif or a resolutif. & þa*n* Rasis seiþ þat 28 þou schalt avoide hi*m*, & auicen for[5]bediþ þat / In what maner schule*n* we worche þa*n*ne, wha*n*ne þou fyndist a man þat haþ greet akynge? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32 schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt ȝeue hi*m* su*m*what bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akynge. & þou schalt fynde greet plente *in* þis chapitre of defensiuis & mitagatiuis to defende þe mater / And wha*n*ne þe akynge is p*er*fiȝtli swagid lete hi*m* blood 36

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

Auicen and **Rasis** differ in their treatment.

☞

[5 lf. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine, then let blood

[1] A second *litil* deleted.

[3] Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexione sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam removere.

[4] MS. *rost.*

if' þe cause be of' blood. & if' it' be of' anoþer cause avoide it'. & if' þou letist' him blood, þou schalt' do it' in a lyme aforȝens. & if' þou wolt' avoide þere matere, loke þat' þou knowe þe cause / for þis is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid & þe akynge ceessid, þan þou schalt' bigynne wiþ resoluynge medicyns þat' ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of' akynge in ioyntis be wel war þat' þou feble not' his appetit', for þis sijknes comeþ moost' of' humours þat' ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt' in as miche as þou miȝt' make him haue good ap[1]petite & good digestioun / If' þou fyndist' oonly þe mater coold, þat' makiþ ful seelde ony gret' akynge, saue it' makiþ þe lyme heuy. Þis þou schalt' wite þat' in a coold cause þat' makiþ akinge in ioinetis, þouȝ it' be hard to do awei, neþeles þou schalt' ȝeue him no strong' medicyn ne he schal not' be purgid hastili as manie men weneþ, saue it' schal be do wiþ a propre medicyn þat' is sure. & it' schal ofte be ȝeuen, so þat' þou mai algate kepe his appetit', for þer is noon so strong' medicyn þat' mai avoide þe mater al at' oonys / And if' þou ȝeuest' him a strong medicyn it' wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must' chese a liȝt' medicyn þat' mowe comforte þe stomac & þat' it' mowe be ȝeue ofte //

from the sound limb,

or evacuate any evil matter:

and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.

[1 lf. 156, bk.]

Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.

¶ Of' akynge of' ioyntis þou hast' had general rulis; now we mote speke of' curis here after. ¶ If' þou be sent' after to a man þat' haþ arteticam,[2] þat' is as myche to seie as a goute, first' þou muste loke wher þe mater be hoot' or coold, or wheþer he haue strong' akynge or liȝt' akynge / & if' his akynge be strong', þan [3]leie þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt' ȝeue him medicyns bi þe mouþ þat' ben mitigatif' for to take awey þe akynge, & enplastris þat' ben mitigatif', & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat' schal be ȝeue bi þe mouþ: ℞, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt', & after þat' drie hem to þe sunne or in an oueue, & þan kepe it' / & whanne þou wolt' ȝeue it, grynde it' & ȝeue þerof' ʒ .j.; þis medicyn makiþ blood greet' & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

Arteticam.

When gout is attended with pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.

[3 lf. 157]

.R.

[2] *artetica*, arthritica, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 *b.*). "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and comeþ of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & comeþ most ofte of reumatik cause.*" The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "*also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytannce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to odyr.*"

A medicine only to be given in great need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succu*m* glandulu*m*, hermodactulis[1] wiþ sugre & coold watir, saue herof' þou must' take kepe þat' þese medicyns schulen not' be ȝeue b*ut'* i*n* greet' nede, & wh*an*ne þe akynge is so greet' þ*at'* it' mai not' be take awei. & þei mai be 4 moost' sotilly ȝeue wh*an*ne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if' þe mater be greet' & miche, þ*an* þis medicyn schal not' be ȝeue. ¶ If'

R þe mater be coold & of' greet' akyng', þ*an* take hermodact*ulis*, thuris an*a* xx. p*ar*tis, cucume*ri* p*ar*tes .x, & ȝeue þerof' ʒ .iij. vpon þe 8

[2 lf. 157, bk.] R place / If' þe mate*re* be litil & scharp [2]& subtil / ℞, amigdalas, camphore an*a*, gri*n*de he*m* & tempe*re* he*m* wiþ watir of' ro*ses* /

R Also anoþir i*n* þe same kinde / ℞, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilis- simi ℥ j, opij ℥ ß, grinde he*m* wel & tempe*re* he*m* wiþ milk of' a 12

R cow, & leie it' þe*r*on wh*an*ne it' is greet' nede / Item ℞, opij, cortices mandrag*orae* an*a* .ʒ .v, grinde he*m* & tempe*re* he*m* wiþ þe iuys of' port*ulacae* & oile of' ro*ses* & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement' for

R to ceesse þe akynge / ℞, oliu*m* ro*sarum* ℥ iiij, cere ℥ j., melte þe oile 16

An oinement' þat' sesses ache

& þe wex togidere & waische it' w*ith* oile of' ro*ses*, & þ*an* do þe*r*to cit*rini* ℥ j., opij ℥ ß / If' þe mate*r* be myche & be neiþer more i*n* quantite þ*an* i*n* q*ua*lite, & þou wolt' defende more þe cours of' þe mater, þ*an* do awei þe akynge.[3] ℞, cortices g*ra*natoris, sandal*i*[4] 20 albi, & rue,[5] & ro*ses*, boli armenici, ferrugi*ne*,[6] opij, confice cum succ*o* mirtillor*um* vel foliorum salicis, or w*ith* a decocciu*n* of' he*m* i*n* watir wiþ a litil oile of' ro*ses* & vinegr*e* & make herof' an oynement'. & wh*an*ne þe akynge is aswagid, þ*an* dissolue þe mater of' blood wiþ 24 letyng' blood. & þ*at'* suffisiþ as it' is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt'

R dissolue i*n* þis maner / ℞, mirabol*anorum* cit*r*inor*um* .℥ vj., [7]grinde

[7 lf. 158] he*m* & leie he*m* al any3t' i*n* lī ß of sirup of' viole, & ℥ .iiij. of' wijn of' pomegarnat*es* þ*at'* ben swete, amorowe boile he*m* alitil & do þe*r*to 28 ȝucc*are* .℥ ß, hermodact*ylorum* .ʒ ß., & ȝeue it' hi*m* i*n* þe mornyng'. & if' þou wolt' make itt' more coold, do þe*r*to .ʒ .ij. of' musilag*in*is

[1] "*Hermodactyla*, erawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiæ cursum quam extinguere . . .

[4] *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 *b* (c. c. 1450).

[5] *rue* for *rubidi*.

[6] Lat. foenugreci.

psillij or ʒ .j. ¶ þis is a good electu*arie* þ*er*fore .℞, citonio*rum* lī ß., & make he*m* to gobettis, & leie he*m* i*n* vinegre adai & aniʒt' / & þa*n* wrynge he*m* & grinde he*m* smal, & do þ*er*to scamonie þa*t*' it' be
4 good .ʒ .j, cardamomi, cubube .ʒ .iij, spice nar*di* .ʒ .j, ros*is* .ʒ .v, ʒucc*are* lī ß, make herof' a letuarie þa*t*' purgiþ wel colre & comfortiþ þe stomac. þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .ij. & þou miʒt' scharpe it' more if' þou wolt' w*ith* a litil hermodact*ylis*. ¶ þese be*n* good
8 pelottis for þe same cause / ℞, alocs .ʒ .ij, hermod*actylos* .ʒ j, scamonie .ʒ ß, ros*is* .ʒ .j, make he*r*of' pelottis w*ith* sir*u*po viol*arum*, & þou schalt' ʒeue herof' .ʒ .j. Wh*an*ne þe passiou*n* bigy*n*neþ to go awei w*ith* þese medicyns, þa*n* þou schalt' leie þerto plastris þa*t*' ben
12 resoluynge: as of' maluc & bismalue, camomille, mellilotu*m*, absinthiu*m*, p*er*atorie, semen caliu*m*, aneti, fenug*r*eci, [1]semen lini, furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & he*n*nis grese, & oile of' camf*re*, & oliu*m* aneti. & wh*an*ne þe cours of' humours cessiþ,
16 þa*n* þou schalt' vse oonly resoluy*n*ge þi*n*gis & make þ*er*of' enplastris / Also to do awaye residue of' þe aki*n*ge, þis is a good medicy*n* / ℞, oli*um* camom*ille* ʒ̄ .iiij, cere .ʒ̄ j., sem*in*is aneti & caliu*m*, flor*um* camom*ille* an*a* .ʒ .iij. & make herof' an oynemen*t*' / Also i*n* anoþ*er*
20 man*er* / ℞, fenig*reci*, semen lini, aneti, & temp*er*e he*m* w*ith* iuys of' cal*ium*. & herof' þou must' take kepe, þa*t*' as ofte as þou wolt' vse clene resolutiuis, þou schalt' algate waische þe lyme þa*t*' is to-swolle*n* wiþ a decocciou*n* of' malue & bismalue, & flor*um* of' camom*ille* &
24 melliloti, absin*thii* & o*per*e mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þ*er*wiþ til it' bicome reed, & þa*n* þou schalt' anoy*n*te hi*m* / And þis þou schalt' wite þa*t*' as meuy*n*g' & baþi*n*g' greucþ þe passiou*n* i*n* þe firste bigy*n*ny*n*g', riʒt' so þei be*n* i*n* þe ende riʒt' greet' helpi*n*g' / For
28 to stuwe & baþe doiþ awei þe laste p*art*' of' þe mater & makiþ a ma*n*nys lymes haue her meuy*n*g' as þei schulde haue. & also it' is good wh*an*ne þe pa*tient* goiþ out' of' [2]his stue, if' hise io*in*ctis akiþ, þa*n* frote he*m* wel wiþ salt' grou*n*de / If' þe mater be coold þou
32 schalt' diʒte hi*m* wiþ diaʒinʒib*er*is þa*t*' is aforseid i*n* allopucia. & þa*n* þou schalt' dissolue wiþ trocisco de turbit' wiþ hermodact*ylis* ma*a*d i*n* þis man*er* / ℞, diaʒinʒib*er*is p*re*dicti ʒ j. & ß, turbit' electi .ʒ .j, hermodactulor*um* albor*um* solidor*um* ʒ ß, & viij greines of'
36 anise, & make þ*er*of' a gobet' wiþ a litil hony. & þis schal be ʒeue i*n* þe morny*n*g'. & þ*er*after he schal dri*n*ke a litil wiju hoot' & a litil wat*er*; or wiþ þese pelottis / ℞, hermodact*ylorum*, saturionis[3]

.℞. A good electuary, to purge choler and to strengthen the stomach.

.℞. Pills for the same purpose.

Resolving plasters: .℞. [1 lf. 158, bk.]

.℞.

A lotion for the limb.

Moving and bathing is obnoxious at the beginning of the illness, but useful at the end of the cure. [2 lf. 159]

℞

℞

[3] *Saturion*, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene an*a* .ʒ .v, ierapig*re*[1] þat entriþ *in* pululas cochias .ʒ .x, pulpe coloquintide, centaurie. an*a* .ʒ .v, euforbij .ʒ. ij, turbit .ʒ .ß., cassie,[2] sinapis, pip*er*is, castorij an*a* .ʒ .j. & make herof pelottis w*ith* hony. & þou schalt ʒeue h*er*of .ʒ j. at oonys, & þis medicy*n* schal be 4 ʒeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diaʒinʒib*erum* of our makinge þat is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt ʒeue him diatr*i*on pip*er*ion[3] or anoþ*er* hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþ*er* electuarie þat dissoluiþ akynge in ioyntis þat comeþ of raw mat*er*. 8

.R. R7, camedrios,[4] centaurie minor*um* an*a*. ʒ .viij, aristolo*gia* longa.

[5 lf. 159, bk.] [5]gencian. an*a*. ʒ .vj, agarici .ʒ .ij, vtriusq*ue* spice an*a* .ʒ .j, make

A lectuare þat dysclues Ache in Iunnctes

he*m* wiþ hony. Þou schalt ʒeue h*er*of þe qua*n*tite of a note eerli & late. Me*n* þat ben lene schule*n* not take þis medicy*n* // Wh*an*ne 12 þe pa*tient* is p*ur*gid sufficie*n*tly, þa*n* þou schalt vse enplast*ris* for to

R leie to þe place / R7, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch lī j., & medle þ*er*wiþ quyk-lyme & make þ*er*of a plast*re* & leie vpon þe

R place / Also take sterc*us* cap*r*in*um* & distemp*er*e it wiþ vinegre & 16

R hony an*a*, & leie it þ*er*on / Also R7, aristolo*gia*, radices yrios, ell*eborus*, & pip*er*, boile he*m* *in* oile & do þ*er*to ʒelow wex & make þ*er*of an oynem*en*t. ¶ Also diaquilon m*aa*d of litarge & oile & iuys of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20

Rasis. book of Rasis, & þ*er*e þou schalt fynde *in* þe chapit*er* of ioy*n*tis, medicyns ynowe þ*er*fore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to co*m*forte þe lyme & do awei þe coold mat*er* wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, *in* þe laste chap*iter* of þis book þou schalt fy*n*de rep*er*cussiuis & mollificat*iuis* ynowe // 24

/ Of sciatica passio[6] /[7]

¶ xvij°. c° [8 lf. 160] Pain in the haunches

A kynge of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidi*n*ge of þe mat*er* *id est* laxat*iu*is, for rep*er*cussiuis be*n* not þ*er*fore, for þe mat*er*e [8]is *in* þe depnes of þe lyme, &[9] ne mowe not come þ*er*to. Resolutiuis 28

[1] "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. [2] MS. cassif.

[3] *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

[4] "Chamœdrys, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos anee Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

[6] MS. *passis*.

[7] *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 *b*.): "*Gutta sciatica is an yuel* þat *comeþ of humours* þat *falliþ doun into* þe *grete senewe* þat *is bytwene* þe *grete brawnes of* þe *hanche as constantyn seiþ*. ¶ *And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in* þe *holouʒnes of* þe *ioyntes & of* þe *haunche / somtyme of blody humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle* þese *beþ ofte cause of ache* þe *whiche ache streechiþ into* þe *legges & anon to* þe *hele & also anon to* þe *litil* [*too*]." [9] The subject is: *repercussivis*.

ben not þerfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet, it schulde more drawe to þe place humouris þan dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt do awei þe akynge with oile & hony & fatnes þat doiþ awei[1] akinge. ¶ If þe mater come of blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid sciatica, & principaly if þe mater descende adoun wiþoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it mai principaly be holpen / If þe mater come of fleuma, þan purge him wiþ pelottis of hermodactilorum / Saue herof þou schalt take kepe þat bifore his purgacioun bineþe forþ[2] he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make him a medicyn laxatif bineþeforþ & no vomet tofore, þan it wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan aweyward / þerfor first þou schalt make him a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And þerfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akynge of þe haunchis, as coloquintida, yrios, sarcocolla, [3]centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of aloes. For infusioun of aloes wole make blood passe fro him at his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, þan þou miȝt leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / ℞, nasturcij,[4] peretri,[5] capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ lie maad of askis of a fige tree, & make þerof a picke enplaster as it were hony, & anointe þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of water, riȝt as þe place were brent wiþ fier. & þan anoynte þe place wiþ butter, & leie þeron caule leeues þat þe bladdris soude not togideris anoon; for þe lenger þat þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it wole be. Eiþer anoynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,[6] & þat makiþ bladdris. & what maner þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie þat techiþ to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof þou must take kepe þat þou schalt not vse þese medicyns þat makiþ cauterijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wiþ medicyns laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be [7]not purgid, it wole drawe more

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

[3 lf. 160, bk.]

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

℞

A blistering plaster.

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 lf. 161]

[1] *awei*, above line.

[2] *bineþe forþ*, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

[4] *nasturtium*, a kind of cress.

[5] *peretrum*, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

[6] "*Anacardus.* Or after Ruellius *anacardium:* is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

mat*er* to þe plaee þa*n* aweyward. ¶ Also aȝe*n*s þe seiatiea passio here þou sehalt haue an exp*er*iment p*r*eued of *Aviccenna*. Take gotis tordis & drie he*m*, & make he*m* to poude*r*, & distempe*r*e he*m* wiþ strong vinegre & made hoot, & make herof a plastre, & leie it 4 vpon as hoot as þou maist suffre, & anoynte þe*r*wiþ his haunche. ¶ Also a medicyn þat is forseid of camedrios & eentaurea[1] is good þe*r*fore, for it wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: eaute*r*ijs ma*a*d i*n* þe nexte welle vnde*r* þe plaee of þe aki*n*ge be*n* gode þe*r*for afte*r* 8 þe tyme þat his bodi is ma*a*d clene wi*th* pu*r*gaciou*n*s, & tofore þou sehalt make hi*m* no eaute*r*ijs.

.R. A plaster of Avicenna.

Of þe mane*r* of dieti*n*g of he*m* þat ha*n* pass*ions* i*n* io*in*ctes / 12

¶ xviij°. co A patient with a disease of the joints shall abstain from wine,

IN what mane*r* þou schalt diete me*n* þa*t* ha*n* passiou*n*s i*n* io*in*tis. Þou sehalt wite þat þe*r* is no þi*n*g so greuo*us* to þis passiou*n* as is wy*n*, & it is p*r*incipali forbede i*n* an hoot eause, & so it sehal be i*n* a eoold cause; for wha*n*ne it is 16 take, it pe*r*siþ liȝtli to þe io*in*tis, & makiþ wei to þe mate*r* for to falle þe*r*to / Saue if þe pass*ion* be coold, & þe pa*tient* mai not wel [2]defie his mete, þa*n* þou schalt grau*n*te hi*m* a litil wijn, & not to miche for þe eausis þat be*n* forseid. ¶ In an 20 hoot cause make hi*m* dri*n*ke þat is forseid i*n* þe chapite*r* of dieti*n*g of wou*n*dis, or he sehal vse vinu*m* g*r*anatoru*m* wiþ eoold wate*r*. & þe pacient sehal absteine hi*m* fro fleiseh & fisch & vse laetu*cis*, portu*lacis* / & if he be gretli feble, þa*n* þou sehalt ȝeue hi*m* litil 24 chikenys. & lete þou not hi*m* drinke wijn bi no mane*r* if his passioun be hoot / & whoso haþ þe eoold passiou*n* herof, he sehal holde hi*m* wel apaied[3] for to ete oonys adai & not to miche. & lete hi*m* drinke ydromel wel sode*n* / for if he mai suffre hu*n*gu*r* & 28 þirst he mai soone be hool. & he sehal i*n* no mane*r* ete, but if he haue wil þe*r*to.

[2 lf. 161, bk.]

and if there is hot matter, from meat and fish;

and if the matter is cold he shall eat only once a day.

¶ The firste teechi*n*g of egrit*udines* of yȝen, ouþe*r* passiou*n* & anothami / 32

¶ i°. co/ NOw wolen we make a tretice of pass*ioun* of lymes þat falliþ for no wou*n*dis, & euris þe*r*of comeþ ofte to eirurgians

[1] *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

[3] *he schal holde him wel apaied*, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littré.)

handis[1] / I wole bigy*n*ne of sijknes of yȝen & to speke of anatho- The anatomy of the eyes.
mia*m* þe*r*wiþ þat was not forseid i*n* þe .ij. book / þou schalt fy*n*de
i*n* su*m*me bokis of auctoritees þat a ma*n*nes iȝe*n* be*n* ma*a*d of .iij. The eye has three
humou*r*is & of .vij. cootis. & i*n* su*m* bokis [2]þou schalt fynde þat [2 lf. 162]
þe iȝe*n* be*n* ma*a*d of .iij. cotis or of .iiij. or of .vij. or of .x., & alle humours and seven coats.
þei seien sooþ. Saue þe .j. coote þat maket*h* þe schap of þe iȝe,
ben but .iij. þat schewet*h* out i*n* þe hole of þe iȝe, & þe*r*fore me
mai seie .vj. & also þre[3] / And fro þe brain tofore comeþ .ij. bind- Two processes reach from the brain to the eyes.
i*n*gis þat be*n* not of ne*r*ues, saue þei be*n* of þe substau*n*ce of brain,
& þat oon comeþ out i*n* þe riȝtside, & þat oþe*r* i*n* þe liftside, & be*n*
schape as it were þe hedis of .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt is take.[4] &
aft*er* þese .ij. comeþ out ij. ne*r*ues, & be*n* fast to þe iȝen, & be*n* Two nerves, crossing each other,
schape i*n* þis maner: þa*n* þat ne*r*ue þat wexiþ i*n* þe
riȝtside of þe bray*n*, wha*n*ne he goiþ out of þe scolle boon & e*n*triþ enter the Orbitam,
i*n*to orbita*m*, þat is þe holow place þat þe yȝe sitt on, & goiþ to þe
iȝe i*n* þe liftside. & bi þes ne*r*ues comeþ þe spiritis of lijf & of siȝt and confer the spirit of life.
to þe yȝen / Of þe substau*n*ce of dura ma*t*ris is engendrid rethina,
þat is þe þi*n*ne sky*n* þat goiþ wi*th*out þe iȝe, þat is clepid þe vilm The eye is enveloped in the Retina (film).
of þe iȝe. And þis serueþ of greet seruice, & þis vilm was ma*a*d
swiþe þi*n*ne þat it ne hurte not humou*r*is, & þat it lette not þe
meuy*n*ge of þe iȝe, and it [5]byndiþ i*n* al þe iȝe, & it defendiþ þe iȝe [5 lf. 162, bk.]
fro harmynge of þe boon //[6]

¶ þe*r*e comeþ manye sijknessis i*n* þe iȝen, & su*m*me comeþ of The diseases of the eyes have partly external, partly internal causes.
causis wiþoutforþ, & su*m*me of causis wiþi*n*neforþ / Wiþi*n*neforþ:
as of yuel complexiou*n*s, or of yuel humours; wiþoutforþ: as of
greet hete of þe eir, or of greet cooldnes of þe eir, or of poudre, or
of fume, or of wynd / And þe*r*e be*n* oþe*r*e mane*r* sijknes of þe iȝe,
& þat ben seid contagiou*s*: as obtolmia & blere iȝed, & alle þese
sijknessis come*n* to cirurgians handis. & **obtolmia** is clepid a whit Obtolmia. Icchinge. Scabbe. Sebe'. Vngula. Cataracta.
welke or a reed poynt,[7] & icchinge & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

[1] Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, quæ non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipiemus ab ægritudinibus oculorum.

[3] The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunicæ tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

[4] Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

[6] Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclirotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

[7] Lat.: ophthalmia, vleus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The

Dilatacio Pulpe. Inuersacio Palpebrarum. Ordelius. Grando. Nodus. Pilus. ffistala lacrimalis

dilatac*ion* pulpe,[1] inuersac*ion*, palpebra*rum*, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also þe*r* be*n* o þ*er*e man*er*e sijknessis of þe iȝen: as bli*n*d & hurti*n*ge þat mowe not be curid /

[3 lf. 163]

iij man*er* obt*alm*ia

It is forseid wh*at* þi*n*g is enpostym i*n* þe gen*er*al c*apitulo* of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery þi*n*g þat gaderiþ humo*ur* togid*er*e & makiþ swellynge,[2] [3]schal be clepid enposty*m*[4] / In þe same man*er* obtalmia[5] is clepid enposty*m* of þe iȝe. & þ*er*e be*n* .iij. man*er*s of obtalmia: as liȝt, & strenge*r*, & alþ*er* strong. Liȝt, as wh*an*ne 8 a ma*n*nes iȝe bicomeþ reed & haþ bre*n*nynge þ*er*i*n*ne & p*r*ickin*g*e, & þ*er* is no swelly*n*ge þ*er*on. & þis mai come of a cause w*ith*outforþ: as of hoot eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakin*g*e, or of t*rau*eile. & þe eure herof is but liȝt; for þis sijknes mai be 12 curid i*n* þis man*er*. Take þe white of an ey & seume[6] it, & loke þat þ*er*e falle no filþe þ*er*on, & leie it i*n*to his iȝe; for þis is þe best medicy*n*[7] amo*n*g alle medicyns þat be*n* clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his iȝe & do awey þe akynge. & it abidiþ þe lenger i*n* 16 his iȝe*n*, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,[8] þa*n* þis eure suffisiþ: þ*an*ne lete hi*m* dry*n*ke a litil sutil wiju, & make hi*m* a fomentacio*un* of ro*sis* & flouris of camom*ille*, & fenigree sode*n* i*n* wat*er*. & if þis suffise not, þa*n* [9]þou muste lete hi*m* blood, & avoide 20 awei þe humo*ur*is. & þ*o*u muste caste i*n*to his iȝe a whit collirium, & it is seid i*n* o þ*er*e spicis of obtolmia.

1. Mild ophthalmia. The eyes get red, and feel burning, but there is no swelling.

Treatment.

℞ Apply an eye-wash, *Nota.*

a fomentation, and if necessary bleed the patient.

[9 lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe Obtolmiæ.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong. þese be*n* þe signes þ*er*of: greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe iȝen be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 iȝe schal watri, & he schal haue greet akin*g*e & pricki*n*g, & sum-tyme þ*er*e comeþ i*n* þe first bigy*m*nyng vlcera þ*er*on, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

[1] *pulpe*, for *pupillae*.

[2] On the bottom of the page: "*contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy movthe lucke warme, so do oft in þ^e day.*"

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "*As it is sayd of auctores in* þe *generall Chapiter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, riȝt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye.*"

[5] *obtalmia*, med. Lat. form of ὀφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

[6] *seume*, despumare. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 450. "*scummyn lycurys*, despumo."

[7] Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi, quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "*and sette not liȝtly þerby, for it is þe nobelest medicyne.*"

[8] MS. *hoot*. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "*and yf þe cause be of colde.*"

white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron þat a man mai se, sanc al his iȝe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking. & þouȝ þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akynge be swiþe greet, þan accesse þe akynge, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne[1] þat sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akiþ. & if he haue passionn in boþe his iȝen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys. & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better, for þe mater comeþ more [2]of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, & litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise iȝen. & he schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt lete him blood in lasse[3] quantite þan[4] if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting is good in þis caas, for þe scharpnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe blood leting. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia. & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat falliþ ofte tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasie. & first he schal do þingis þerto for to accesse þe matere / ℞, a ȝelke of an eij, & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verneine, & ℈ j. of saffron, & ℈ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an emplastre, & leie it vpon a sotil lynnen clooþ, & leie it on þe iȝe. & in his iȝe leie collirium album with wommans milk[5] þat noryschiþ a maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn[6] / Rasis made collirium album in þis maner, [7]& it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symptoms are great pains and swelling.

Treatment. Soothe the pain by blood-letting

or by cupping.

[2 lf. 164]

If choleric matter is the cause, use blood-letting and purging.

Purging Pills. Cochie Rasis

℞ Mitigatum optimum *contra* dolorem in oculis

Colirium album Galion. Rasis.

[7 lf. 164, bk.]

[1] vena cephalica. [3] Lat. maiori. [4] MS. *þat*.

[5] The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

[6] The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: *and he cleped hit helpyng, for hr. þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. ʒ. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit euermare coueed þat þer falle no ponder þerinne; thanne take .ij. ʒ. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse: and whane þis medeeyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly poudered and sarsed twyes or thryes thorouȝ a sotyll lynnen clothe. Take amidum .iiij. ʒ. sarcacolle, safran, opium aua þe iiij. partie of a ʒ. gryude hem all wel together lange tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou hane nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with* (fol. 86) *womannes mylk and administer yt.*

R
A Collyrium used by Rhasis.

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet' .iij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti[1] .j. parti, opij .j ß / Grinde alle þese togidere & tempere hem wiþ rein water, & make þerof' pelottis as gret' as it' were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt' worche 4 þerwiþ, tempere oon þerof' wiþ wommans milk þat' it' be as þicke as it' were must',[2] & leie þerof' in hise iȝen þre siþis in þe dai. Þis collirie accessiþ þe akinge. & in sumtyme it' curiþ obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt' manie tymes. & whanne he haþ slepe, if' 8 hise iȝen cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise iȝen wiþ water of' rosis hoot', & þan leie in þe corner of' his iȝe puluis citrinus, þat' is maad in þis maner / ℞, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof' sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof' a litil in þe corner of' his iȝe /

puluis citrinus

The patient's diet: He shall take neither meat nor wine;

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng' of' his iȝe is aweie, he mote be war of' his dieting', for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wiju, saue he mote ete colature of' bran wiþ almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge [3]vpon þe hool side & not' vpon þe soor side / & if' boþe his iȝen ben soor, þan he mote diȝte him as sutilli as he may.[4] & he mote ofte tyme haue

[3 ff. 165]

he shall lie in a dark room,

þe sauour of' water coold, & þe sauour of' wiþi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat' he mowe se no liȝt'. & whanne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is][5] þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of' swete water, & lete him be þerin but' a litil while[6] / If' it' be so þat' þe akynge aswage not' wiþ blood leting' & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it' is a signe þat' þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it' is nede for to make it' maturatif'; for þe akinge wole not' goon awei, til it' be maad maturatif'. & in þis caas baþinge is ful noious / For if' akinge be go sumwhat' awei, it' wole come aȝen wiþ baþing'; þerfore thou 28 schalt' attende for to make maturatif'.[7] & putte in his iȝe a collirie

and take a bath, when the matter has gone.

Bathing is noxious, when there is a pustule.

Maturative medicines: Colirium thuris

[1] *draganti*, Lat. dragaganthi.

[2] *must*, Lat. mustum.

[4] Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "*and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vpward, his hodes muste be wyde.*" Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

[5] *is*, omitted.

[6] Sl. ibid.: "*And yef it be plesaunt to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he wexe riȝt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe downe so by the eyen.*"

[7] *thou schalt attende for to make m..* Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'atendre à faire qu. ch.

of' thus wiþ al[1] togidere til þe quittu*r*e schauwie, for þa*n* þe aki*n*ge wole accesse / For wh*an*ne pustula is to-br*o*ke, & quittu*r*e is gaderid, þa*n* þou schalt' putt' þ*e*ron a collirie of' leed. & þa*n* þou schalt' fulfille alle þi*n*gis þat' schule*n* be seid wiþ vlceribu*s* / A collirie of' thus þ*a*t' is maturatif' for [2]pustul*is* is m*aa*d i*n* þis man*er* / ℞, thur*is* albi gu*m*mosi grossi, p*ar*tes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle an*a*. p*ar*tes .v, croci p*ar*tes ij, & te*m*p*er*e he*m* wiþ muscilage of' fenigree; & make þ*er*of' pelottis, & kepe he*m* for þi*n* vss. & wha*n* þou hast' nede herof', þa*n* te*m*p*er*e a pelot' w*ith* þe forseid licour, & make it' moist' & bi*n*de it' vpon his iȝe, & lete þis ligge til þe akynge go awei; & putte in his iȝe colirium de plu*m*bo, þ*a*t' is maad i*n* þis man*er* / ℞, plu*m*bi vsti, antimonij, ȝuc*ar*e, eris vsti, g*u*m*m*i arabic, d*r*ag*an*ti an*a* p*ar*tes .viij, opij p*ar*tem ß., & make herof' a sutil poudre, & þa*n* te*m*p*er*e it' wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ wat*er* of' ros*is*, & make þ*er*of' pelottis. & wh*an*ne þou wolt' vse he*m*, distemp*er*e oon þ*er*of' or tweyne wiþ wat*er* of' ros*is*, & binde it' vpon his iȝe; for þis collirie soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þ*a*t' it' is soudid, if' þ*er*e leue a litil ampulle,[3] þa*n* þou schalt' cure it' as þ*o*u schalt' fynde i*n* his p*r*opre place. ¶ flleumatik mater makiþ ful seelde*n* ony enpostym i*n* þe iȝe, & malancolie mych latter; neþeles we wolen telle curis of' he*m*. ¶ Signes of' [4]fleu*m* be*n* þese: greet' swelly*n*ge & manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþ*er* noon; & þe cure he*r*of' is to p*ur*ge hi*m* wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit', saue cochie be*n* more bett*er*. & þou schalt' putte i*n* his eere muscilagine*m*[5] fenigree, & putte i*n* his iȝe ȝelowe poudre þ*a*t' is forseid. & vpon his iȝe þou schalt' leie enplastre m*aa*d of' aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco an*a*, & dist*em*p*er*e he*m* wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn wole do hi*m* good, dru*n*ken in mesure / If' it' come of' malancolie, þ*o*u schalt' knowe bi blaknes of' al þe bodi[6] & leene, & bi drienes of' hise iȝe*n*, & ful litil reednes or noon i*n* hise iȝe*n*. & þe cure herof' is for to p*ur*ge wel malancolie, & baþi*n*g' & fome*n*tac*ion* wiþ rosis & violet', & flouris of' borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt' wite þ*a*t' i*n* eu*er*y man*er* of' obtalmia, i*n* þe ende þ*er*of' baþi*n*g' be*n* good.

Colirium plumbe.

[2 lf. 165, bk.]

℞

℞.

Apostemas in the eyes seldom arise from phlegm.

[4 lf. 166]

In this case purge and apply a plaster.

℞

Treatment of an apostema if Melancholy is the cause.

Nota.

[1] Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "*with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schewe vpon þe cottone.*"

[3] *ampulle*, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. *Dict.*, s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule* id est macule oculi albe."

[5] MS. *ſ* inserted.

[6] Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "*All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh.*"

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe iȝe come of smytyng & akynge, & swellynge come þerwiþ, þan it is necessarie for to haue a ȝong culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wynge wiþ a nedle, & putte it in his iȝe as hoot as it comeþ fro þe culuer.[1] Þis doiþ awei [2]þe akynge, & þe reednes & þe brennyng.

[2 lf. 166, bk.]

de vlceribus oclorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner vlcus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes iȝe. & þan þer comeþ greet akinge þerwiþ & abydynge, & þis mai not be doon awei wiþ collirium album, ne wiþ noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert of[3] longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wiþ collirium album, & þer wole in his iȝe appere a reed poynt or a corn. & if al his iȝe be reed, þan þe poynt or corn wole be more reed, & þat point wole make greet agreuaunce, & greet swellinge, & greet betyng, & manie teeris / It is greet nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as colirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou miȝt not defende þe mater wiþ alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akynge, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to sonde vlcus, þan þou schalt leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge. & do in his iȝe collirium [4]eliser,[5] for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad in þis maner / ℞, antimonij, emathitis,[6] ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wiþ iuys of

Treatment:

Apply Colirium album to relieve pain;

and if this is insufficient,

[4 lf. 167]

Colirium Eliphur.

℞

[1] The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "*Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drawe out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wynge of a culver, oþer of a swalowe, oþer of a lepwink, & i-doo in þe bygynnynge rppon þat mole, clensiþ hit miȝtyly / for þe blood of þese foules heteþ and dissolveþ strongliche.*"

[3] *of curis þat I am expert of.* Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

[5] MS. *elifer*, Lat. elesir, the form of Arab. eliksir as preserved in Ital. elisire. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek ξηρόν, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of vuea.*"

[6] *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 *b*), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . . & is good ageins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"

corigiole,[1] & make þerof' polottis; & dissolue herof' wiþ watir of' rosis, & binde it' faste to his iȝe. Þis collirium fastenеþ his iȝe, & makiþ þat' þe enpostym may wexe no ferþere / ¶ Macula[2] is a wem
4 in a mannys iȝe, & summe be white þerof' & sittiþ vpon þe siȝt' of' þe iȝe,[3] & summe bisidis þe siȝt'. & þis comeþ of' an oold obtalmiam. & herto principali is good collirium album of' .G. þat' is forseid. & þis collirie is good þerfore / ℞, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti
8 waischen, gummi arabici, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis, climie[4] partes iiij., thurus partes .iij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tempere hem wiþ sweto wijn, & make þerof' pelottis, & kepe hem: & wiþ þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid
12 wiþ þese .ij. colliries, & wiþ cauterijs, & kuttingis of' veynes, manye men / & I curide þerwiþ a man þat' was elepid sir Reynold Manesyn. & he hadde obtolmiam id est postym in his iȝe longe tyme to[5]fore, & þerof' came manye wemmys in his iȝe; summe þerof' weren white
16 & summe þerof' weren reed, & maden þat' he miȝte not' se, & anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon þe boord, he miȝte not' se þerof' / & þo I lokide to him; & wiþinne a monþe he miȝt' se to pleie at' þe tabler.[6] & I dide awei alle þe
20 wemmys of' his iȝen, so þat' he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie oþere leechis, & leiden in his iȝen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more: & so his siȝt' was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for
24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it' is good for vlcera þat' ben newe & not' olde, & for wemmis.

Macula is a white spot on or near the pupil of the eye.

Galien

Colirium album

Galien

A nobleman who had lost his eye-sight [5 If. 167, bk.] was treated by Lanfranc,

and after a month he could play backgammon.

Colirium Galien.

& sumtyme sich a maner pricke comeþ of' smytynge, or of' greet' crijnge, or of' blood as þoruȝ brekynge of' a veyne, & makiþ a poynt'
28 in a mannes iȝe, & þerfore blood letynge is good. & do in his iȝe

If a 'point' in the eye is caused by an injury, use blood-letting,

[1] "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

[2] *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe, mole.* See p. 248, note 3.

[3] *þe siȝt of þe iȝe.* Lat. cornea. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sêo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

[4] *climie.* Matth. Sylv. "Klimia. Cadimia. alkimia Auicenna'. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione euiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

[6] *tabler.* Lat.: vide ipsum ludentem in vesperis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of pley or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the blood of a dove and a woman's milk.

blood of a culuer, & waische his iȝen wiþ wommans milk warm, as it comeþ out of þe tete.[1]

[2 lf. 168] Redness of the eyes causes itching and vice versa. Both occasion scab and vngula.

¶ Rubedo *id est* reednes, pruritus *id est* icchinge, sebel, sca[2]bies, & vngula, goiþ al in oon cours.[3] & oon herof is cause of anoþer / 4
For of long reednes tofore comeþ icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. comeþ scabbe in þe iȝe liddis; & if it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe iȝe, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8
iȝen, lest þer come ony oþer sijknes þerof / Reednes may be curid

Galien

wiþ þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wiþ whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, &

Scabies. The eye-lids are full of pimples.

leid in his iȝe wiþ soft lynnen clooþ, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies 12
is whanne þe iȝe liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun makiþ greet icchinge & brennynge, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise iȝen wiþ wijn in which be resolued grene coperose, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.[4] & if 16

Colirium rubeum ℞

þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / ℞, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ß; tempere alle þes

[5 lf. 168, bk.]

wiþ old [5]wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20
þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wiþ oold wijn, & do it in his

Colirium viri[de] ℞

iȝe / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad in þis maner / ℞, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij, 24
armoniacum dissolued in iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe opere sotilli, & medle hem þerwiþ also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

[1] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 *a*), "*Also it happiþ þat blood wooseþ out of veynes & of pipes & comeþ to þe yȝen, & veynes brekeþ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctiva, & þan suche vnhiȝtnes of þe yȝe comeþ of blood þat comeþ so to þe yȝe. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood dissolveþ & departeþ þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ womman melk wiþ ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with hony wiþouten salt, if it be laide* þerto."

[3] *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16. "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. *Another evel of þe yȝen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albugo, & bredip in þis manere. ¶ ffirst a rewme renneþ to þe yȝen, & þerof comeþ an yeel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is evel i-kept þerof leveþ a litil mole & infection, & longtyme turneþ & growiþ into a webbe & þicke, & occupieþ more place þan al þe blacke of þe iȝe. ¶ This webbe turneþ into clooþ by more þiennes & occupieþ more place, for it oenpieþ al þe blake of þe yȝe. & at þe last it turneþ into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde.*"

[4] *Vitriolum Romanum.* "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, *Table*, p. 139.

þerof' in watir of' rue distillid & leid in his iȝe // ¶ **Sebel**[1] is seid, wh*an*ne þe veynes þat' ben ioyned togid*er*e in þe iȝe,[2] ben ful of' blood & wexiþ greet', & su*m*tyme a clooþ þat' is in a ma*n*nes iȝe. For
4 to cure þis passiou*n* collirium rubem is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat' ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittiþ in þe corner of' þe iȝe þat' is next' þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe iȝe til it' hile al þe iȝe; & su*m*tyme it' comeþ of' a superflute of' fleiseh þat' wexiþ in þe corner
8 of' a ma*n*nes iȝe, & wexiþ forþ abrood as it' were a clooþ. & þer ben manie maners þerof', & oon is sotil & þinne, & goiþ ouer þe iȝe. & of' sum men þat' is clepid a clooþ, & þat' oþer maner is more fleischi & þicke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure [3]herof' ben collirium viride & [3 lf. 169]
12 rubeum, þat' ben forseid: & if' þis suffisiþ not', þan it' mote be kutt' awey wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof', & aftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of' vngulam be war þat' þou kutte not' þe fleiseh in þe corner of' þe iȝe to depe; for
16 if' it' were kutt' to depe, his iȝe schulde watre, & be ful of' teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgaciou*n* is good, & blood leting'; & þe pa*tient* schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiou*n*s comeþ of' blood
20 corrupt'. ¶ **Cateracta**[4] is water þat' falliþ doun bitwixe þe .ij. skymnes of' þe iȝe & abidiþ tofore þe place þat' is clepid pupilla, þat' is þe poynt' of' þe iȝe. & þan it' defendiþ þat' a man mai not' se; & it' is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of' an instrument' þat' is a
24 mille / & su*m*tyme þis passiou*n* bigy*n*neþ, & su*m*tyme it' is confermed / Signes of' þe bigynnynge ben þese / It' semeþ to þe pa*tient* þat' he seeþ briȝt' þingis tofore him, & him þinkiþ þat' oon þing' is .ij. þingis or þre / & su*m*tyme it' semeþ to him þat' þing' þat' he seeþ
28 to be ful of' holis / & su*m*tyme þese þingis [5]mowe come of' yuel [5 lf. 169, bk.]

Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.

Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.

If Collyriums prove insufficient, cut away the growth.

Cateracta. Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.

At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.

[1] "*Sebel* idem quod Serasif i. venę rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabēl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sébile, basket.

[2] Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et corneæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

[4] *Cataracta.* The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. floodgate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 *b*, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." Molendinum, "*a mylle.*" Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for wha*n*ne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wole*n* go awei / In þis man*er* þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe iȝe / If þese signes comen wha*n*ne þe stomac is ful, & wha*n*ne he is fastynge & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is i*n* hise iȝen contynuelli, þa*n* it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe iȝen / ¶ Also pu*r*ge hi*m* oones wiþ pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þa*n* þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe passiou*n* comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passiou*n* haþ longe durid i*n* a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se i*n* his iȝe, þa*n* þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigy*n*nyng of cataracta / Wha*n*ne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a ma*n*nes witt þat is vsid i*n* þe craft. & i*n* þis man*er*e þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a man*er* colour vpon þe poynt of þe siȝt of þe iȝe, þat wole su*m*tyme be whit, & su*m*tyme i*n* þe colour of askis, & su*m*tyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a ma*n*nes siȝt //

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

[1 lf. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

Ꝛ

þis man*er* siknes [1]schal be helid wiþ phisic or it be confermed. & wha*n*ne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a ma*n*nes hand. þe pa*tient* mote absteine hi*m* fro sopers[2] & fro al man*er* fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be pu*r*gid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for iȝe*n*, & þa*n* make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad i*n* þis maner. Ꝛ, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirei, fellis anticipitris,[3] fellis aquile & pe*r*dicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. pa*r*tijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. pa*r*tem .j, grinde alle þese & tempe*r*e he*m* wiþ þe iuys of fenigreei & make þe*r*of pelottis. & wha*n*ne þou wolt worche þe*r*wiþ, resolue oon þe*r*of wiþ wate*r* of fenel distillid, & leie it in his iȝe twies on þe day ./

Ꝛ

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

¶ Anoþe*r* liȝt medicyn þat is pre*u*ed / Take askis of vynes & sarce he*m* & make þe*r*of lie wi*th* good whit wijn, & lete it stonde i*n* a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þe*r*i*n*ne. & þis is a good collirie þe*r*fore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þe*r*fore / And if cataracta be [4]so confermed þat it stoppe al þe liȝt, þa*n* it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þe*r* ben manie oþe*r*e i*n*curable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þa*n* make hi*m* close his iȝen togide*r*e, & frote al softe vpon þe iȝe lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his iȝen, þa*n* serue so boþe, & þa*n* lete hi*m* opene his

[4 lf. 170, bk.]

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

[2] *soper*, cœna. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.
[3] *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Dufr. Glass.

ize̅n sodeinli anoon, & loke if' þe poynt' of' þe ize̅ bicome whit',[1] & if' it' bicome not' whit', þa*n* it' is of' .ij. þi*n*gis; ouþe*r* it' is opilaciou*n* of' þe nerue, þa*t*' comeþ fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siz̅t', or it is cataracta þa*t*' is greet' & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of' þe spirit' þa*t*' it' mai not' come to þe poynt' of' þe siz̅t þa*t*' is clepid pupilla / If' þou frotist' his ize̅ as it' is forseid, þa*n* lete hi*m* do vp his ize̅ hastili, & þo*u* schalt' se þa*n* vpon his ize̅ a whit' þi*n*g' as it' were a peerle, þa*n* þou miz̅t' sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of' cirurgie[2] / First' þou schalt' make þe pacient' sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt' sitte a litil hiz̅er þan he, & his ize̅ þa*t*' is hool þou schalt' bynde faste þa*t*' he ne mowe no þi*n*g' se þe*r*wiþ, & þa*n* þou schalt' haue i*n* þi mouþ a fewe braunchis [3]of' fenel, & þou schalt' breke he*m* a litil w*ith* þi teeþ, & þa*n* þou schalt' blowe i*n* his ize̅ .ij. siþis or iij. þa*t*' þe fume of' þe fenel mowe entre into his ize̅ / þa*n* þou schalt' haue an instrument' of' siluir, schape i*n* the maner of' a nedle, and it' schal sitte i*n* a greet' hafte þa*t*' þou mai þe bettir hold it' wiþ þi*n* hand, & þa*n* þou schalt' bigy*n*ne aforz̅ens þe lasse corner of' þe ize̅, & þou schalt' putte i*n* þin instrument' anoon to þe corn þa*t*' is i*n* þe ize̅, & wh*an*ne þou seest' þe poi*n*t' of' þe instrument' vndir þe corn,[4] þa*n* lete þe poi*n*t' of' þin instrument' goon anoon to þe wat*er* þa*t*' is gaderid tofore þe ize̅ / And wh*an*ne þou hast' broken þe place þa*t*' þe wat*er* was y*n*ne, þa*n* presse it' adou*n*ward, & drawe out' al þe watir þe*r*of' clene,[5] & if' þe*r* come more watir þe*r*to, þa*n* þou must' reherse þis werk az̅e*n*. & if' þe*r* come no more wat*ir* þe*r*to, þa*n* þou schalt' leie vpon his ize̅ a plastre m*aa*d of' þe z̅elke of' an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon ly*n*nen clooþ & binde vpon his ize̅, & lete þe pa*tient* be i*n* a derk place, & he schal heere no

eye by rubbing the eyelid.

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then bandage the sound eye,

[3 f. 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

[1] *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

[2] Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars.* Leipzig. 1876.

[4] *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usq*ue* ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum aute*m* instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsq*ue* ad aqua*m* quæ est coram pupilla.

[5] *& drawe out al þe watir þeroſ clene*, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, whe*n* they are confirmed, then we must turne to ha*n*dy operatio*n*. And though we cou*n*seyled to leave it to ye tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare ye maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b^.

and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wiþinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so þat he cowȝe not [1] & fro wraþþe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe iȝe siȝt is stoppid wiþinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid

[1 lf. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

pigra Rasis

þerof; ouþer it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wiþ pululis cochijs þat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte ȝeue, & þou muste do in his iȝen drijnge collirijs & opere drijng medicyns / Ouþer it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge & þat mai liȝtli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & opere particlis þat be forseid, for blood letynge wole helpe for to avoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wiþ oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden þerto softli / ℞, mele of beenis þat be sotil & grinde it wiþ wiþi leeues smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .ʒ. ij., & also biteine .ℑ .j., absinthium .ʒ j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, probatum est.

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

℞

Hordeolum is a swelling in the eye-lids,

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in [2] his iȝe liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio [3] & make þerof a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wiþ storax liquida & anointe him þerwiþ / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doiþ diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot water.

[2 lf. 172]

and affects new-born children.

Grando. A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe iȝe liddis, & sumtyme it wole schewe wiþinneforþ, & sumtyme wiþoute. & whanne it schewiþ wiþoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & opere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wiþ þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wiþ þe white of an eij & opere þingis þat ben soudinge //

If medicines fail to effect absorption, extirpate the growth.

fistula lacrimalis

¶ ffistula lacrimalis,[4] þat is as miche to seie as a feestre wiþ

[3] "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heyght." Halle, *Table*, p. 63.

[4] Sl. 2463, f. 90: "*A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may not passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therfore of sume hit is eleped lupinus.*"

teeris / þis comeþ *in* þe corner of þe iȝe next þe [1] nose, & engendriþ þe*re* & makiþ a þi*ng* as greet as it were a pese. & if þese humours leeue þe*re* longe þei wolen rotie & þei wole*n* make vle*us* þe*re*, & þe*r* wole come manie teeris þe*r*to, and þei mai not be m*aa*d drie, & þis mai leeue þe*re* so longe þat þe*r* wole engendre a feestre þe*r*of. & but if þat feestre be curid while it is freisch, it wole rote þe boon, & þe lenger þat it wexiþ oold, þe worse it wole be for to cure.

[1 If. 172, bk.]

At the inner angle of the eye a growth begins, which ulcerates,

gives rise to a fistula and finally affects the bone.

¶ þe firste bigy*n*nynge of þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ cochijs & wiþ pigra, þa*n* do þe*r*on þis collirin*m* / ℞, aloes, thuris, sarcocolle, sangu*ai*nis drac*onis*, balaustie, antimonij, a*luminis*, an*a*, floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe p*art* of oon of þe forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & diste*mpere* he*m* wiþ reyn wate*r* or wiþ wate*r* of ros*es*, & caste it *in* þe corner of his iȝe, but þe place schal be maad drie first. & þa*n* þou schalt do þe*r*to oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schule*n* be seid *in* þe antidotarie, or þis medicyn þat is aproued / Take clene mirre .ʒ .ij. & make þerof poudre & make it þicke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat it be as þicke as it were a*n* oynement, [2] & leie it vpon ly*n*ne*n* clooþ & leie þis þe*r*vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it clene / ¶ If it so be þat it be not curid wi*th* þis medicy*n*, þanne it is a signe þat þe boon is rotid, & þa*n* þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhile þe boo*n*, & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot iren as fer as it is rotid / & þanne leie þe*r*vpon buttir or grese þat þe scar þe*r* mowe falle awei, & þa*n* þou muste reherse þe cauterie aȝen. & þa*n*ne leie þe*r*vpon buttir, & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þa*n* leie þe*r*vpon oile of rosis hoot medlid wiþ ȝelke of an ey til al þe brennynge falle awey. & þan drie þe place wi*th* drijnge medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch & soude it, & þou schalt wite þat þe*r* is noon so good maner medicyn as þis is / For if þou wolt leie þe*r*to ony corosif wate*r*, þat wole brenne forþe*re* þa*n* it schulde / & also it were greet p*er*el for þe iȝe & þe*r*fore it is good for to worche as it is aforseid / [3]

[2 If. 173]

R

puluis contra fistula lacremali.

a cleansing ointment.

R

If the disease has affected the bone, use the hot iron repeatedly until the diseased part of the bone is removed.

[3] The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ *Also he*[a] *seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corupcion comyth ayen byeause of þe partie whiche leuyth behynde corupt.* ¶ *He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt disseuerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered.*

[a] Lanfrank.

Of þe passioun of eeris.

¶ ij°. c°.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[1 lf. 173, bk.]

The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[2 lf. 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe iȝen / in
þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe
eris & makiþ heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. [1] Þe hoolis in a 4
mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis
skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde
not come into þe brayn anoon, but alitil & alitil bi degree, & also
for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly 8
entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not riȝt
forþ, but hidir & þidir, for if þe weie were riȝtforþ, it wolde þe
raþere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginis
þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be 12
pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde
haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be
maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þerfore
itt was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to 16
seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan
fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknessis, & summe þerof
falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to phisik
as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & [2] defaute of heeringe & 20
deefnes.[3] Akynge of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme
harme fallynge þerto / & þerfore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe
of sirurge and of phisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknessis of
þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akynge of eeris. Ouþer it 24
is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan
it is of yuel complexioun & hoot; [4] þat þou miȝt knowe bi scharp
akynge & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ cast-
ynge into þe eere oile of rosis, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28
.iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akynge go not awei in þis maner,
þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel
complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid
þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32
schalt cure him wiþ þingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of
maiorana, or oile of lilie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in
þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

[3] MS. *deesires.*

[4] The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

no coold þing', & þon schalt' stuwe þe pacient'[1] / Sumtyme it' comeþ [1 lf. 174, bk.]
of' sum þing' þat' falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon, Aching caused by a foreign body in the ear:
or watir; þis þon schalt' knowe bi þe tellinge of' þe pacient'; for if'
4 þer be ony þing' wiþinne, me mai se it'. If' it' so be þat' þer be If it is a stone, cast hot oil into the ear;
falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of' rosis, or oile of'
almaundis, & if' þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þon schalt' do noon If it is a grain use an instrument,
oile in his eere; for it' wole make þe corn wexe greet'. Make a
8 litil instrument' of' tree or of' sum oþer þing' & wete it' in terbentyn or try the cupping-glass.
& putte it' into his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, ouþir þe greyn, &
þan it' wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it' out' / ¶ Also smite his eere If it is a worm, apply warm water.
wiþ þe pawme of' þin hand, & bi hap it' wole falle out' þerwiþ / Also
12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of' his eere, for þis sumtyme
wole drawe out' a corn ouþer a stoon.[2] ¶ If' þer entriþ ony worme
into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of' flact watir,[3] & þan drie If the pains are caused by an apostema,
it' / And if' þis suffisiþ not', fille his eere ful of' oile of' almaundis
16 þat' ben bittir; & if' þis suffisiþ not', þan do in his eere iuys of'
calamynte.

¶ If' þe akynge come of' humouris gaderid to apostym, þat' þou
[4] miȝt' knowe bi greet' akynge, & akynge of' his pons,[5] & bi þe [4 lf. 175]
20 swellynge of' þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe
akynge wiþ oile of' rosis, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe bleed the patient from the Vena Cephalica,
same side. If' it' so be þat' he mai not' be lete blood, for sum cause or scarify his shoulders;
þat' lettiþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile
24 of' rosis wiþ a litil vinegre. If' þee þinkiþ þat' þe mater comeþ of'
colre, þat' þou schalt' knowe bi signes þat' ben forseid, þan purge
him wiþ a decoccion of' mirabolanorum / If' þe mater be not' if this fails to soothe the pain, apply a poultice and a plaster, until suppuration begins.
aswagid, ne þe akinge do awei, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis
28 of' fenigree & of' lynseed, & rotis of' altea, wiþ wommans milk, &
do it' flat'[6] into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat' it'
hile al þe eere, maad of' lynseed, & barli, & rotis of' altea, & of'
lilie, & medle hem with gandris grese & grese of' an hen. & þis cure
32 þou schalt' contynueli do, til þe quitture come out' of' his eere, & þe

[2] The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "*And yef be water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment.* ¶ *Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe vyne and putte þe toue ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe wex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vppe.*"

[3] *flact watir.* Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare *flaccid.* Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

[5] Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

[6] *flat*, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.

akynge accesse.[1] & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris
If the matter is caused by cold, ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makiþ
[2 lf. 175, bk.] þe enpostym come [2]of cooldnes, & þat falliþ fnl seelde, but if it
come *in* an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynge & bi þe 4
purge, cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide hi*m* wiþ
instil oil of lilies into the ear, pill*ulas* coch*ie* & wiþ a clisterie. & caste i*n*to his eere oile of lilies,
& resolue i*n* þe same oile ʒ .ß. euforbij ouþir .ʒ. j. de turbit, &
anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer- 8
apply A ffumigaciou*n* ffor the eere vpon wolle vnwaische*n*, & make hi*m* a fumigaciou*n* to his eere wiþ
hoot wat*er* in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis
and a garlic-plaster. suffisiþ not, leie þ*er*-vpon an enplast*er* or an oynemen*t*, & of garleke,
& rotis of lilie soden to-gidere & gron*n*den wiþ butt*er*, & do þ*er*to 12
leuayn, & do þ*er*to oile of lilie or of camom*ille*, & a litil vinegre, &
make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotiþ
coold mater & drawiþ it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place i*n* þe eere
þat quitture is gaderid on, þa*n* it is good to opene þat place & 16
dr*a*we out þe quitture as it schal be seid heraftir. & þa*n* þou schalt
[3 lf. 176] cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafte*r*.

If the pain arises from wind in the ear, Su*m*tyme akynge of eeris comeþ of gret [3]wynd & sou*n*d i*n* þe
eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & falliþ i*n*to þe eeris.[4] 20
Þis þou miȝt knowe liȝtly, for wiþ þe aky*n*ge he schal haue a maner
noise i*n* his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoidi*n*g of
instil oil of rue. greet humours, & þou schalt caste i*n*to his eere oile of rue, & i*n*
þe same oile schal be dissolued a litil castor, & he mote kepe hi*m* 24
fro al þing þat engendriþ wynd.

If the pain is caused by ulcers in the ear, a stinking pus will be discharged. ¶ Also akynge of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat be*n* wiþi*n*ne in
þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge
tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynge & cours of quitture þat 28
stynkiþ. & þe more sti*n*ki*n*g þat þe quitture is & þe more departid
fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / ffirst þou schalt make
The mundificatives. elene his heed w*ith* cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-
ficatiuis to his eere & drijng þi*n*gis. & be war þat þou worche not 32
.G*alien*. as .G. seiþ þat su*m*me worchiþ: þei leide þ*er*to an oynemen*t* þat
A noxious ointment. was good for wou*n*dis, & alwey þe pa*tient* hadde þe more penau*n*ce,[5]
.G*alien*. & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & þ*er*fore .G. axiþ wha*t* is good
[6 lf. 176, bk.] [6]þ*er*fore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

[1] *accesse*, O.Fr. acesser.

[4] Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

[5] *penaunce*, Lat. dolor; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

drijnge þingis, he seiþ fals ; for drijnge þingis constreineþ, & apostym is constreynyng / And summen han now newe rulis : þat wiþ contrarijs contrarie þingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren, & grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile hem togidere, til þe rust bicome drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme. & þan þou muste poudre it azen, & seþe it in vinegre azen til it bicome þicke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do awey þe akynge / And take hony .ʒ. .x., vinegre ʒ. viij., & boile hem liʒtly at þe fier til it be wel skymed,[1] & þan do þerto ʒ .ij. of vert de grece, and [2]medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, & putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold.

One must not apply drying remedies.

℞ ffor vlcers in þe eere

A powder that is applied to the ear by a tent.

℞ A preparation of rust heals the ulcer, dries the moisture and allays the pain.

℞ An application for old ulcers.

[2] If. 177]

¶ If a man be deef, þan it comeþ of summe of þe forseid causis, & principali of longe akynge; also it comeþ of child bering, & þanne it is incurable / Also if it comeþ of humours þat stoppiþ nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben openynge. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .ʒ .j., castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana ʒ. ß, euforbij .ʒ. j, costi grana .xv, & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere ; saue þou schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci, absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .ʒ .j., & grynde hony & oile togidere / If þe passioun comeþ of defaute of spiritis, þanne putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be baþid & haue reste, & vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for to make him haue heerynge / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene [3]froggis, þat lyuen among trees ;[4] take hem & seþe hem, & gadere þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis haþ vertu for to make men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto þe .iij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie hoot to his eere /

Deafness resulting from child-bearing is incurable.

If it is caused by the humours, purge and instil opening medicines into the ear.

℞ a ffumygacio.

℞ If deafness arises from a weakness of the spirit, strengthen the patient,

[3] If. 177, bk.]

and apply the fat of green frogs.

[1] *skymed.* Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

[4] Some words like *is good* are wanting.

Of þe passiou*n* of þe nose & anoth*ami*a.

¶ iij. co.

The nose has two holes through which the brain is purged.

Air is gathered in the "colatorium," and there is the seat of smelling.

The nose has two bones,

AS we hane bifore seid þat þ*er* ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe brayn is p*ur*gid þ*er*bi of superfluite. & þe nose is not neruous, & þe nose is a p*ro*pre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in þe nose ben m*aa*d fast i*n* þe scolle. & i*n* þat place is ordeyned a þi*n*g þat is clepid colatoriu*m*,[1] & eir is gaderid þ*eri*nne þat makiþ v*er*tu of smellynge. & þoruȝ þat place þe sup*er*fluitees of þe brayn be*n* po*ur*gid, & þ*er* is oon hoole þ*er*of þat goiþ toward þe monþ. & þe nose is m*aa*d of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat be*n* aboue ben ioynynge wiþ þe boones of þe iȝen. & þe boonys of þe nose þat be*n* bineþe ben cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.[2]

Latin Original.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuisti. In medio vero habet aliam cartillaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuuamentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumentum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem: & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & coopertorium superfluitatibus: quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator. Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pulmonem: tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum. Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria. Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

and three cartilages.

The nose provides the brain with air.

The nasal cavity communicates with the mouth, 1. that one may breathe through the nose,

[1] *os colatorium.* I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg: "Destillat autem humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod pejus est; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna mentions the "os colatorium" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I. Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis. 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa facta fuerunt . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, collatorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find the same theory in the French name for a cold: "rhume de cerveau," and for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. brain.

[2] Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the *Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas: quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare: literas incidere: syllabas solidare: ad hoc sæpe labia clauderentur & dentes: si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret: & vocem etiam generatam non claram emitteret: facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulæ superius,[1] quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum: quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.[2]

2. to purge the brain; 3. it helps in the articulation of words.

In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulæ, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.

Pustulæ fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vnctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.

Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.

Vlcera quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.

Caro superflua remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri: remouetur residuum cum puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus: & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.

Proud flesh is removed with an instrument.

Polypus dicitur a polypo pisce: cuius malitiosa est astutia: quia quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris: & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem: sed volentes quiescere, salliunt de mari: polypus illos absorbet: & in eius conuertit nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem: quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite: & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem hæret naso seu substantiæ nasi inuiscata: et humores capitis agitatione moti naturæ volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam:

The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.

[1] Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin: gallice flaute.

[2] The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," *i. e.* the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacitatem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: 4 immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum 8 seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus. Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: & magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori nigredine maiorique participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12 occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam tunc tenet cancri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis eius malitiam augmentari.

There are two kinds of polype:

1. The incurable one has the nature of a cancer.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16 fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis & cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum. Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20 materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus, non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatiuam curam adhibe: sicut in cura cancri recolimus ostendisse.

2. The curable one may be treated like proud flesh.

De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iiii.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28 tatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti; in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens 32 ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.[1] Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:[2] & continuatur cum nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris 36 mouetur per eius musculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

The membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument of the stomach.

The organ of voice is composed of three cartilages.

[1] Cartilago cricoidea. [2] Cartilagines arytænoideæ.

canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet
4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussiendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] [1]til þat mete be ont of his þrote, saue algate he schal couȝe til it be oute. & þan aboue
8 þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet[2] of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ[3] aȝens þe palet & makiþ þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of
12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij. teeþ, & þerof sittiþ .xvj. in þe cheke boon,[4] & summen han but
16 .xxviij. / And for to hile a mannes teeþ ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teeþ & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle
20 þei han diuers passiouns.

[1 lf. 178]

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teeþ.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

¶ **Vuula** sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderiþ an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexiþ to long,[5] & sumtyme apostym of
24 þe [6]palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.[7] & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme,
28 & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: ℞, lentes, balaustias, psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosis, & sandalis,[8] & balaustiarum & a
32 litil of camphre / Þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

. Vuula.

[6 lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle,

Gargarismus.

℞

If cold humour cause the apostema,

[2] *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

[3] *rebound*, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

[4] Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

[5] Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

[7] *fretis*, fruit. [8] MS. inserts *& rosis.*

purge and use a gargle.

miche spotil *in* his mouþ, first þou schalt purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decocciou*n*: ℞, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum[1] & þe seed of rosis & peletre[2] & ȝinȝibere, & þan make him poudre of pepir [3]& sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.[4] & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum[5] / If þe palet be recchid along, & if it be so long þat it lie vpon þe tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof as þee þinkiþ good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couȝinge, & his lungis miȝte be þe worse þerfore & also his piys.[6] & þerfore it is greet perel for to kutte a mannes palet.[7]

℞

[3 lf. 179]

A powder applied by a Funnel.

If the uvula gets too long, remove a portion.

Be ware not to cut too deep.

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknessis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicomeþ schorter þan it schulde be. And þer is anoþer passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam[8] & spasmum, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexiþ to long.[9] ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot humours, þanne þou schalt bigynne þe cure þerof in þis [10]maner / ffirst lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iuys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou schalt cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

the tong suffers from many diseases.

Ranulam.

In case of an apostema in the tongue,

[5 lf. 179, bk.]

bleed from the head-vein and use a wash.

[1] MS. over *mirtillorum* is written *mirtelberys*.

[2] *pelletre*, Lat. pyrethrum. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelleter* Cath. Angl. and Note ibid.

[4] *enbotum*, Lat. embotum. See *Dufr.* = infundibulum. Fr. embut, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

[5] *sappa michum*, Lat. saramitum.

[6] *piys*, Lat. pectus. O.Fr. pis.

[7] Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennynge yren keruynge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennynge yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape cauterie*d."

[8] *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, De re veterin. 4, 5, 1. Gr. βάτραχος. Fr. grenouillette.

[9] The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breviationem fili, ranulam, spasmum et relaxationem.

ony swellynge of' coold humouris, þan purge him with pill*ul*is þat' be forseid of' .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat' his tunge was so swolle þat' it' mizte not' be conteyned *in* his mouþ. & first' I made him purgaciou*ns* & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & *in* þis maner he was curid. ¶ **Scissure** is a passiou*n* *in* a mannes tunge þat' is as it' were kutting'. & þat' schal be curid wiþ þe iuys of' malue soden wiþ psillium & medlid wiþ sugre & sode, & herwiþ he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal drinke water of' barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet' wel soden, & wiþ þe nerues of' þe feet' he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a þreed[1] vndir sum mannes tunge þat' he mai not' put' out' his tunge as he schulde, & also it' lettiþ him to speke. þe cure herof' is for to kutte þat' þreed, [2]& þan brenne him. & it' is better for to make an instrument' of' goold & brenne it' þerwiþ, & kutte also wiþ þe same instrument' / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes tunge of' fleume[3] & also of' malancolie, saue of' malancolie an enpostym comeþ but' selden / þese ben þe signes if' it' come of' malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If' it' come of' fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wiþ salt', til þe blood come out' þerof'. & if' þis suffise not', þan frote it' wel wiþ vitriol / If' þe spasme come *in* a mannes tunge þat' wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof' is for to holde oile of' anete *in* his mouþ & of' camomille hoot' as he mai suffre, & make an enplastre herof' medlid wiþ hoot' water, & leie it' vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot' / If' his tunge bicome neische, þan þou muste purge him wiþ pill*ul*is fetidis,[4] or with trociseo de turbit'. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: ℞, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi euforbij,[5] & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof' & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony [6]& medle hem togidere, & make herof' þe maner of' a letuarie; & herof' he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it' vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of *Galien.*

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frenum linguæ" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[2 lf. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

℞

[6 lf. 180, bk.]

[1] *þreed*, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

[3] Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "*Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge.*"

[4] *pillulæ fetidæ*, pills composed from fetid things.

[5] Halle, *Table*, p. 35. '*Euphorbium*, Ευφόρβιον: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in ye time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wiþ þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool; for he miȝte not speke, & herwiþ his speche come aȝen.[1]

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teeþ: sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teeþ,[2] & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomae, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anoon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he 8 schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teeþ akiþ for sour þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wiþ his teeþ hoot wex[3] / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, medlid wiþ watir, [4]ouþer coold watir & vinegre / If þe akynge be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akynge wiþ þis 16 medicyn: ℞, seminis iusquiami albi[5] opij ana ℥ .j, seminis apij ℥ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a peee, & leie oon herof vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, in which is dissolued masticis. ¶ If þe akynge come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wiþ eochijs or wiþ pigra. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatesseron.[6] 24 ¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akiþ / ℞, olium oliuarum .℥ ij., aceti .℥ j., coloquintidae, piperis ana .ʒ .j.,

caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane.

If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

[4 If. 181]

To soothe the pain, ℞ apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear. ℞

[1] Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatissæ sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

[2] *of viis of þe teeþ*, dentium vitio. *viis* is used synonymously with *defaute*. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 *b.*: "*These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe.*"

[3] This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

[5] Halle, *Table*, 52. "*Hyosciamus.* Henbane is called in Greeke Ὑοσκυαμος; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelowe and the whyte."

[6] *diatessaron*, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers *Diatessaron* is taken for Horse-treacle; — —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian. Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

& boile he*m* i*n* a double vessel, & distille it' in his eere flaisch[1] / Sumtyme a ma*n*nes teeþ ben frete & ben holow, & þis comeþ of' humours corrupt' þat' falliþ to þe teeþ. & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' cure it' / ℞, oli*um* .℥ j., sansuci[2] sicci,[3] se*min*is sicute an*a* ʒ ß. boile he*m* togidere, & þan þou schalt' haue [4]a cauterie wiþ .ij. pointis, & þ*o*u schalt' haue þe schap herof' heraftir, & þou schalt' make þe same instrument' hoot' i*n* þe fier, & þan putte it' i*n* þe forseid oile, & þa*n* putte it' in þe hole of' his tooþ, & be war þat' þou touche not' his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis: & þis medicyn þou muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out' of' þe teeþ, & it' wole do awei þe akynge. ¶ If' þou desirist' to drawe out' ony mannes tooþ wiþouten iren: ℞, cortices radicum mori & piretru*m* an*a*, diste*mpe*re he*m* wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel togidere, & drie he*m* in þe su*nn*e, & departe liʒtli þe tooþ & þe fleisch of' þe gomis & leie of' þe medicy*n* bitwixe þe tooþ & þe fleisch / Also lac titimalli[5] diste*mpe*rid wiþ flour of' amidu*m* / Also make poudre of' peletre & lete it' lie in vinegre i*n* þe somer tyme, & kepe it'; þis makith neische, þat' þe tooþ mowe be d*ra*we out' wiþouten ony iren / If' a ma*n*nes teeþ be*n* blac, i*n* þis maner þou schalt' make hem whit' / ℞, farina*m* ordei, sal an*a*, & leie he*m* i*n* hony, & make þ*e*rof' past' & folde it' i*n* paper [6]or i*n* ly*n*nen cloop, & bre*n*ne it' i*n* a furneis. & þa*n* bre*n*ne schellis of' eiren, & cip*e*ri, al*um*inis an*a* p*ar*tes duas, corticu*m* cit*ri* siccor*um*, camfer an*a* p*ar*tem vna*m*, make herof' poudre, and frote þ*er*wiþ his teeþ & hise gomis, & þis wole do awei þe blaknes of' a ma*n*nes teeþ /

If the teeth are hollow ℞ cauterize the hole with the hot iron. [4 If. 181, bk.]

To draw teeth without using the iron. ℞

A powder to make black teeth white. ℞ [6 If. 182]

Of þe passioun in wo*m*men brestis /

¶ v. c°. A woman's breasts are made of glandular flesh, blood-vessels and nerves, and the blood is turned to milk in them.

GOd almiʒti made i*n* a wo*m*man tetis for þe norischinge of' a child. & a wo*m*mans tetis ben maad of' fleisch þ*at*' is glandulous, & of' veines, & of' arterijs, & of' ne*r*ues, & ben but' veines þat' come*n* fro a wo*m*mans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it' is seid here tofore, & i*n* what' maner blood t*ur*neþ i*n*to milk it' is forseid.[7]

[1] *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

[2] "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

[3] MS. *succi*.

[5] *lac titimalli*. τιθύμαλος, euforbia.

[7] Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis. et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam cpar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albificat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius.

¶ In a wo*m*mans tetis comeþ manie passiou*n*s / ffor, as Egidius seiþ, þat sumtyme þ*er* comeþ þ*er*to apostym of milk, & sumtyme vlc*er*a / And comou*n*ly enpostyms comeþ of blood þat is d*ra*we to þe tetis & mai not turne i*n*to milk, or if a wo*m*man haue to miche blood, & it comeþ of febilnes of v*er*tu as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym i*n* þe tetis / ffirst þou [1]schalt lete hir blood i*n* Basilica, or sette a ve*n*tuse vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retenc*i*ou*n* of menstrue, þa*n* þou schalt ȝeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe menstrue, or þou schalt lete hir blood i*n* þe sophene, & anointe þe place wiþ oile of ro*sis*, & þe fourþe p*ar*t of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan wete a ly*n*nen cloop in þe iuys of solatri,[2] & wh*a*nne þou hast anoyntid þe place wiþ oile & vinegre, þan leie þis cloop þ*er*vpon. & loke þat alle þingis þat þou leist þ*er*to be flasch hoot;[3] for þ*er* schal no coold þi*n*g be leid þ*er*to for þe place is neruous, for coold þi*n*g wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, sanc þe mater bigy*n*neþ to drawe to quitture, þa*n*ne leie þ*er*to maturatiuis. & if þou miȝt not do it awei wiþ rep*er*cussiuis ne wiþ resoluynge þi*n*gis, & þou ne miȝt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe wo*m*man bicome i*n* a passiou*n* þat is clepid Mania.[4] Þan hir heed mote be schaue, & ȝeue hir confortif þi*n*gis for hir heed, & ȝeue hir sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete [5]no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a wo*m*man þat hadde an enpostym i*n* hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do[6] as it is aforseid, & þo þ*er* come a lewid cirurgian & rep*r*euede me, & he leide þ*er*vpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat he leide þ*er*vpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more bre*n*ny*n*ge. & þe same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wo*m*mans freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wiþi*n*ne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis p*ro*nosticaciou*n* I seide in þe bigynnynge, but þei wolde not leue mi wordis[7] / If it so be þat it make quitture, þan opene it & do out þe quitture, & þan leie þ*er*to a mundificatif,

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.

Treatment of a hot apostema.

[1 lf. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[5 lf. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

[2] Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum. doth Galen also call Esculentum."

[3] *flasch hoot*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

[4] De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "*ypocras seiþ þat in wommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes.*"

[6] *do*, above line.

[7] Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

& be wel war *þat* þou putte *þerinne* no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wo*m*mans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues were *pressid* wiþ ony tent, it wolde make gret akynge, & wolde lette þe cure *þerof*. ¶ Also *þer* ben manie foli lechis, wh*an*ne þei fynde*n* [1] *in* a wo*m*mans tetis fleisch *þat* is glandelous, þan þei wene *þat* it be wickid fleisch, & be*n* *þer*aboute for to drawe it out, & þan þei schendiþ al þe substa*n*nce of þe brest. Þou schalt worche wiseli & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & wh*an*ne *þat* is clensid wiþ mundificatiuis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie it / If it be so, *þat* coold mater gadere to enpostym *in* a wo*m*mans brest, & *þat* comeþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wiþ oile of camom*ille*, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid *þer*wiþ. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgaciou*n*, & if it resolue not, þan leie þerto matura-tiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be *þat* þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war *þat* þou leie *þer*to no medicyns *þat* be*n* to hoot, for *þer* mai engendre a cancre *þer*of ful liȝtli. & if it be so, þan be þou not *þer*aboute for to make it maturatif, & do þou no cure *þer*to. & su*m*men seien *þat* a wo*m*man mai be curid for [2] to kutte off al þe brest, & *þat* is al fals. Saue þou schalt kepe þe place wiþ vng*uentum* de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, *þat* sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis *þat* I seie; þouȝ I haue curid manie men of diuers e*m*postyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were *in* a fleischi place *þer*e I miȝte kut al awei wiþouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines [3] / & a wo*m*mans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcera *þat* be*n* *in* a wo*m*mans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid *in* þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war *þat* þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes *þer*of, saue þou schalt do *þer*to medicyns *þat* ben mundificatif & driynge / It falliþ to su*m*me wo*m*men *þat* þe point of hir tete ne goiþ not out, but ben al hid *in* þe tete so *þat* a child mai not take it *in* his mouþ for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an acurne, & *þat* is lyk to þe point of a wo*m*mans tete, & do *þer*on terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir tete & bi*n*de [4] it *þer*to faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

Be ware not to use a great tent, as many fools do.

Many foolish physicians [1 lf. 183, bk.] **remove the glandular flesh, mistaking it for corrupt flesh.**

If cold matter gathers into an apostema, apply an ointment and maturatives.

If the matter becomes hard, it may easily become a cancer. In case of cancer, [2 lf. 184] **operation does not help: but apply an ointment and purge to prolong the patient's life.**

I have only cured a true cancer in a fleshy part.

Ulcers in a woman's breast are treated with mundificative and drying medicines.

If the nipples are hid in the breast draw them out with an acorn-cup.

R7

[4 lf. 184, bk.]

[3] There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of enlargement of the breast apply

tete. ¶ Also it bifalliþ to maidenes þat her tetis bicomeþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettiþ knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicome þicke þerof, & make it hoot & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendiþ þat þei schulen not wexe, & make hem bicome litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it wiþ hony & vinegre; and it worchiþ þe more strongli if þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it lie þeron .iij. daies, & þan þou schalt waische it wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat sche haue no sich medicyn, if hir brest schal wexe ony more.[1] ¶ If þat milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest for hete, þanne þou schalt anointe hir brest wiþ oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt make an enplastre as [2]of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat wole dissolue mylk þat is congelid hard, and it wole make þe mater of an enpostym maturatif / ℞, mice panis, farina ordei, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. ℥ j, radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.[3] ana. ℥ .j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof a plastre & leie it vpon flasch hoot /

the powder of a whet-stone and vinegar,

or a plaster of cumin with honey and vinegar.

If the milk becomes hard, anoint the breast with oil and apply a solvent.

[2 If. 185]

℞

ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vj° co/

ANothamia of þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, & sumtyme it recchiþ alongt, & sumtyme it to-brekiþ wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet wepinge, & sumtyme for greet crijnge, & sumtyme for greet traueile. ¶ If siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouþer aboute þe heeris, þat þou myȝt knowe in þis maner: þe place wole be to-swolle an hiȝ as it were an enpostym. & wh*an*ne þou touchist it wiþ þi fyngir, it wole goon yn aȝen. & sumtyme it wole come aȝen, & it wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but liȝt, & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat schal be seid in þe brekinge [4]of þe siphac. & if siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe greet noise, wh*an*ne þou lest þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

If the "siphac" protrudes at the navel or the groins,

use a ligature and a plaster.

[4 If. 185, bk.]

If the siphac is broken a gurgling sound is heard, on the application of pressure.

[1] The translator has omitted the following passage: Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.

[3] *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucæ*. Brassica eruca L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for Verrucaria.

aȝen.[1] ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a brac- Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;
cal[2] *id est* a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be
maad of lynnen cloop maniefoold,[3] & þou muste make a plate of iren,
4 as brood as þe brekyng is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe
forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste
ordeyne þerfore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it
mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.
8 for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge in þis maner / ℞, ℞
glutinum piscium vel carte .℥. iiij, picis grece .℥. .iiij, picis nauali
armoniaci ana. ℥ ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in
℥. ij. of vinegre, & ℥ .iiij. of oile of mastices & lete hem lie þeron
12 adai & anyȝt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron
medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuinis,
draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ℥ ß. medle hem longe
togidere / Oupir take [4]scropholarie[5] þe rynde þerof & grinde it [[4] If. 186]
16 wiþ grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make
poudre, & ȝeue him þerof eueri dai .ʒ .j. & ß. wiþ wijn / Also ȝeue
him euery dai .ʒ .j & ß of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian
temperid wiþ wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his
20 ballok leþir,[6] þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Of hernia[7] of þe ballokis //

THis siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner wh*anne* ¶ vij. c°/
a mannes bowels falliþ into his ballokis leþeris, & þan it is
24 clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer falliþ watir into þe same place as Scrotal hernias

[1] The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

[2] *braccal*, Lat. brachale = cingulum coriaceum Dufr., from med. Lat. bracæ. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salic, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 *b*. "*Wiþoute cuttynge moost children & oþere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schewynge wiþ a lumbare or a bawdrike, & oure plastre & powdre mauye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bawdrike oreþ to be maad of lynnen cloþ þrefold.*" Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "*The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle.*"

[3] *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

[5] *scropholarie*, scrophularia, water betony, *medewort* written above. See Wr. Wül. *mêdwurt*.

[6] *ballok leþir*, testiculorum bursa.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; birsa. Sl. 2463, f. 123 *b*.: *þe purs of þe ballokes.* [7] MS. *hernio*.

Hernia intestinalis, hernia aquosa, hernia ventosa, hernia carnosa, hernia varicosa.

.1. Either the Zirbus or the [1 lf. 186, bk.] bowels fall into the enlargened Didymus.

2. They fall through a rupture of the Siphac into the Scrotum.

This latter case can only be cured by operation.

it' were a dropesie, & þan it' is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouiþir *þer* comeþ wijnd *into* þe same place, & þan it' is clepid hernia ventosa. And sumtyme *þer* wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet', & þan it' is clepid hernia carnosa / And sumtyme *þer* be*n* veynes *þer*eaboute ful of' 4 malancolious blood & wele be gret' as it' were notis, & þan it' is clepid he*r*nia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Dindimus, *þat'* anathomia *þerof'* is [1]forseid, wexiþ wide for su*m* moistnes *þat'* falliþ *þer*to, so þat' ȝirbus, ouþ*er* þe bowels falliþ adoun i*n* þe 8 same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ouþ*er* siphac is to-broke i*n* þe flank wiþ oon of' þe forseid causis i*n* þe chapitre tofore / & þoruȝ þe same breki*ng'* þe bowels falliþ adou*n* ouþir ȝirbus, & bitwixe dindim*us* & mirac þei fallen adou*n* i*n*to þe ballok leþeris. & þis 12 maner falliþ ful selde*n*. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony medicyns, but' wiþ kuttynge it' mai be curid & sewid. & who þat' vsiþ sich man*er* boo*n*dis aforseid, but' if' it' be i*n* children & i*n* newe causis, it' is al traueile i*n* idil, & þe pa*tient* haþ greet' penau*n*ce *þer*wiþ 16 wiþouten ony p*r*ofit'. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. man*er* is ful hard for to cure, & *þer*fore it' is ful necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe alle þe maners herof' & anathamia*m* as it' is forseid lest' he falle i*n* errour. ¶ þer be*n* manie men *þat'* ben hardi for to 20 entermete of' þese curis *þat'* knowen not' þe maner of' þe sijknes ne þe diffence *þer*of', & *þer*fore þei falliþ aldai i*n* errour. & þe lasse good *þat'* [2]*þat'* þei ku*n*ne, þe raþ*er*e þei wole ent*er*mete of' sich an hard cause. & þis cause is ful p*er*ilous / I haue seen manie wise 24 me*n* *þat'* coude do þis cure ful wel, & ȝitt' þei wolde not' entermete *þer*of' / þerfore þou muste take consideraciou*n* sotilli, where þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ þe brekynge of' siphac ouþir þoruȝ dindimu*m*, & *þat'* þou schalt' knowe i*n* þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28 bowels or ȝirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuau*n*ce, & þan þou miȝt' fele his bowels or ȝirbu*m* i*n* þe botme of' þe ballok leþir, & þan þer is but' oon skyn to-broke, & *þat'* is mirac. & wh*an*ne þou wolt' putte yn þe bowels aȝen, þou miȝt' fele in what' place þei goon in. 32 & wh*an*ne hise bowels ben y*n*ne, þan lete þe pa*tient* stonde vp, & hise bowels wolen falle out' sodeinli aȝen, & þan þou miȝt' fele in what' place þei comeþ out' / In þe .ij. caas ȝirbus or þe bowels, or boþe come*n* adou*n* alitil & alitil, & makiþ miche gurgulac*iou*n, & þe 36 wei *þat'* þei comeþ out' is algate su*m*what' greet' in dindimo, & *þat'* wole not' be put' yn wh*an*ne þe bowels ben putt' yn, saue [3]wiþ greet' penau*n*ce & i*n* longe tyme. & wh*an*ne þe bowels falliþ þoruȝ dindimu*m*, he makiþ þe ballok leþir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good 40

Many unskillful men dare to try these cures,

[2 lf. 187]

whereas some wise men are afraid of doing so.

These two kinds of Hernia must be distinguished.

1. The bowels fall out suddenly through the broken **Mirac.**

2. The bowels descend slowly, with a gurgling sound.

[3 lf. 187, bk.]

knowinge: wha*n*ne þou hast' take kepe of' alle þese p*r*iuitees, þa*n* þou miȝt' wite wherof' þe cause is. ¶ Wha*n*ne þe bowels falliþ adou*n* þoruȝ a fissure, i*d est* þoruȝ a brekynge, þan þou schalt' not' traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þa*t*' be*n* forseid, but' if' it' be i*n* childre*n* & i*n* causis þa*t*' ben newe. & if' þe brekynge be but' litil, þan þou miȝt' make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat' þe cauterie p*er*se mirac, for þat' wole make an hard drowi*n*g' vpon þe brekinge / & it' wole not' suffre þa*t*' þe bowels schulen not' falle adou*n* þoruȝ þat place, so þat' þe brekinge be but' litil. If' it' so be þat' þe bowels falle adou*n* þoruȝ dindimu*m*, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Su*m*men leien a corosif' vpon þe ers wiþ dindimu*m*, a medicyn corosif', til þe skyn wiþout' be frete, til þou mai se di*n*dimu*m*, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimu*m*; & su*m*men drawiþ awei a ma*n*nes ballokis, and [1]su*m*men drawiþ not' awei, but bi þe wei of' þe corosif' þe ballokis wolen rotie afte*r*ward / ¶ Also su*m*men maken pu*n*ctual cauterijs i*n* þe maner of' a cros vpon dindimu*m*, & þan aftirward heliþ it' vp / Su*m*men kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,[2] & þei streyneþ di*n*dimu*m*, & þei bindiþ it' wiþ spago[3] / Su*m* worchi*th* in anoþir maner: first', þei kuttiþ þe skyn aboue, & þan þei makiþ cauteriu*m* aboue vpon dindimu*m* i*n* su*m*me p*ar*tie, & i*n* su*m* p*ar*ti þei leeueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþ*er* þat' ben forseid / Su*m*me*n* fiechiþ .ij. nedlis i*n* di*n*dimu*m* wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ þe þredis & leiþ þ*er*vpon martenciu*m*,[4] til al þe skyn þat' was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþ*er* me*n* han diuers werkis þat' I hadde not' certey*n*, for alle maners þat' I heere þ*er*of' ben disseyuable / For sumtyme wha*n*ne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing' þat' he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it' wole be worse þan it' was raþ*er*. & among' alle þe maners þa*t*' be*n*, þa*t*' is worst' þat' is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice [5]þat' it' haþ, makiþ greet' akynge, & is cause to make an enpostym i*n* dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuau*n*ce þat' dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it' mai go[6] to þe brayn, þat' is þe welle of' alle nerues, & so þe ma*n* mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wreechid leche, þat' for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children.

If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the **Mirac**.

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed.

Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1 lf. 188]

some remove the testicles,

some use cauteries,

some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain, **Nota**.

a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[5 lf. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

[2] *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: Alii sine cauterio superficialem cutem incidunt.

[3] *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

[4] *martenciu*m, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

[6] *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

puttist a manncs lijf in perel of deeþ / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deeþ / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnen clooþ or of sendel,[1] as I haue tauȝt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietynge / & þouȝ he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter ould, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard[2] to bringe hem in

[3 lf. 189]

[3]aȝen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & 12 tauȝte in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. &

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

he was glad of my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. ȝeer contynueli, dai & nyȝt, & wiþinne þat tyme he was hool, & 16 ȝitt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat oþir man

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in aȝen, til þe pacient were sett in a baþ. & þo I putte hem in aȝen / & I toolde of þe perel of kuttynge, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauȝte him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for

The patient shall always wear his bandage,

to kepe him-silf : he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue

[4 lf. 189, bk.]

if he haue greet penaunce [4]þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- 28

shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in[5] no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makiþ inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,[6] and whanne he haþ ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his 32

shall not leap, cry, or run,

ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittiþ at

[1] *sendel*, Lat. sindon, σινδών, a fine Indian cloth, muslin ; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sindon*. See Diez, s. v. zendale. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

[2] *hard*, in margin.

[5] *in*, above line.

[6] Lat. : ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem. *saule*, O.Fr. saoulée, from saoul, Lat. satullus.

priuy he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes
4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue nenere þe lasse while.

and avoid constipation.

Nota

¶ If **hernia** be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wiþ þi fyngir þou schalt
8 fele watrynes þeron / ffirst þou must loke wher it be litil or myche[1] — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & driynge suffisiþ / þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe droþesie. ¶ If the [2]mater be greet, þan avoide awei þe mater wiþ kuttynge &
12 wiþ cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd : þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour[3] & bi felynge wiþ þi fyngris, if þou felist
16 no watrines þeron, ne heuynes ; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & oþere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.[4] ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou mizte wite wiþ þi fyngris, it wole be hard,[5] þe cure herof mai not be
20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wiþoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oþer part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wiþ
24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wiþ purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastynge /

Watery hernia.

The scrotum is heavy and shining,

the water is felt on pressure.

Use drying medicines,

[2 lf. 190]

or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.

Hernia ventosa

is treated with an electuary.

Hernia Carnosa.

Cut the skin and remove the matter.

Varicosa.

¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /[6]

¶ viijo. co.

[7 lf, 190, bk.]

A stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of [7]grete humouris
28 wiþinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wiþoutforþ of oþere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. Þei maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / &
32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wiþ fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua*, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.

[3] Lat.: Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.

[4] Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

[5] Lat.: Signum hernie carnose est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.

[6] Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & makith it hard, & in þis maner 4 engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes[1] / If þe grauel of his vrine be 8 whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes[2] / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttynge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ [3] not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue 12 aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deeþ. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous 16 mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,[4] & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete 20 no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substaunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substaunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche 24 salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly[5] / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leueyned / &

Nota

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 lr. 191]

Rules of dietyng for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

[1] Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54. indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "*And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende.*"

[2] The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

[4] Lat.: a pane azymo. ἄζυμος, unleavened.

[5] Compare p. 272, note 6.

his breed wole be þe[1] bettir for hi*m* if' it' be medlid wiþ poudre maad of' fenel-seed & p*er*sil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & eleer, medlid wiþ fair eleer wat*er* / And if' his reynes & his bowels weren hote, þan he mai drinke coold wat*er* þat' be fair & elene, & he mai ete fleisch of' capou*n*s & he*n*nes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of' alle o*þer*o maner of' briddis þat' mouen i*n* feeldis, & of' he*m* þat' woneþ i*n* watir he schal not' ete. & he mai ete pork & motou*n* & principali of' beestis þat' ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of' .iij. daies poudringe,[2] & he mai ete feel,[3] & he mai ete eiren þat' ben neische soden; fisch þat' haþ no schellis & þe substau*n*ee of' hi*m* be greet' & hard, he schal not' ete þ*er*of' / Alle maner fisch þat' haþ manie schellis, is better þan he þat' haþ no schellis / And of' erbis: he schal ete fenel, ache, p*er*sil, sp*er*ge, attriplice*m*,[4] spinochia & boraginem, eruca*m*, melones, cucume*r*is, & he schal be war þat' he ete no substau*n*ee of' caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai ete þese man*er* fruits: almau*n*dis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas b*en*e maturas. & he schal not'[5] traueile to miche [6]aftir mete, & he schal bere noon heuy birþu*n*s, ne he schal not' be girt' to streite, & he schal not' slepe vpon his reynes. & if' his reynes ben to hote, þan he schal anoy*n*te hem wiþ oile of' ro*sis*, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnen cloop wet' i*n* iuys of' colde erbis, & he sch*a*l absteyne hi*m* fro wo*m*men, & he schal touche no wo*m*man to make hi*m* haue appetit' þerto / for greet' medlynge wiþ wy*m*me*n* wiþ greet' t*ra*ueile achaufit' a ma*n*nes reynes & *con*sumeþ her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regime*n*, he schal haue no drede of' engendringe of' þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regime*n*[7] & is disposid for to haue þe stoon, w*ith* medicyns he schal do it' awei or it' be *con*fermed. He schal vse sirupis duretikis[8]: as oximel diur*eticum* & squillitic*um*,[9] or he schal vse a sirup þat' auicen made / ℞, aq*uæ* lī. x, aceti lī. ß, medle hem togid*er*e & boile hem wiþ ℥. iij of' rotis of' ache, & rotis of' fenel ℥. iij, and fenel-seed &

[1 lf. 191, bk.]

mild wine,

meat of capons, chickens,

pork, mutton, gelded beasts and veal.

Fishes with scales are better than those without.

The herbs and the kind of fruit he may take.

[6 lf. 192]

Nota

He shall anoint his loins and abstain from women.

If a stone begins to form, use a diuretic syrup.

℞

[2] *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a nyȝt.*

[3] *feel*, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

[4] *Attriplex*, Chenopodium vulvaria. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mielde." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten*, *Milten*. Dessen.

[5] *not*, above line.

[7] Lat. Qui vero tali *non* utitur regimine.

[8] Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "*Diuretike.* Diuretyke prouokynge vrine, or that hath vertue to pronoke vrine."

[9] Traheron, *ibid.* "*Squylliticke* vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache an*a* ℥. j, seþe he*m* alle togid*er*e til þe .iij. part' be *con*sumed awei, & þa*n* cole he*m* & do þ*er*to lī. x of' sugre, & þa*n* clarifie it' & seþe it' [1] & kepe it' for þin vss // The vss of' þis sirip wole suffise for to do it' awei ; but if' þe mat*er* be þe more greet', & þan þou mi3t' do 4 þ*er*to if' þou wolt' oximel squillit*icum*, or þou mi3t' ordeine þe sirip wiþ modicis[2] erbis diuretie*is*. ¶ Þer is no þing' so good for to p*ur*ge mater of' þe reines as is castynge / for whi castingo curiþ vlcera of' þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt' make hi*m* oonys i*n* þe 8 monepe sich a maner of' vomet' / Take þe seed of' raphani & make it' clene & kutte it' ou*er*þwert' i*n* rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid sirup .℥ iiij. adai & any3t' / & þan lete þe pacient' ete diu*er*s metis, as chese, oynou*n*s, salt' fisch & þi*n*gis þat' mai make hi*m* drinke 12 wel ; & lete hi*m* drinke diu*er*s wynes, saue the while he is fasti*n*ge, lete hi*m* ete 3 notis of' þe forseid rollis of' raphani þat' lay in þe forseid sirup, & wha*n*ne he hath ete his saule & dru*n*ke, þan binde vpon his i3en neische lynet' or flex, & streyne þou not' it' to harde 16 but' meneli. & þan take watir i*n* which has been soden anetu*m* til it' bicome reed, & take þ*er*of' lī .j., & medle it' wiþ þe sirup þat' radix raphani lay þ*er*i*n*ne, & make him [3] drinke vp al togidere, & þa*n* he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20 humours þ*er*wiþ. & þan make hi*m* gadere out' þe foul mater of' his nose, & waische his mouþ & his teeþ ; þis medieyn wole do awei þe mater of' þe stoon & p*ur*ge wel his reynes, þis is þe best' medicyn þat' mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If' þe man be not' hool i*n* þis maner, saue þe stoon is confermed fast', þan þe cure þ*er*of' mai be i*n* .ij. maners : þat' oon is for to aswage þe akynge, & þat' oþ*er* is for to breke þe stoon & putte him out' // Wha*n*ne a man haþ greet' akynge in his reynes & in his 28 bladdre, & þou wotist' wel it' ben signes of' þe stoon, first' þou schalt' make hi*m* a clist*er*ie wiþ a decocciou*n* of' herbis þat' be*n* mollificatif' & duretik : as malua, viol*ae*, bismalue, fenigrec*i*, paritaria, apij, fenicli, petro*silij* scolopendrie, sp*er*gi, brusci,[4] sauine, ebuli, sambuci. 32 & if' it' be i*n* wint*er* do þ*er*to calamen*tum*, pulegiu*m*, origanu*m*, se*m*en fenicli, apij, pet*ro*s*ilij*, carui, aneti, leuistici,[5] dauci, milij solis,[6] eruce, quatuor se*mi*na frigidor*um*, & i*m*pone mel, [7] sal, oleu*m* camo-

The best way to purge the kidneys is vomiting.

℞

Let the patient take salted meats,

wine,

and first a preparation of radish with syrup,

then put compresses on his eyes

[3 lf. 193]

and give an emetic.

If the stone is fully developed, one may either soothe the pains or break and remove the stone.

To soothe the pain apply a clyster of a

℞

decoction of herbs,

[1 lf. 192, bk.]

[7 lf. 193, bk.]

[2] MS. *modiu's*.

[4] *brusci*, Ruscus aculeatus, wild myrtle.

[5] Alphita, p. 98 : "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."

[6] MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g^e. et a^e. gromel." Phillips : "Milium solis, the Herb Gromwell."

m*ille*, & scharpe it wiþ b*ene*dicta,[1] and make þ*er*of a clist*er*ie, & þe pacient schal holde it wiþi*n*ne hi*m* longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do hi*m* in to a particular baþ, & lete hi*m* sitte þ*er*o*n* anoon to þe nanele, & in his baþ schule*n* be soden leeues of malue, p*er*itorie, viol*e*, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mu*n*dati; þis maner baþ as I haue ofte p*re*ued, it aswaged akinge / & wha*n*ne he goiþ out of his baþ, make an enplastre of mele, oile & watir, as þou schalt fynde i*n* þe antidotarie i*n* þe c°. of maturatiuis, & leie vpon þe place þ*er*e þe passiou*n* is / If þou knowist wel þat þe stoon falliþ adou*n* of þe reynes toward þe bladdre bi þe weie of þe vrine, sette þan vndir þe place þ*er*e it akiþ,[2] siehia*m*[3] wiþ fier wiþout ony kuttynge, for þis wole drawe adou*n* þe stoon. & as þe stoon discendiþ adou*n* to sichia*m* to sette it lower til he come anoon to þe bladdre, & þan al þe akynge wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þi*n*gis fildoniu*m*[4] is good, þat þou schalt fynde i*n* þe antidotarie of auicen, for þat is a sure medicyn i*n* þis caas. ¶ Anoþ*er* medicyn þat auicen made, & I haue p*re*ued it, and it [5]doiþ awei akynge þat is i*n* vlceribus renu*m*. ℞, se*min*is iusqu*ia*mi albi .ʒ. ß, opij, grana .iiij, se*min*um citruli, lactuce, portulace, ana .ʒ. j., medle al togidere & ȝeue herof .ʒ. ij. wiþ sugre. ¶ And þis þou muste wite þat þou schalt ȝeue þe pacient no þing for to make hi*m* pisse wha*n* his akinge is strong, & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for þat wole make þe more aki*n*ge / It is p*er*el of þis passiou*n*, for þe akynge is so greet sumtyme þat þe pacient haþ þe spasme þ*er*wiþ & is deed þ*er*wiþ, saue þou schalt do awei his akynge wiþ baþi*n*ge & enplastris & anoyntyngis, & þane aftirward þou schalt make hi*m* medicyns for to breke þe stoon & putte hi*m* out wiþ þe vryne / ℞, cretan*i* marini,[6] scolopendrie, capillis veneris, spice celtice, an*a* .ʒ. ij., radix fenieli, apij, pet*rosilij*, sp*er*gi, brusci, cicore, g*ram*i*n*is, filipendule, geneia*ne*, saxifrage, squille, asse, an*a* .ʒ j., iiij^or^ se*min*a frigidor*um*, sem*in*u*m* fenieli, apij, coriandri, scariole,[7] g*ra*nor*um* iuniper*i*, nucleu*m*

put the patient into a bath

and apply a plaster.

Draw the stone from the kidneys to the bladder by application of heat.

The best medicine is the Philonium.

Another medicine of Avicenna.

[5 lf. 194]

℞

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.

℞

[1] *benedicta.* Lat. cum benedicta Nicolai.

[2] MS. *makiþ.* Lat. sub loco doloris.

[3] *sichia*m. Lat. syciam G. σίκυος, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

[4] *fildonium.* Lat. philonium romanum. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nonus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, φάρμακον φιλώνειον. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

[6] Crithmum maritimum. L.

[7] Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowethistel."

*ce*rasor*um*, milij solis, ana .ʒ ß. fiat sirupus cu*m* duab*us* p*ar*tib*us* ȝucari, & t*er*cia mell*is* squillitici, & it schal be take wiþ a decocciou*n* of tribulo*rum* & cice*ru*m rubeo*rum*, þis eletuarie is [1]of auicen makynge / ℞, cine*r*is vitris, caulis, cine*r*is leporis combusti, cine*r*is scorpionis, cineris testi oui,[2] lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sa*ngui*nis hirci sicci, gu*mmi* nucis acori, an*a* .ʒ. j. se*min*is petro*silij*, dauci, pulegij, gu*mmi* arabici, se*min*is albi pip*er*is an*a* .ʒ. j., auri .ʒ .iiij., balsami .ʒ. ß., muscati .ʒ. j., make alle þese wiþ good hony þat it be whit & clene, & þou schalt ȝeue .ʒ. iiij. þ*er*of, & .iij. tymes i*n* þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat is comen to a ma*n*nes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þat bledde neu*er*e blood, & do hi*m* in an erþen vessel[3] wel glasid wiþi*n*ne wiþ a couercle of þe same mater, & stoppe it faste, þat þer mowe come out þ*er*of no fume, wiþ good lute or wiþ past, & sette þis vessel in a furneis til þe hare be bicome al aischis, & þan grinde it & kepe it, & ȝeue hi*m* þ*er*of .ʒ. j. wha*n*ne he goiþ out of his baþi*n*ge þ*at* is forseid, wiþ a decocciou*n* of tribulo*rum*, & hony. I have p*r*eued þ*at* þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝt medle wiþ þis poudre, triacle / And þis schal be þi*n* entenciou*n* for to ȝeue hi*m* medicyns þ*at* ben not strong for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides [4]& oþ*er*e strong medicyns þ*at* piliþ þe reynes. & if þe pacient haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, þan i*n* þis caas .ʒ. j. of Rasis makynge is good / ℞, se*min*a melonu*m* mu*n*dator*um* .ʒ. xxx, se*min*is citruli, se*min*is portulace, se*min*is cucurbite, se*min*is papau-*er*is al*bi* an*a* .ʒ. iij, se*min*is iusqu*ia*mi albe .ʒ. ij., ȝucari pondus o*mni*u*m*,[5] saue I do þ*er*to þe double weiȝte of sugre /

If þe stoon be i*n* his bladdre, þan þou schalt worche i*n* þis maner / First þou schalt take kepe wher he hane stranguria. Þ*at* þou miȝt wite if he makiþ watir droppynli & a litil at oonys, & haþ greet penau*n*ce i*n* his bladdre. Þan þe stoon is in þe necke of þe bladdre; þan þou schalt make hi*m* a clist*er*ie mollificatif þat þou mowe avoide his bowels, & þan þou schalt frote his noseþrillis w*ith* watir,[6] & þou schalt p*r*esse liȝtly þe place of his ars þ*er*eabonte þat þou supposist þat þe stoon sittiþ. & if he remeue not in þis maner, þan þou schalt putte i*n* siryngam liȝtli in þe condijt of his ȝerde til he come to þe stoon. & if þou myȝt not putte it awei in þis maner,

[1 lf. 194, bk.] ℞ A medicine made of Avicenna.

℞ The ashes of a hare burnt alive.

The medicine shall not be too strong, [4 lf. 195] as it might hurt the kidneys.

A medicine of Rasis. ℞

The patient suffers from strangury, if the stone is in the neck of the bladder.

Remove the stone with the finger as with a syringe.

[2] *testi oui.* Lat. testæ oui.
[3] Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.
[5] Lat. ad pondus omnium.
[6] Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.

þan putte þi fyngir in [1]his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it awey. Whanne þe stoon is remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole eeesse, & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue propriete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, ȝeue him of þe poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.[2] ℞, foliorum nasturcij aquatici,[3] & foliorum apij .ana. ℳ j, & grinde hem wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe morter, þan hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe forseid plastre, & ȝeue him of þe forseid poudre. Þis cure is good & I haue preued it //

[1 If. 195, bk.]

When the stone is removed into the bladder, try to break the stone with an internal treatment, a bath, and a plaster. ℞

If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe stoon wiþ kuttynge or þe patient falle into etikis.[4] & if þou wolt drawe [5]out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttynge, þan þou muste apparaile[6] alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee: as sirupis & ligaturis, & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi þombe wiþ oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt avoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette[7] þi riȝt hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him to þe hedis of þi fyngris. & whanne þou myȝt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myȝt. & þan þou schalt fele þe hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi riȝt hond take a rasour, & kutte faste by þe breed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis endelongis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris þat þe stoon mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of [8]þe wounde togidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not][9] oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

[5 If. 196]

Prepare the things necessary for the operation, and bind the patient fast.

First use a Clisterie, feel for the stone, hold it between the fingers, then cut out the stone with a razor.

[8 If. 196, bk.]

and sew the wound.

[2] Lat.: supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

[3] Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

[4] *etikis*, Lat.: antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

[6] *apparaile*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

[7] *sette*, above line.

[9] *not*, wanting. Lat.: et labia vulneris optime conjungas *non* solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wou*n*de tegidere, & þan þou schalt springe þe*r*on poudre þ*a*t is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt binde it w*ith* boondis & lynt til þe wou*n*de be p*er*fitli hool / In þis caas þou muste take kepe of manye þ*i*ngis / First þou muste take kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat be*n* xiiij. wintir oold ben moost able for þis cure,[1] for her lymes ben tendir ynowȝ, & *in* þ*a*t elde þei ben strong ynowȝ for to be m*aa*d hool, & her complexiou*n* is hoot & moist. Ȝonge children & olde me*n* ben not able to be kutt, for in þe kuttynge of he*m* enpostyms wole*n* engendre hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akynge, & so þei miȝten falle i*n*-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed / Su*m*men seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is miche laskid[2] & her hete, & þ*er*fore þei ben not able to take an enpostym; þ*er*fore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon / Su*m*men seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues be*n* to feble / [3] & þ*er*fore þei ben not able to be kutt, & he*r*wiþ I acorde / Þese .ij. þingis: engendrynge of an enpostym, & if þe place þ*a*t is kutt wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiþ p*er*el of deeþ / Also þou muste take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þ*a*t he be, for if þe stoo*n* be .ij. forkid[4] or cornerid, or so greet þat he may not be brouȝt i*n*to þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt *in* no maner kutte hi*m*, but if þou miȝt first wiþ þi*n* hond breke þe stoon. & þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oonys, þan i*n* diu*er*s tymes þou schalt gadere hi*m* out.[5] ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he mai not be brouȝt i*n*to þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt i*n* no man*er* kutte hi*m*, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou woldist kutte þe substau*n*ce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but þou schalt put hi*m* to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ i*n*strume*n*tis, & teche þe pa*tient* for to kepe hi*m* i*n* þ*a*t maner þat þe stoon falle not i*n*to þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not be felid wiþ þi*n* hond, þan þou schalt not kutte hi*m* neiþ*er*. & if þe pa*tient* mai be hool in ony [6] maner, [n]or kutt wiþoute*n* passiou*n*, it

Nota Children who are fourteen years old, are most fit for this treatment.

Younger children and old men are not fit,

although some people say the contrary.

[3 lf. 197]

If the stone cannot be brought to the neck of the bladder,

you must first break it before cutting.

Beware.

Do not cut, if the stone is small.

[6 lf. 197, bk.]

[1] De propr. rer. Add. 27.944, fol. 96: "*& somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan ȝongelinge. For in elde keruynge is perilous, for aftir fourty ȝere þis euel is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:*[a] *aftir fourti ȝere he þat haþ þe ston is nouȝt i-saued.*"

[2] *Celsus* Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

[4] *ij forkid*, diffurcatus.

[5] Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

[a] Rhazes, Aphorismi.

is better þat[1] he be nonȝt kutt þan he be kutt.[2] for men þat ben so kutt schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap[3]; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þerfore I rede þee take þat wynnynge[4] to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat I lefte siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat weren filme broke,[5] & of men þat weren in þe dropesie. & I lefte þe curis þerof for perels þat miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnynge man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnynge lechis seie þat þei han do þat cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame & for perels I wolde not vse kuttyngis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat is kutt: as greet akynge vndir þe nanele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feuere,[6] & greet akinge in þe place þat was kutt, alle þese signes ben signes of deeþ / Good signes herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat he mowe go to priuy wel [7] & þat he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat I say [in] a man, þat his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kuttynge. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde biliinde þe stoon, þat þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /[8]

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a [7 lf. 198] strong urine, a good appetite.

Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /[9]

THouȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencioun to speke of þe dropesie, & principaly þat ben wrouȝt ¶ x°. c°.

[1] MS. *þan.* [2] *& if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt*, an insertion.

[3] Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

[4] *þat wynnynge*, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420. "*Wynninge*. Emolimentum, lucrum."

[5] *of men þat weren filme broke*, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

[6] *atach of þe feuere*, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

[8] The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertiæ, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

[9] The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in De propr. rerum. Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "*þe firste dropesye hatte leucoflemma, and*

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[1 lf. 198, bk.] The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three: yposarca, Aschites, Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 lf. 199] The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sijknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swelliþ þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at [1]oonys,[2] & seien sooþ þat þer ben but .iij. maner dropesies,[3] & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swelliþ al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oþer is of mater of ȝelowȝ water & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid aschites / þe .iij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolued of coold mater, & falliþ into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ liȝtli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ sooþ þat clepiþ euerí ydropesie coold mater,[4] for euery spice of þe dropesie mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendiþ, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleumatik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / [5]þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of oþere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therfore it is necessarie for a leche to wite[6] wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe lechis halden hem paid for to haue a siȝt of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe siȝt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

comeþ of distemperaunce of coldenesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe seconnde hatte yposarca oþir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."

[2] *acorden alle at oonys*, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. *Reliqu. Antiqu.* I. 233, *accorde in one.* (*N. E. Dict.*, s. v. accord v. 5.)

[3] Lanfranc follows *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

[4] Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellant materialem frigidam.

[6] *to wite*, above line.

disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, *in* what' maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of' coold cause or of' hoot', it' wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme a ma*n* mai not' ȝeue a discrecioun[1] of' blood fro vrine, for a litil blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt' as a litil saffron colouriþ miche wat*er* / þ*er*for of' wh*at*' cause so it' be þ*at*' his lyuere be enfeblid, his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of' yposarcha & aschites & tympanite be*n* open ynowȝ. [2]In þis mane*r* þ*o*u schalt' knowe he*m* / [2 lf. 199, bk.]

but a little blood colours much urine.

8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swelliþ, as his face, & his armis, & his riggeboon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat' in what' p*ar*tie of' his bodi þ*at*' þou p*r*essist' þi fyngir þ*er*e wole be a pitt'. & wh*an*ne þe fyngir is aweie it' wole arise aȝen / & it' is a greet' maist*r*ie for to

Signys of yposarca are a general swelling of the body.

12 knowe whe*þer* yposarcha come of' coold cause tofore goynge or of' hoot' cause / If' it' comeþ of' coold goinge tofore, þan his iȝen wole*n* be discolourid as it' were þe colo*ur* of' askis, or pale[3] / If' it' come of' hete goi*n*ge tofore, þa*n* his iȝen wolen be ȝelowȝ or su*m*what' reed / & þou muste wite, whe*þer* he had a feuere tofore or haue þe feu*er*e fortis þ*er*wiþ / or if' he hadde þ*er*e tofore an hoot' enpostym þ*er*wiþ, ou*þer* he haue enpostym þ*er*wiþ / þese be*n* þe p*ro*pre signes of' aschites, þ*at*' his face, & his necke, & his brest', & his armis bicom*ith* smal, & his vois schal bicome smal, & his wo*m*be schal oonli swelle. & su*m*tyme i*n* þe firste bigy*n*nyng' his feet' & his leggis wolen swelle i*n* þe firste bigy*n*ny*n*ge, for þe greet' stre*n*kþe of' þe mat*er* þ*at*' makiþ it' falle adou*n*. & if' þou [4]smite his[5] wo*m*be, he [4 lf. 200]

If the cause is cold, the eyes will be pale; they are yellow or red, if there is a hot cause.

The signs of ascites are a wasting of the limbs and a swelling of the belly.

24 wole sowne as it' were a touȝt' le*þer* ful of' wynd[6] / þese be*n* þe p*ro*pre signes of' tympanites: his wombe & þe regiou*n* of' his stomac schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his o*þer*e lymes, boþe his feet', & his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wole*n* bicome smal, & if' þou smitist' hi*m* vpo*n* his wombe, it' wole soune as it' were a tympan / & i*n* þis passiou*n* þ*er* is lasse agreuaunce þan in aschite & more swellynge. & if' þou p*r*essist' his wombe, þou schalt' fynde it' streite as it' were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuy*n*g of' wat*er*, wh*an*ne þe pacient' turneþ hi*m* from o side to anoþ*er* / Curis herof' þou schalt' fynde ynowe i*n* bokis of' phisik / For I nyle telle but' fewe medicyns þ*er*fore, I haue lo*n*ge tyme vsid.

Signes of tympanites. They are the same as in ascites, but there is less pain and more swelling.

¶ Wh*an*ne þou wolt' ordeine regime*n* on yposarcha, ȝeue hi*m*

[1] *ȝeue a discrecioun*, discernere.
[3] Lat.: coniunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cincricia vel pallida.
[5] MS. *his*, twice.
[6] Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposarcha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill, [3 lf. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

trociscus de lactea[1] cum apozimate[2] de radicib*us* fro þe firste dai to
þe .iiij., & ȝeue hi*m* pelottis de agarico. & wh*an*ne þe swellinge
bigy*n*neþ to go awey, if it be *in* somer, þan þou schalt hele al his
bodi *in* hoot gr*a*uel þ*e*re þe su*n*ne mai ȝeue greet hete, or lete hi*m* 4
sitte vpon an hiȝ hil þere þe [3]su*n*ne schineþ hoot, þ*at* he mai swete
wel, & þ*at* his bodi mai wexe hoot wiþoute & wiþi*n*ne. & if it be
in winte*r*, putte hi*m* *in* a drie stewe, so þ*at* þe watir come not niȝ
hi*m*. Þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / ℞, corticis fenicli, 8

℞ Prescription, how to make the decoction.

apij, [ana drac.][4] .x., se*m*inu*m* [apii] squinantu*m*, ameos, an*a*. ʒ .v.,
rosar*um* rubiar*um*, spicenarde an*a* .ʒ .iij, seþe he*m* *in* lī .ij. of
watir til þei come to lī .j., cole he*m* & kepe þe colature. & if þou
doist þ*er*i*n*ne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte be*n* 12

℞ How to make the troches.

maad *in* þis maner / ℞, rubarbe, lacte, an*a* [drac iii.], se*min*is apij,
spice, ameos, amigdalu*m* amaru*m*, masticis, sq*u*inante, se*min*is iuni-
p[er]i, costi amari,[5] rubee succi, eupatorij,[6] aristolo*gia*e ro*tunda*e,
gencian an*a* .ʒ. ß, make herof gobetis, þe weiȝte of ʒ .j., & he schal 16

℞ The Agaric-pills.

take oon þ*er*of wiþ .ʒ iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / ℞,
agarici .ʒ .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbar*um*, aristolo*gia* ro*tunda*e an*a*
ʒ .ij, ȝucare albe .ʒ .v, & make herof pelott*is*. & þou schalt ȝeue
herof .ʒ .ij. 20

Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

If þou seest þ*at* þe cause þ*at* ȝede tofore þis passiou*n* was hoot,
& he make litil vrine & reed, & if his ve*r*tu be feble of þe hete, &
þou hast dispeir of hi*m*,[7] & if he haue þe feuere þ*er*wiþ, it is so
[8] myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þ*at* þe cause is coold, & if 24

[8 lf. 201] If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhubarb-pills;

þe pa*tient* be strong ynowȝ, loke if his wombe be hard. & þan
make hi*m* vse sirup acetose m*aa*d wiþ seedis & sugre, & ȝeue hi*m* þe
pelottis of rubarbe þ*at* ben maad *in* þis maner / ℞, rubarberi, succi
eupatorij, seminis endiuie an*a*. ʒ. iij, agarici ʒ. v., make þ*er*of 28

[1] *lactea*, Lat. laeta. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

[2] *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

[4] MS. ß.

[5] Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

[6] *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (ec. 1300). "*Eupatorium. saluia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldesage. i. hyndehale.*"

[7] *þou hast dispeir of him*, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. *þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of cauteriis.* Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.

pelett*is* wiþ þe iuys of endiue. Þou schalt ȝeue hi*m* herof at oonys .ʒ .ij, & euery wike þou schalt ȝeue it oonys / If it so be þat he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan *in* þe place of þese pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad *in* þis maner / ℞, se*min*is endiuie ʒ .x, esule,[1] succi eupatorij, agarici, an*a*. ʒ .ij, & .ℨ .j, rosar*um*, se*min*is citrulor*um*, an*a* ʒ .ij, & make herof .x. gobettis wiþ a decoec*i*on of fenel *in* wat*er*: ȝeue hi*m* oon þ*er*of wiþ sirupo acetoso de seminib*us*. Enplastre[2] his wombe wiþ enplastre maad wiþ .ij. p*ar*tis of oxis dou*n*ge, & oon p*ar*t of gotis dou*n*ge, boli armo*ni*a*c*i, sulphuris, & salis, & diste*m*p*er*e he*m* wiþ strong vinegre /

if the patient is feeble, gobbets, ℞ and apply a plaster on his belly.

Þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy wh*an*ne it is entrid i*n*to diafragma & is confermed þ*er*e / ffirst þou [3]schalt make hi*m* ele*ct*u*ar*i de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make hi*m* suppositorijs for to dist*r*ie[4] wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne hi*m* fro þi*n*gis þat engendriþ wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wiþ a scharp clooþ / Ele*ct*u*ar*i de baccis lauri / ℞, folior*um* rute .ʒ .x., ameos, se*min*u*m*,[5] nigille,[6] leuistici,[7] petrocilij macedonici,[8] origani,[9] carui, amigdala-r*um* amar*um*, pip*er*is lo*n*g*i*, mentastri,[10] dauci, acori, baccar*um* lauri, castore an*a* .ʒ .iij., serapini .ʒ .iiij., appoponac .ʒ .iij., make herof a lectuarie wiþ .iij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wiþ consumeþ. ¶ Þus þ*o*u schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / ℞, cimi-nu*m*, folio*rum* rute viridis[11] an*a*. ℳ .j., radic*is* brionie, radicis mali terre, radicis rafani an*a* .ʒ .ij., sal nit*r*i .ʒ .j., & make herof suppositorijs wiþ hony. ¶ Wh*an*ne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of hoot cause, þa*n* þ*o*u schalt not forgete to helpe þe side þat is hoot; & also if þe mater be eoold, þou schalt helpe hi*m* wiþ hote þi*n*gis.

Treatment of Tympanitis. [3 lf. 201, bk.] Give an electuary ℞ and suppositories. ℞ Suppositories.

[1] "*Esula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

[2] *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1: "*be þe place emplastred wiþ a plastre maad þus.*" Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt. Parv.

[4] *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy. [5] Lat.: cimini.

[6] *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lollium. G. neel. A. cokel*," fennel flower.

[7] *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum. G. luuache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43, *luvestiche, luvesche.*

[8] *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem, g. alisaudre, a. stamerche.*"

[9] Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulegium. A. puliol reale.*" See *Alphita*, p. 150. "*Puleginm. gallire puliol. a. Brotherunrt.*"

[10] *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. kors. minte.*"

[11] *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pueanum. hermola idem. G. Rue. A. smalrede.*"

If the cause is hot, [1 lf. 202] give a decoction with chickens, and a syrup.

¶ Þis þing is necessarie for to ȝeue a man þat haþ þe hote dropesie, a decoccion of solatrum & endiue; & in þat watir he [1]schal seþe chikenys for to ete, & first he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wiþ seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat I curide in my tyme .ij. men þat weren in aschite of hoot cause, þat it mowe be ensaumple to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie[2] in þis maner / ℞, succi scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wiþ .℥ iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. ℥. ß, seþe hem in watir til þei come to .li .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li .j. ȝucare, & boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist adoun fro þe fier, do þerto rubarbe .℥ ß., & lete it boile a litil, & þan kepe it for þin vss. & þou schalt ȝeue it him in þe morowe wiþ a decoccion of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt enplastre al his wombe, saue þe regionn of his lyuere, wiþ þe forseid plastris & dounge & vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .℥ .ij. of barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. ℥ ß, camphore .ʒ .ij., & distempere hem wiþ water of rosis & wiþ vinegre. & if he haue not þe feuere, þan ȝeue him gotis milk fasting. And whan þe patient bicomeþ smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a baþ, þat be soden þerinne sulphur [3]& salt, & he schal be þerinne but a litil while. ¶ Herof þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a man wiþ drijnge wiþ medicyns, þan his lymes leeueþ swiþe drie; wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. Þerfore þou muste in alle þes þingis be wel war /

R7 Prescription for the syrup.

To be given twice a week.

A plaster is put on the region of the liver.

Finally use a bath. [3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in using drying medicines that the patient does not get consumption.

☞ Operation should not be performed on all sorts of people;

Þe cure þat is wiþ iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat manie men doon hardili, & takiþ no kepe of þe particuleris þerof, for þei knowen not þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to ȝonge & to olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttiþ þe skyn vnder þe nauel, & alle men þat þei kutten ouþer þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou schalt take kepe of kunnynge, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt take kepe wher he be strong or no; & if he be not strong, þou schalt do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt do no cure to olde men þat ben to-broke, for þou schalt not leeue þe strenkþe of an oold man, for it is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong, whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If it so be þat he be ȝong & strong, þan þow schalt haue good trust for to helpe him. ¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher [4]þe principal vijs be of

patients who are not strong, and old men, are not fit.

One cannot trust in the strength of an old man.

[4 lf. 203]

[2] Matthæus *Platearius* belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropesie, þan þe kuttynge muste be in þe riȝtside. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris, þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostid[1] vpon coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou wolt make þi kuttynge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerfore / And be wel war þat þou touche not siphac in no maner; and [2]whanne þou hast kutt þe skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac. & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,[3] & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid mirac goon ouer þe openynge of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn azen þat was kutt first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou miȝt. & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe patient schal ete good metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues failen /

The place of the incision depends on which organ—the liver, spleen, stomach, or uterus—is affected.

Let the patient be held by a strong man;

cut the skin, called Mirac;

[2 lf. 203, bk.]

pierce the siphac, and draw out the water by a cannula at repeated sittings.

Strengthen the patient during this treatment with good food.

[4]Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes[5] ȝerde /

[4 lf. 204]

¶ xj° .c°.

Ficus is a growth on a man's yard; it is either soft or hard,

Ficus is a maner wexynge þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore. & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard;

[1] *breed tostid*, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*

[3] *canel*, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.

[5] MS. *manner*.

and may become a cancer.

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ *in* a manne*s* ȝerde, riȝt as *in* oþ*er*e lymes of a man, & vlcera comeþ of hote pustulis þat comeþ þ*er*on, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.[1]

Ulcers arise either from hot pustules

Ouþ*er* þei comeþ of scharpe humo*ur*is, þat makiþ vlcera *in* þe same place;

or from intercourse with diseased women.

ouþir it mai come of a wo*m*man þat a man, þat hadde þe same passiou*n*,[2] hadde leie by hir tofore[3] /

The ficus must be removed by a thread or with cutting,

Þis is þe cure of ficus þat com*ith* of fleume: þou schalt binde hi*m* wiþ a þreed, ouþ*er* kutte hi*m* al awei; & þan þou schalt soude it as it is aforseid *in* oþ*er*e placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wiþ temp*er*e mollificatiuis, as it is forseid *in* þe cure of sclirosis *in* þe gen*er*al chapitre of enpostyms: þat wh*an*ne he is m*aa*d neische, þa*n* þou schalt take hi*m* awei wiþ alle his rootis / saue it is more sure take awei it wiþ [4]an hoot iren, & þa*n* leie þ*er*vpon butt*er*, & ȝitt þ*o*u muste touche hi*m* wiþ an hoot iren aȝe*n*; & þan leie buttir þ*er*vpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetyme litil & litil til it be al wastid awei / If it be a cancre, it wole not be curid but if it be kutt awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þ*er* is no wei so sure to take hi*m* awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of hi*m* muste*n* be brent awei, & þan leie þ*er*vpon a mu*n*dificatif of apiu*m*, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þi*n*gis / & *in* þis place þou schalt not forȝete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge.

with mollificatives;

[4 lf. 204, bk.] the surest way is the hot iron.

A cancer must be removed with all its roots.

Nota. If there are ulcers in the fore-skin, remove the growth.

¶ Vlc*er*a þat comeþ *in* a ma*n*nes ȝerde: as wh*an*ne þe skyn þat is tofore *in* a ma*n*nes ȝerde bicom*ith* greet, & þis mai not be curid but if þat greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þ*er*fore / Take whit wijn, & of verte grece .ʒ .j, auripigment .ʒ .ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie he*m* *in* þe whit wijn, & meue he*m* ofte, & kepe he*m* for þi*n* vss. & þe more cold[5] þat þis medicyn is, þe bett*er* it wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a ly*n*men cloop *in* þis medicyn, [6]& leie vpon þe ȝerde / For þis þi*n*g wole soude woundis & defende þat

℞ þe gren water

[6 lf. 205]

[1] Lat.: que postea crepantur. [2] MS. inserts *þat*.

[3] Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III. p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel sanici, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

[5] MS. *cold*. Lat.: quanto plus *antiquatur* tanto melius.

þer mai wexe no ca*n*cre / If' it' so be *þat* a ma*n*nes ȝerde be sky*n*ned, & be noon o*þer* passiou*n* *þe*ron saue *þat*, þan *þ*ou schalt' leie *þer*vpon vngu*ent*um albu*m*, ou*þer* leie *þer*vpon a ly*n*nen cloo*þ* wet' i*n* watir of' ro*sis*. Also poudre maad of' cucurbita & aloes is good *þer*fore / If' a man wole saue *þ*is lyme algate fro corrupciou*n*, wha*n*ne he ha*þ* leien bi a wo*m*man, & he haue ony suspeciou*n* of' vncle*n*nes, þan he schal waische his ȝerde wi*þ* coold wat*er* medlid wi*th* vineg*r*e /

In case of a simple excoriation, apply an ointment or compresses.

Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

EMoroides ben veines *þat*' endi*þ* i*n* a mannes ers & ben .v.[1] *þ*ese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme *þ*ei be*n* enpostymed. Wha*n*ne *þ*e blood *þat*' is i*n* *þ*e same veines falli*þ* adou*n* & mai not' out', þan it' engendri*þ* apostym. & if' *þ*e blood is gret' & fleumatik, þan it' wole engendre fic*us*, & if' *þat*' blood be greet' & colerik, þa*n* it' wole engendre moralem.[2] And if' *þ*e blood be greet' & malancoli*us*, þan it' wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme *þer* come*þ* *þ*erto [3]so manie diuers humo*u*ris, & maki*þ* diu*er*s enpostyms i*n* *þ*e same man*er* as it' falli*þ* in o*þer*e lymes, & ofte tyme of' *þ*is enpostym come*þ* a festre, but' if' it' be *þ*e bettir hol*þ*e; *þ*e blood *þat*' come*þ* to a ma*n*nes ers bi veynes *þat*' be*n* clepid emoroides is grette*r*e blood þan ony blood of' his bodi / & if' it' so be *þat*' a man hane *þ*e flux of' blood of' *þ*e emoroidis, *þ*ou schalt' not' stoppe it', but' it' blede so myche *þat*' it' make *þ*e pacient' feble, saue *þ*ou schalt' kepe hi*m* wi*þ* good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis *þat*' engendrith scharp blood & greet' // For bi *þ*e flux of' blood a ma*n*nes bodi mai be kept' from malancolious blood, & it' wole kepe a ma*n* fro lepre & fro mania, & fro al sijknes *þat*' come*þ* of' malancolie / Also if' a ma*n* is woned to haue he*m* & *þ*ei be stoppid, þa*n* *þ*ou muste ȝeue hi*m* medicyns for to bri*n*ge he*m* ont' / And if' it' so be *þat* a ma*n* haue so greet' flux of' he*m* *þat*' his lyu*er*e be enfeblid *þer*wi*þ*, þan he my*þ*te falle i*n* a dropesi *þ*er *þ*oru*ȝ*, for to miche flux of' blood mai be cause of' a dropesie / *þer*fore if' *þ*ou [4]seest' *þat*' *þ*e flux be to greet', þa*n* *þ*ou schalt' constreine blood wi*þ* medicyns *þat*' ben constrictif', & *þ*ou schalt' fynde medicy*n*s *þer*fore i*n* *þ*e ende of' *þ*is chapitre / Wexi*n*gis *þat*' ben clepid **emeroidis**, su*m*me *þ*ei falli*þ*

¶ xij°. co. There are five hæmorrhoidal veins, they are sometimes open, sometimes they form tumours.

[3 lf. 205, bk.]

The blood in these veins is the thickest in the body.

Nota Hæmorrhoidal flux shall not be stopped, as it keeps a man from leprosy mania and other diseases.

Too great flux causes dropsy.

[4 lf. 206]

Emeroides

[1] *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyre veynes þat streche*þ *oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes come*þ *diuers passiouns and euelis, as bolnynge & swellinge, withholdinge and flux.*"

[2] *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are internal or external.

wiþoute þe hole of a mannes ers, & summe wiþinne / Also summe wexiþ in þe for side of þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sumtyme it wexiþ in þe forside toward þe rote of þe ballokis, & þan þei makiþ greet akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat a man mai not 4 make vrine. If it be **ficus**, þat þou miȝt knowe, for it wole be wiþoute hete[1] & neische, & þe cure herof is but liȝt. Þou schalt take a strong preed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt streine it more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wiþ driyng medicyns þou schalt drie it vp. 8 ¶ **Moralis** makiþ greet akinge & haþ manie smalle swellingis as it were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole be reed & sumdel[2] purpur, & but þis haue help for to acese þe akinge, it wole engendre an enpostym. Þe cure herof is to lete him 12 blood in þe veyne þat is clepid [3]basilica & sophena al in oon dai,[4] & in þe same side þat þe passioun drawiþ mooste þerto. If he is wont to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux of blood. & if he is not wont to haue it, þan þou schalt ȝeue 16 him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt acese þe akynge wiþ þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon[5] & for alle þe passiouns of þe ers / ℞, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem .j, opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with ȝelke of an eij 20 & wiþ þe iuys of psillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof an oynement / & if þe akynge be wiþinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent & putte into his ers, & if it be wiþoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynnen cloop & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe 24 abbot / ℞, ceruse .ʒ. v., litarge .ʒ. iij., iusquiami albi .ʒ. ij., masticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wiþ þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of violet & make herof an oynement. & þis oynement is good whanne þe akinge is wiþ an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make 28 it maturatif, & doiþ awey þe [6]akinge / ℞, foliorum malue, florum camomille, Melliloti[7] ana .ℳ. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .ʒ. iij., lenticularum excorticarum .ʒ. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a morter & 32 grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

ficus can be tied away.

Moralis consists of many small swellings, like a mulberry.

[3 lf. 206, bk.] Bleed from the Basilica and the Saphena,

relieve the pains with a medicine,

℞

apply an ointment, or tent.

℞

An ointment to ripen an apostema.

[6 lf. 207]

℞

[1] Lat.: sine colore. The translator read "calore."

[2] *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

[4] Lat.: cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

[5] Vigo, Traheron Interpret.: "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greate prouocation to the seege, but can do nothynge. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

[7] Add. 15236, fol. 5: "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. humsoke vel redclaure.*"

& make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be *þat* *in* þis place of þe forseid *þingis* come an enpostym & gad*er*e to quitture, þou schalt not abide til it breke hi*m*-silf, for þan it wole make a greet hole ynward toward þe guttis. *Þer*fore *þou* schalt opene it hastili, or it wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet akynge ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt drie he*m* & waste hem, þan *þou* mi*ȝ*t worche *in* .ij. maners, do *þer*to mel anacardi & vnguentu*m* ruptoriu*m*,[1] or touche he*m* wiþ an hoot iren *þat* is bett*er*e / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie he*m* *with* fumygaciou*n*s m*aa*d of pulpa coloquintida & seed of mirtillor*um*, & þe leeues & þe ry*n*dis of capparis, mirra, nux cip*ressi*, & gallis, & make hi*m* a decoccou*n* of þese *þingis* i*n* wat*er* [2]&[3] lete him sitte *þer*on, for alle þese *þingis* make*th* þe emeroidis blak & makiþ he*m* falle awey / I nolde neue*re* leie i*n* *þat* place corosif medicyn /

When an apostema begins to suppurate, open it quickly.

Nota

To dry hæmorrhoids, use a corrosive ointment, the hot iron,

and for a delicate patient a fumigation.

[2 If. 207, bk.]

If *þer* be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym, & þe pa*tient* haue gret akynge *þer*wiþ, & principaly if he was wont to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it not longe tyme tofore, *þan* *þou* schalt ȝeue hi*m* medicyns to haue þe flux of blood, & *þat* *þou* schalt do in *þis* man*er* anoon, wiþ þe iuys of a strong oynou*n*, or wiþ ius of lekis, on*þer* if *þou* makist supposi-torijs of he*m* & frotist *þer*wiþ þe place, & *þis* wole opene þe veynys of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet i*n* þe gall of a bole / Also take hony .ij. p*ar*tis, & vert de grece oon p*ar*t, & medle he*m* togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie m*aa*d of ly*n*ne*n* cloop & putte it yn / If it so be *þat* þe pa*tient* blede to miche & he bicomeþ feble *þer*wiþ, *þan* helpe hi*m* *with* trocisc*us* de carabe[4] *þat* ben gode for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to restreyne menstrues. ℞, carabe, g*um*m*i* nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi barbe yrcine[5] [6]an*a* .ʒ. v., thuris .ʒ. ij., opij .ʒ. iij., make herof gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make eu*er*y dai a gobet þe wei*ȝ*te of .ʒ. ij., & *þou* schalt ȝeue oon *þer*of wiþ sirupo stiptico, & *þou* schalt make fumigaciou*n*s of driynge *þingis*: as gallis, balaustie, psidior*um* & o*þer*e mo *þat* ben forseid / ℞, nuc*es* cip*ressi*,

If the veins are replete, provoke flux of blood.

If the patient loses too much blood, stop the flux.

℞

[6 If. 208]

Use a fumigation.

℞

[1] *vnguentum ruptorium.* Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

[3] At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo vell tenassmoun:* ℞ *mer* ʒ *ij, olibani, ameos ana* ʒ *j. oppij* ʒ ß. *gosium gres et* [?], *fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur suppositorum.*

[4] Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kahrabà Devic *Dict.* Amber.

[5] *Alphita*, p. 20: "*Barba yrsina . . . a° buckestonge.*"

A wash.

eupular*um* glandulu*m*, corticas *gra*nator*um*, kutte hem a litil & seþe he*m* *in* good wijn. & wiþ þis wijn waische þe place an eue*n* & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of' tapsi barbasti[1] is good þ*er*fore / 4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat' aft*er* þe flux of' þe emeroidis, ouþ*er* if' enpostym be to longe mat*ur*atif' *in* þat' same place vnopened, þan it' falliþ ofte tyme þat' þe grete bowel[2] is peersid. & sumtyme it' makiþ a greet' hole[3] in þe same place, & þoruȝ þat' hole comeþ out' wijnd & sumtyme egestiou*n*,[4] & þis hole is cleped a festre of' þe ers.[5] Of' þis eure manye men be*n* hardi & knowen not' þe p*er*els þ*er*of', & makiþ þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in oþ*er*e placis / But' þou schalt' take good [6]hede of' þis maner enfestre; þou schalt' asaie if' þe hole of' þe festre go to hiȝe þat' it' touche þe place of' þe lacertis of' þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not' holde his egestiou*n*, þat it' nyle go out' alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þ*er*e go out' miche quitture ouþir litil of' þe hole of' þe festre, or wheþir þe quitture þ*er*of' be whit' or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet' penaunce þ*er*of' or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þi*n*gis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it' is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akynge & þe swellynge, þan þou schalt' asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat' þou schalt' knowe i*n* þis man*er* / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it' wole go, i*n*to his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt' tent' i*n* þe feestre. & loke in what' place þe tent' mette wiþ þi fyngir, & þan say þat' þe pa*tient* streyne his ers, & þan þou miȝt' wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If' þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe pa*tient* schal lete go out' wijnd & egestiou*n* at' þe hole of' þe fest*re*. [7]Þan þou schalt' i*n* no man*er* touche þe fest*re* wiþ no medicyn corosif' ne wiþ noon hoot' iren; but' þou schalt' teche hi*m* for to vse a waisching' wiþ wat*er* & hony & mirre, & wiþ su*m* mundificatif', and i*n* þis maner he schal kepe hi*m* þat' þe malice of' þe fest*re* wexe nomore. ¶ O mi briþ*er*en, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat' coude on ruptorie, & þei supposide þ*er*bi for to cure ca*n*eris & festris, & al maner crepa-

[6 lf. 208, bk.] This wants careful treatment.

Look whether the fistula passes the muscles of the buttocks, whether there is much pus and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the brawn, [7 lf. 209] apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

[1] *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g°. molayne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

[2] *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

[3] *callid ffestula testium*, inserted in later hand.

[4] "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

[5] *ffestula*, inserted in later hand.

turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie[1] for to surmounte *Galien* in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris þat þei falliþ, þe more wrooþ þei wolen be, & þe more þei wolliþ vse her ruptorijs / And *per*fore þis mai be ensau*m*ple to þee: if a man haue no drinke but cysel, and haþ indignacioun for to feeche ony o*per* but halt him *per*to, & ȝeueþ *per*of to men þat ben aþirst. & if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing þ*er*of, he wole be wrooþ *per*fore, & he nyle noon o*per* drinke feeche, but algate ȝeueþ hem of þe same til her sp*irit*uals bicome drie / And if þe same [2]man hadde wijn ynowȝ & knew wel þe vertu þ*er*of, he wolde ȝeue no man cysel for to drinke nomore / þ*er*fore þou schalt vse medicyns þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /[3]

knowing only one corrosive apply it in every case. *Galien.*

They do like a man who has no other drink but vinegar, and gives it to thirsty people;

[2 lf. 209, bk.]

if he had wine, he would not give vinegar.

Of þe cancre[4] and þe mormole /

¶ xiijo. c° /

CAncrene ben rounde vlceris þat falliþ *in* a mannes leggis, & malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þ*er*fore I wole make differ*en*ce þ*er*of / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben foule & comeþ of dedinge of þe skyn,[5] for þe natural spiritis comen not þ*er*to, & þ*er*fore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go anoon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid canerenu*m*, but it schal be clepid aschachiles.[6] & if þe corrupcioun ocupie al þe lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes estiomenus, þat is as miche to seie as etyng him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenar*um* ben blac vlcera, & þe fleisch þ*er*of wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis þ*er*of wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is *in* þe middil [7]of vlcera wole be corrupt. & it be miche lijk to a cancre þat is vlcerat*us*, but þis is þe difference þ*er*of þat a cancre comeþ of corrupcioun of

Gangrene is a mortification of the skin.

If the bone is affected it is called **aschachiles** if the whole limb is affected **herpes estiomenus.**

The symptoms of Gangrene are black ulcers

[7 lf. 210]

similar to an ulcerated cancer.

[1] MS. *rurptorie.*

[3] The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

[4] *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancroma, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangræna, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfitly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to aseachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Aseachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

[5] *of dedinge of þe skyn.* Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.

[6] *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.

It is caused by general debility.

malancolie, & þis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a canere fretiþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of summen a deed cancre / 4

Treatment of Gangrene: Purge the body from melancholic matter,

Þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þouȝ it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / ȝitt þe mater þat fallip to þe place is greet / Þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþe-

bleed from a vein between the last two toes,

forþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder 12

use daffodil-powder.

of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat [1]it be myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

[1 lf. 210, bk.] The best method is, to cauterize the place with the hot iron.

Then apply a plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist opere vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forȝete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Malum mortuum is a maner scabbe, & comeþ of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24 swelliþ / Þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28 & þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. Þou [2]schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,[3] til al þe heeris falle awei wiþouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32 maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe fier / ℞, olei aceti ana. ʒ .ij., sapponis mollis & sapponis duri ana. ℥ j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .℥ .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

Malum mortuum is a kind of scab,

and is treated with purging,

blood-letting,

and an ointment.

[2 lf. 211]

℞ an ointment of tithymal.

℞ An ointment of soap.

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

Of varices, þat ben veynes, and elephancia.[1]

UArices ben clepid veynes, þat ben grete, & grene, & purpur, & sittiþ aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet malancolious[2] blood, þat falliþ adoun. & also it comeþ of grete metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet also[3] // þe [4]cure of varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgaciou*n* is propre in þis caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithimi. & lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat engendriþ malancolie / þis passioun þow myȝt cure in þese maners[5] / þis is þe first maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, þat ben bineþe in his leg, comeþ out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a nedele. & loke þat þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a þreed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboue þat place, putte yn þi nedele aȝen, vndir þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij. bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne þat is aboue schal be brent wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side [6]of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. & presse out þe blood bineþeforþ of þe veyne, as myche as þou myȝt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns þat ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.[7] ¶ Also anoþer maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out of þe blood as miche as þou miȝt, & purge him ofte, & make him

¶ xiiij. c°/ Varices are enlarged veins in the legs.

Elephantia attacks the feet.

[4 lf. 211, bk.] The general treatment consists in purging, and in bleeding from the Basilic vein.

Local treatments: 1. Apply a double ligature on the popliteal vein,

cut the vein between the two ligatures,

[6 lf. 212]

and press the blood out from the lower part of the vein: after removal of the ligature.

2. Use blood-letting and purging.

[1] Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. Avicenna's list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

[2] MS. *humour*, deleted.

[3] Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quædam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus vltra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

[5] Lat.: Locus autem tribus curatur modis.

[7] This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Ægineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna l. c.*, Cap. 18.

enplastris aboute his leggis wiþ drijnge þi*n*gis, & dicte hi*m* as it is aforseid. ¶ Þe .iij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no p*er*fit cure þ*er*of, but þ*o*u schalt lete þ*at* blood falle adou*n*, & þan a fewe tymes i*n* þe ȝeer þou schalt purge hi*m*; & þou schalt laske his greet blood wiþ blood-letyngis, þ*at* ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þ*at* ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be goo*n* awey / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for he*m* þ*at* haue had þis passiou*n* longe, & for he*m* þ*at* ben olde / For if þou kutte a veyne in he*m*, [1] þan þ*er* wole engendre manie sijknessis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe raþ*er*e / For I siȝ men þ*at* her veynes weren so kutt þ*at* were*n* algate sijk aftirward, & wiþi*n*ne a litil time aftir þ*at* þei diede. ¶ Elephancia[2] is incurable wh*an*ne it is confermed; but bifore þ*at* it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humo*ur*is þ*at* ben i*n* þe cause wiþ blood-leti*n*g, þ*at* ben aforseid. & he schal absteine hi*m* fro grete metis, þ*at* engendriþ greet humo*ur*is; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bou*n*den wiþ a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynt / But first þ*o*u schalt anoynte his leggis wiþ epithi*m*o maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,[3] & alym w*ith* vinegre. & wh*an*ne þe swellynge bigy*n*neþ to goon awei, þan make hi*m* a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þ*er*i*n*ne longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinor*um*, mirre, stercus cap*r*ini, fenigreci. Also anointe hi*m*, & binde hi*m*, as it is forseid. & i*n* þis maner I haue curid me*n*, þ*at* ne weren not confermed þeron //

3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 lf. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting, keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 lf. 213] ¶ xv°. c° /

[4] PORRI[5] ben engendrid of fleume þ*at* is greet, & ben white; verucc[6] comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure[7] comeþ of malancolie brent, & makiþ as it were kuttyngis;

[2] The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

[3] *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." ὑποκιστίς, ίδος, ἡ, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the κίστος, Cytinus hypocistis. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

[5] "*Porrus*, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

[6] "*Verruca*, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

[7] "*Scissure*, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*

& if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.[1] ¶ Þe cure of porrorum is for to clense his bodi wiþ trocisco de turbit, & þan frote þe place wiþ medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem wiþ poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wiþ þe iuys of mirti & wiþ þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wiþ a purgaciou maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wiþ summe oþere medicyn þat is proprid for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge oynementis / as vnguentum ruptorium, ouþer mel anacardi or sum oþir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ & binde it wiþ a strong preed, & streine wel þe pred & drawe him awei wiþ þe preed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wiþ a cauterie punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make [2]him a baþ of swete water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wiþ a decoccioun of bismalue in watir, & a litil oile þerwiþ; & lete him vse metis þat makiþ moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wiþ þis oynement / ℞, olium rosarum, cere citrine, adipis anatis colatus, Isopi humide,[3] muscillagine seminis citoniorum, amilum, draganti, ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ **Muge** schulen be curid wiþ oilis & oynementis / ffirst þou schalt aswage þe akinge wiþ oile, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan soude it wiþ mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolue þe enpostym. & þou schalt make þat he vse [not][4] streit schoon, & he schal anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wiþ þis oynement / ℞, olium de lilie ℥ .vj., cere ℥ ß., resine ℥ ij., armoniaci ℥ j., farine fenigreci ℥ .ß., thuris, masticis, ana ʒ .ij., & make herof an oynement /[5]

Treatment of porrorum. Apply a caustic medicine.

veruce. Use purging and a strong ointment,

or tie the growth.

Scissure. Use purging, [2 lf. 213, bk.] a bath, a wash,

an ointment. ℞

Muge.

Relieve the pain; apply a mundificative,

a plaster,

and an ointment. ℞

[1] *Matth. Syluat.:* "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt exeoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus, mungere, μύξα.*

[3] *isopus humida.* Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "*The fyfte. whiche is nother propurly oynement nor enplastre. but atwixe two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take wolle that is bytwixe the thyes and the iewes of schepe. as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water thereupon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyȝt. and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a liȝt fyre. and thanne lete hit wexe cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou stere hit euermore with a spature of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement.*"

[4] *not.* wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet strieta.

[5] Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277. fol. 19: "*For cold in wynter þe leche may haue two consideraciouns to þe heelynge*

Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213*]

Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft.

Nota.

Learned physicians leave it to unlearned men and women.

One ought to be both a physician and a surgeon.

Blood-letting is used to keep a man's health, and to remove sickness.

[4 lf. 213*, bk.]

Bleed those who eat and drink much, and have little exercise.

Bleed in order to prevent a disease.

Blood-letyng is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his veynes / [1] And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & blood-letynge falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so greet difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philosophoris bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝitt mani men weneþ þat it is impossible þat oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis[2] / But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letynge is vsid bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknessis fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in blood-leting: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man / & þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe endure itt // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,[3] & principali hem þat etiþ good fleisch [4] & drinkiþ good wijn, & etiþ metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but litil, & principali þe while a man is ȝong, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue akynge in her ioyntis, ouþer a feuere þat is clepid sinocha[5] or þe squinacie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt lete hem blood or her passioun come, þat it mowe go awey þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet akynge in

of sviche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat *it come not, & another of* þe *partie of remevynge of* þe *seknesse i-made. By* þe *reson of defence that it come not, leue* þe *patient* wiþ *all his witt streit schoynge. & haue he dowble schoos & large, & anoynte he euery nyȝt* þe *heele with an oynement* þus *maad.*"

[2] Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

[3] Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

[5] Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parva*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25a (xvth cent.): "*blood* þerfore, *ȝif it ouer habounde*þ *vpon al* þe *body, & it is hett with hete enflammynge or brennynge* þe *herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is not roten,* þerof *is maad a feuere clepid* **synocha continua**. *And ȝif he is roten,* þenne *is maad* þerof *a feuere clepid* **synochus continuus**.

his heed wiþouten[1] a feuere, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknes þat comeþ of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid curantes.[2] ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / ffirst, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij, whanne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iij., in whiche veynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man þat schal be letere blood schal be 3ong, [3] & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp si3t; & loke þat he kunne knowe veines, & þat he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue manie diuers tool[4] for to lete blood þerwiþ, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat þe veyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he were so replet of blood þat he schulde be achekid þerwiþ; þat þou mi3t knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, & bi reednes of his face. Þan it is necessarie þat he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle 3eue no counseil þerto. & if it so be þat he be in perel of deeþ, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest þat it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels þat ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men schulen not be lete blood, & 3itt summe olde men ben stronger of vertu þan summe 3onge [5] men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: þat þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out of her sijknes / ¶ Also wommen wiþ childe schulen not be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also 3onge men þat ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not eouenable to be lete blood; ne men þat han manie humours & litil blood, for blood þat is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrensch men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

.1.
.2.
.3.

1. The operator must have [3 lf. 214] the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases; it is always dangerous, and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [5 lf. 214, bk.] nor pregnant women, nor young men who are pale and have spare hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

[1] The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos." ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

[2] Lat. curatiuus.

[4] *tool*, a survival of the O.E. tôl, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood azen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, & þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4

Nota Do not bleed at the beginning of cataract.

¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnynge of cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it is forseid, blood-letyng is good // And [1] if a man etiþ miche fleisch & drinkiþ miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8

[1 lf. 215] Blood-letting shall be used, if a man eats and drinks too much,

þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers sijknes þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deeþ / Also men þat haue þe goute of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he supposiþ to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take awey 12

in case of gout—before the illness is quite developed—

his akynge. & in alle sijknessis þat comeþ principali of blood, it is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haueþ synocham, blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole do awei þe feuere, or it waastiþ so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16

in case of synocha,

be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of phisik[2] / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe 20

else the blood may boil into the breast,

pacient schal be ful nyz stoppid.[3] & sumtyme a veine wole breke in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is 24

and a vein may break.

Nota

[4 lf. 215, bk.] myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openynge of veines [4] þat ben in us,[5] & what vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of a man þer ben .iij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is 28

The veins on which phlebotomy is practised are 1. **Cephalica.**

clepid cephalica, & is þe hizeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe elbowe[6]; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makiþ an enpostym / & also 32

which is cut either near the elbow, or between the thumb and the first finger.

þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same cause þou mizt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his þombe & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittiþ adoun aforzens þe elbowe, vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittiþ ful nyz þe gret arterie: & þerfore 36

2. **Basilica.** is cut either in the fold of the arm,

a man mote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe litil fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

or between the little finger and the ring finger.

[2] *& þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik*, inserted. Lat.: "aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur."

[3] Lat. quod patiens suffocatur. [5] Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

[6] Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brestꝑ, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of ꝑis veine þatꝑ is clepid Basilica, & of ꝑ veine þatꝑ is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þatꝑ is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in ꝑis veyne, itꝑ is perel of ꝑ ij. grete synewis þatꝑ liggiþ in boþe sidis [1]of ꝑ þe veyne. And whanne þou ꝑinkistꝑ to avoide al a mannes bodi, þan þou schaltꝑ lete him blood in ꝑis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brestꝑ. ¶ In Basilica, in þe riȝtꝑ hond, þou schaltꝑ lete a man blood for passioun of ꝑ þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun of ꝑ þe splene,[2] & in þe liftside of ꝑ þe forheed[3] itꝑ is good to lete blood for akynge of ꝑ þe heed,[4] & principali whanne sijknes is confermed in a mannes heed. & ꝑis I apreuede misilf ꝑ / for sumtyme itꝑ doiþ awei þe frenesi. & I siȝ a woman þatꝑ hadde akynge in hir heed, þatꝑ itꝑ miȝte notꝑ be take awei, & I lete hir blood in hir hond as itꝑ is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine in hir forheed þatꝑ was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þatꝑ veine, & anoon riȝtꝑ sche was hool / Butꝑ whanne þou woltꝑ lete a man blood in þatꝑ place, þou schaltꝑ streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & ꝑis blood-letynge is good for tynea, þatꝑ is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati.[5] & for demigrania þou schaltꝑ lete blood in þe templis of ꝑ his heed. & þe same blood-letynge is good for passion [6]of ꝑ a mannes iȝen / I hadde a ȝongꝑ man in my kepinge þatꝑ hadde demigrayn[7] of ꝑ hootꝑ cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þatꝑ was in þe same side of ꝑ his heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letynge blood in þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam / Also letynge blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þatꝑ ben as itꝑ were almaundis, & for brancis;[8] butꝑ he

3. **Mediana** is selected for general bleeding. [1 lf. 216]

A vein in the forehead is cut against headache and frenzy;

as the author did in the case of a woman.

Blood-letting on the temples is good against megrim, [6 lf. 216, bk.] and an eye disease.

Cut the veins behind the ear against megrim: bleed the tongue against squincy.

[2] *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the rynge fynger. more deelynynge to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the paeient."

[3] MS. inserts *for*.

[4] Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

[5] MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*. Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros. Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

[7] *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

[8] *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

schal be lete blood tofore *in* þe heed-veyne. & it is good for þe iȝen, & it is good for icchinge & for pustulis *in* þe nose, & for seotomia *þat* eomeþ of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood *in* veynes *in* þe necke, *þat* ben clepid gwide,[1] for drede of suffoeaeioun[2] of blood; & sumtyme in lepro*us* men, *þat* schulen be lete blood *in* her lippis bineþe.[3] & þis is good for hote enposty*ms* *in* þe mouþ, & for hote passiou*ns* of þe go*m*mys. ¶ In a ma*n*nes foot be*n* .iij., *þat* ben p*ro*fitable to be lete blood for manie passiou*ns* / And þe*r* is oon veyne *in* a ma*n*nes ha*m*me vndir his knee, *þat* is good to be lete [4]blood for passiou*ns* of þe maris, & for to bringe out menstrue: & it avoidiþ al þe bodi. ¶ Also þe*r* is anoþe*r* veine, *þat* sittiþ bitwixe þe holowe of þe foot wiþi*m*neforþ, & is elepid Sophena; & *in* þis veyne wo*m*men ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & me*n* be*n* lete blood *in* þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe ballokis. ¶ þe veine *þat* serueþ for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe heele & þe holowe of þe foot wiþoutforþ, & blood-letynge *in* þis veine is good for seia[ti]cam passionem, as it is aforseid *in* þe cure of sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt take kepe. If þou þinkist for to lete a man blood *in* .ij. diuers times, & not al at oonys, þan þou schalt do *in* þis maner; & *in* þis caas, wh*a*nne þou wolt lete a man miche blood, and ne darist not do it al at oonys; þan wha*n*ne þou letist hi*m* blood, þou schalt make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more long, *þat* it soude not hastili; & þan þou schalt bi*n*de his arme, & smite þe place þe*r*e þou wolt lete hi*m* blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make hi*m* blede more, as myche as þou seest *þat* good is / [5]¶ Also whanne þou wolt wiþ blood-letyng make þe mater go to þe place aforȝens; whanne þou hast lete out þe .iij. p*ar*t off blood *þat* he schal blede, þan þou schalt sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make him stonde vp & remeue[6] hi*m*-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt do .iij.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[4 lf. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called **Sophena.**

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[5 lf. 217, bk.]

If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

[1] Lat. vene guidegi.

[2] Phillips: "*Suffocation.* a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

[3] This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuantur propter aeola calidum in ore — —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due vene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur aeola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

[6] *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. remuen, O.F. remuer, to move, stir.

siþis or .iiij., for *in* þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie aforȝens, & þe *ver*tu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letynge ouþ*er* falle doun, þan
4 lete hi*m* lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete hi*m* ete a schiuer of breed toostid & leid *in* wijn of *gra*nator*um*. ¶ Alle maner veynes *in* blood-letinge schulen be kutt endelo*n*gis / And whanne þou wolt lete a ma*n* blood *in* þe p*ar*tijs aboue þe necke, þan
8 þ*o*u muste binde þe veine,[1] til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete hi*m* blood on / And wha*n*ne þou wolt lete a man blood *in* his arme, þan þ*o*u muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place; & þou muste [2]be wel war þ*at* þou streyne not to faste, as manie
12 me*n* doon / Manie me*n* binden so faste a ma*n*nes arm, þ*at* he mai not fele his arm / Veynes of a ma*n*nes feet & *in* his hondis, if þou wolt lete a man blood þ*er*o*n*, þan þou muste sette he*m* *in* hoot wate*r*, & lete hem achaufe þ*er*on an hour; & þa*n* þ*o*u muste bi*n*de
16 his foot ouþir his hond aboue þe ioinct wiþ a boond, & algate his foot or his ho*n*d mote be *in* þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.

Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,

[2 lf. 218]

and by a warm foot-bath.

Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

¶ xvij°. c°.

SIccia is sett sumtyme for kuttynge & sumtime wiþoute kuttynge,
20 and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.[3] Wiþout kutti*n*g as vpon a ma*n*nes wombe or wo*m*mans / ffor akynge þ*at* comeþ of wijnd, & it is good for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þ*at* falliþ adou*n* of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe
24 akynge þ*at* it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wo*m*mans tetis for to restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpo*n* þe regio*n* [4]of þe wombe for failinge of þe maris, þ*at* is clepid dislo-
28 cacio*u*n of þe maris: as if the maris falle adou*n* *in* þe riȝtside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe liftside / And if þe maris falle *in* þe liftside, þan it schal be sett *in* þe riȝtside / Also it is sett vndir a ma*n*nes eere for to d*ra*we out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þ*at* is falle yn /
32 Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þ*at* sittiþ hid fer yn / And it schal be sett *in* eue*r*i place þ*er*e þou wolt make a greet attracciou*n* / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe bitynge of a wood hou*n*d, & vpon þe biti*n*g of a venymous beest.

The Sycia is used against flatulence,

to draw the stone from the kidneys towards the bladder,

to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,

[4 lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a stone out of the ear,

to draw out internal piles,

on the bite of a mad dog.

[1] Lat. opus collum stringi donec appereant.

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

It schal be sett þeron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. ȝeer oold we moun garcie, whanne blood leting is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 þat is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —[1] & for greuaunce of þe iȝen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat ben in þe heed vnder [2]a

[2 lf. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera þat ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akynge of þe teeþ / Also if it be sett bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownynge & for quakinge of þe herte, & for hem þat han to miche blood in þat place. Þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makiþ him feble[3] / 12

watir lechis

Also watir leechis[4] drawiþ more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouȝt. Þei þat han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule stynkynge watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouȝt / And in þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode: þei þat han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept al adai fastynge. & þan þou schalt ȝeue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe [5]place þat he schal be

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Good leeches have red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[5 lf. 219, bk.]

[1] Some words are wanting. Lat.: propter grauedinem capitis.

[3] The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat.: "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum. et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

[4] Rhasis, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6. ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3. bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches: "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli: que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici; sed blonde rotonde & ad colores capitis apte, que velocis sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22. ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point: "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."

sett', þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat' it' bicome reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anoynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & wh*a*nne he is ful & þou wolt' do hi*m* awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþ*er* askis maad of' paper. & wh*a*nne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse a3en to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþ*er* watir leche, if' þ*er*e gaderiþ þ*er*to miche mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat' is rotid, for it' d*r*aweth it' out' /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on, and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.[1]

¶ xviij co

A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

CAuterium is seid in ij. maners, þat' is to seie large & streit'. & cauterium is seid p*r*opurli a brennynge wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþ*er* instrument' þat' is hoot', ouþ*er* wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþ*er* wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþ*er* wiþ herbis / And þ*er* be*n* manie medicy*n*s for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt' fynde pleynlier in þe antidotarie / A caut*er*ie is clepid streit',[2] wh*a*nne it' is m*aa*d wiþ an hoot' yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat' [3] ben m*aa*d wiþ medicyns þat' ha*n* v*er*tu for to bre*n*ne / þ*er* is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le wh*a*nne it' is not' hoot' in felinge / & þat' caut*er*ie p*r*euailiþ wiþouten brennyn*g*e as h*er*bis / þ*er* is anoþ*er* man*er* caut*er*ie : actual, for so miche as it' bre*n*neþ in dede / Of' þis caut*er*ie auicen[4] spekiþ & seiþ, þat' it' is a medicyn, miche helpi*n*ge for to defende, þat mat*er* schal not' dep*a*rte into al þe lyme ; & it' wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe it' into good complexiou*n* a3en, & it' wole dissolue mat*er* þat' is corrupt', & it' wole streyne flux of' blood. & auicen seiþ, þat' a cauterie is oon of' þe beste pointis of' cirurgie / for þi*n*gis þat' mowe not' be fulfillid in long' tyme, wiþ caut*er*ie þei be*n* fulfillid / As it' is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft' to cirurgians. & þ*er*fore it' is greet' wondir if' þ*er* be ony good cirurgian fou*n*de, for þei be*n* alle lewid me*n*. & if' a lewid ma*n* schal worche w*it*h cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not' þe difference bitwixe a caut*er*ie þat' is clepid actuel & poteneial. & also þei knowe not' in wh*a*t' place of' a ma*n*nes bodi þei schule*n* make he*m*. & þis is so rep*r*eued þat' it' is almoost' out' [5] of' vss / Also su*m*me*n* make*n* caut*er*ijs in vnclene bodies þat' ben ful replet' of

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver. [3 lf. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the Cauterium actuale [5 lf. 220, bk.] and Cauterium potenciale.

[1] The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage : Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

[2] See the preceding note.

[4] Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29 ; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat ben forseid, but þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of þe cauterie to swelle, & liȝtly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat ben vnkunnynge ben agast herof & ben not hardi for to make no mo cauterijs. & if þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it wolde not haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwiþ, & leggen it vpon men þat han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & falliþ greet agreuaunce þerof, & þan þei seien þat cauterijs ne ben nouȝt worþ / But auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett in place þere it schulde be, but if the mater be so miche þat þe cauterie mai not consume it, as þou miȝt se an ensample herof: þat fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but if þou doist a litil fier among miche wet wode, þer wole come smoke þerof. & the fier [1]mai not ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same maner it fariþ of a cauterie þat is in a mannes bodi, if he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not worche. & þerfor þou schalt purge him wiþ laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it is aforseid / Also þou schalt make no cauterijs in a man þat is ful of gode humours as of blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng suffisiþ / but if þe patient be strong & þe mater on him be coold & moist, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not bere a cauterie, but .ij. moneþis ouþer .iij. at þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee a good rule / If þou fyndist in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun[2]: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of a wounde þat bigynneþ to encancre,[3] & for al oþer corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of particlis of cauterijs þat falliþ in diuers placis of a mannes bodi, & wiþ diuers instrumentis þei schulen [4]be maad, whiche þou schalt se portraied[5] tofore þe, & her signis forþwiþ. ¶ Þe .i. instrument þat is comoun & moost in vss, is clepid **nodulum**,[6] & is an instrument maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat plate þere þou wolt make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long & smal & maad hoot, & putte it in þat hole of þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat þe

Some use **Cantarides.**

Auicen says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[1 lf. 221]

As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [4 lf. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. **Nodulum**, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

[2] Lat.: si membrum invenis in via corruptionis.

[3] *encanere*, med. Lat. incancrire; Dufr., Ital. incancherare.

[5] The figures are omitted. [6] Lat. anodulum, adnodulum.

cauterie schal be nomore but as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwiþ, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot til it bicome reed / & þerwiþ þou schalt make þi cauterie, & wh*a*nne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wiþ caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot iren made. & þan þou schalt do þerto a litil pelot maad of lynnen clooþ round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anoyntid wiþ oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis [1] maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, & haþ no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & wh*a*nne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The .iij cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie wh*a*nne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid radiale, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner[2] / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.[3] & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & wh*a*nne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wiþ þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festris þat sittiþ in þe corner of a mannes iʒe, & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growiþ in a mannes iʒe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille [4] cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.[5] is clepid dactilare, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwiþ þou schalt make cauterijs in þe haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & haþ .vj. arisyngis þeron as haþ a stoon of a date.[6] & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Wh*a*nne þis instrument is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 lf. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 lf. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

[2] The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "*þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children.*"

[3] Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

[5] The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

[6] Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

þeron, sehape after þe cauterie þat haþ .vj. arisingis out as it is aforseid. And þou sehalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche, & .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ þe vij. is clepid triangu- 4
lare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iij. at oonys. & þis eauterie is good for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. eauterie is elepid actuale,[1] for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good [2]for to make eauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a 8
nedele. ¶ The .ix. eauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,[3] & is maad triangulis holowid.[4] & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a 12
scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre[5] as it were a nedele, & it schal be holde with coold tenaclis, also þe place þat þou wolt make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaclis, & putt in þin hoot iren þorugh þe hole of þe tenaclis, & brenne þe skyn. 16
þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen ȝerne & wete it in blood, & drawe it þorugh þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis togidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of 20
þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris / Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make eauterijs with, & her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt make hem / In oold heed-akynge, [6]whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis 24
& gargarismis & snesyngis[7] & clisterijs & oþere maner of avoidynge, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anoyntyng, whanne þe akynge of a mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,[8] ne noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe iȝen, & 28
passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold eouȝe, & flux of þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou sehalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed[9]

7. Triangulare.

8. Actuale is like a needle, and [2 lf. 223] used for the eye-brows.

linguale.

Ceton.

The skin is lifted up with pincers, a hole is burnt through, and some threads of wool put in.

[6 lf. 223, bk.] When all other medicines are inefficient to remove a chronic headache and other diseases arising from the head,

use the Cauterium Cultellare.

[1] *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

[3] *ceton*, med. Lat. scto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26,106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

[4] Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

[5] *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littré Dict.*

[7] *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

[8] *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilenticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilensia .i. morbus caducus.

[9] Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

bihinde. & first schaue awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt make þi cauterie as it is aforseid with an hoot iren, & herof þou schalt be ware þat þou lete not þat iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt hastili make it, & hastily do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt do awei þe cruste þerof wiþ butter, or wiþ oold grese, or wiþ leeues of caul, as it is aforseid. ¶ Þis cauterie schal be holde open wiþ litil pelottis as it is forseid as longe as þou wolt, til þe patient be hool / But or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it is aforseid, þat þin iren lie not to longe, [1]but hastili take it awei, for if it were þere longe his brayn myȝte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wiþ þis cauterie I helide a womman þat hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I miȝte not make hir hool with no purgaciouns, ne wiþ noon anoyntingis, & wiþ þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwiþ, & do þerto seto. Þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe iȝen, & for epileneiam, & for oþere sijknessis of þe heed; but þis cauterie is not so good as þat oþer tofore. ¶ Also þou miȝt make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ[2]; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwiþ þe mater schal be consumed, þat nerues ben redi for to take.[3] ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt make cauterijs for passiouns of iȝen and for akynge of þe teeþ. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt do awei wiþ a cauterie þat is clepid lingual, [4]schape as it were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt make þerwiþ cauterijs vpon his browis, but þou muste be war þat þou touche not þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt make cauterijs þervpon with cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat is in þe corner of a mannes iȝe. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is in a mannes nose, it mai be remeued awei wiþ cauterium acutum ouþer punctuale, for to touche þerwiþ þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe superfluite be take awei. & if þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 lf. 224]

The round cautery is good for passiouns of þe iȝen.

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale [4 lf. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eyebrows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sowd. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughoute the brayn.*

[2] Lat.: eutem superficialiter tangendo.

[3] Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inbibitio expectatur.

The round cautery is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cautery applied on [2 lf. 225] the arms is used against lethargy.

A cautery on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema,

for diseases of the rig-bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a Seton.

þoruȝ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of þe nose, but oonly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for wennys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,[1] & for þe palet, & for sijknes in a mannes mouþ, & in þe gomys, & in þe teeþ. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a litil [2]bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknes þat ben in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,[3] & also it purgiþ wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat falliþ adoun fro a mannes heed to hise iȝen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes iȝen / Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria[4] bitwene a mannes fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is good for asma[5] / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of þe brest aboue for disma[6] / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese cauterijs been good for empima,[7] *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt [8]make cauterijs vnder þe nauele & vppon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passionem & for þe sijknes of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie. And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou

[1] *place* for *plage?* Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

[3] *litarge*, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* I., p. 200: "*wiþ þa adle ðe man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþeode ofergytulnys eweden.*"

[4] Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 *a*: "*Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comeþ of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen.*"

[5] *asma*, med. Lat. asma, ἄσθμα.

[6] *disma*, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." *Simon. Barth.*, p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

[7] *empima*, Lat. empimia. *Simon. Barth.*, p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 *a*: "*empima is a passioun, whan me spetiþ quittir.*"

miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akynge of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manic men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare so. & aboue þe anele ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre[1] / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid. & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not][2] be in dispeir of cauterijs,[3] but þou schalt bigynne to purge [4]him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore aȝen wiþ gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makiþ oon cauterie or .ij, & if þei seen þat it profitiþ not, þan þei leeueþ of & worchiþ nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe paeient be brouȝt al doun & liȝtli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiþ: it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. & defaute herof is þis: þat manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makiþ no space to bringe þe patient into good staat aȝen[5] / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiþ þou schalt attende in þis maner: if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt worche wiþ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat ben holden ful kunnyng / [6]& þerfore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupeioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupeioun,

Cauterics on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once, [4 lf. 226] repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauterics wrongly.

Galien. Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[6 lf. 226, bk.]

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

[1] *potagre*, Lat. podagra. *Hamp.* 2984: "*for sleuthe als þe potagre and þe gout.*" De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk.: "*Arthetica is ache and evel in fingres and tone wiþ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe fyngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra.*"

[2] *not*, omitted. Lat.: nec propter hoc desperes.

[3] See p. 284, note 7.

[5] Add. 26,106, fol. 93: si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool[1] place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupeioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book / 4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþer with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix°. c° / Burns and scalds are treated with cold medicines, before blisters are formed,

A Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun: or þe place bigynne to 8 bladdre,[2] þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vleeratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat

with styptics in case of ulceration.

vleera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12 lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben elepid stiptica not fretynge / þese

[3 lf. 227]

Simple medicines applied in the first case.

ben symple medicyns [3]in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,[4] & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16 a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe ȝelke of an ey ben good þerfore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þerfore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdring / 20

Medicines applied in the second case.

Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas: / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / ℞, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement / 24 Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þerfore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. Þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28 book // Of brekyng of boonis,[5] & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //[6]

[1] MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.
[2] *bladdre*, vesicari. [4] Lat. omnes sandali. [5] MS. *bookis*.
[6] Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huis libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

1 A Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,[2] & sumtyme pressid [1 lf. 227, bk.]
adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid ¶ i°. c°/
aȝen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he A broken nose, unless soon re-
4 schal be maymed for euermore[3] / If þou comest at þe adjusted, remains de-
firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of formed.
þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir Restore the nose by manipulation.
wole best yn, & wiþ þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere
8 vpward wiþ þi fyngir within forþ, & presse wiþ þin hond wiþoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. Þan make a strong tent & so Plug the nostrils with a strong tent.
longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal
be diȝt wiþ a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik &
12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into
his nose, wiþoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe
antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt
binde his nose wiþ boondis,[4] & leie sutil lynnen clooþ in boþe sidis
16 of his nose as [5]it is aforseid in þe chapiter of woundis in a mannes [5 lf. 228]
face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make
a tent of tre & hile it wiþ lynnen clooþ þat it be oold & neissche,
& þan anointe þis tent wiþ oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel
20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwiþ arere vp his nose wiþinneforþ,[6] &
wiþ þin hond wiþoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt
in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & blood- Take care of the general treatment.
letyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest
24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon[7] in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte If the cheek-bone is broken,

which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.

[2] Compare: *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 *b*.

[3] Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt witc þat þe boon of þe nose is oþerwhile depressyd & oþerwhile broken, & ȝif soþely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattydnesse or euel schapp.*" *fnattydness*, translates med. Lat. simitas σιμότης, snubbiness. [4] MS. *broondis*.

[6] Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And ȝif þou may not do þat wiþ þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene lynen clout & anoynte þe clout wiþ þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable.*"

[7] *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, ibid.: "Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi. et cet." Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 *b*: "*ȝif soþely þe boon of þe vppere chawel or of þe neþere were maad*[a] *withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe mouþ of þe seeke.*"

[a] Sl. 6. fol. 115 *b*, *broken*.

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

yn þi strongist fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon *in*-
to his *pro*pre place aȝen, & *pre*sse wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ ; & if þe
cheke-boon be to-broke *in* þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of
þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his *pro*pre place aȝen, as it is afor- 4
seid. & wha*nn*e þe boon is brouȝt as it schulde be, þat þou miȝt
knowe if his teeþ sittiþ euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise
[1 lf. 228, bk.] teeþ wiþ a strong preed wexid [1]& bounden bitwixe his teeþ, & leie

and by applying a bandage.

*per*vpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde hi*m* *in* þe same maner, þat 8
þe boond be maad fast bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be
turned aȝe*n* to his forheed, & þou schalt binde hi*m* wiþ þi boond
manyfoold, þat þe boon þat is to-broke mowe be holde *in* his *pro*pre
The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

place / And þe pa*tient* schal ete no metis but þingis þat he may 12
soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his
place aȝen, & *in* .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid aȝen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //[2]

¶ ijo. co. The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

THe cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þat is for .iij causis : oon 16
is þat þe cheke-boon bineþe is more liȝt & more able þ*er*fore,
þe .ij. cause is þis : þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if þe cheke-
boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid þ*er*bi. þe .iij.
cause is þis : if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þ*ere* nolde be noon 20
strong co*n*iunccio*un* bitwene he*m* / þ*er*fore þe cheke-boon aboue is
fast maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid *in* anothomia*m*.

[3 lf. 229]

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments.

¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned [3]togid*e*re
in þe chyn. & þis boon is m*aa*d fast w*ith* þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ 24
ligaturis þat ben stronge & recching & wiþ lacertis, & make*th* þe
cheke-boon meue wha*nn*e a man wole, for su*mm*e þ*er*of comeþ
adou*n* fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ p*ar*tijs of nerues
of þe heed, & of nuche, & closiþ togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28
comeþ[4]] bineþe aforȝens þe brest, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of
nuche & oppeneþ þe cheke-boon, & su*mm*e comeþ fro þe sidis, &

Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

[2] Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine : "*ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest.*" The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

[4] *Summe comeþ*, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk. : "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.

meueþ þe cheke-boon rou*n*d, wha*n*ne a ma*n* couwid.[1] & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brouȝt' of' þe ioynct' fro þe cheke-boon aboue i*n* .ij. maners: ouþ*er* it' goiþ of' þe ioy*n*ct' bihindeward, & þan þe teeþ
4 þ*at*' ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþi*n*ne þe teeþ of' þe cheke-boon aboue. & þan he may not' opene his mouþ, & it' goiþ out' of þe ioy*n*ct' forward, & þan þe teeþ þ*at*' be*n* i*n* þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþ*er*e out' þan þe teeþ aboue. & he mai not close his mouþ
8 togidere[2] / These signys ben certeyn wh*a*nne þe boon is out' of' his ioynct' / It' is greet' nede for to helpe a man hastily i*n* þis caas; for if' þe [3]cheke-boon be out' of' ioincte longe, þ*er*e ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þ*at*' place, & for þis cause it'
12 wexiþ hard anoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat' wolen falle þ*er*to. & if' þ*er* falle an enpostym i*n* þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þ*er* comeþ a frenesie þ*er*of' & ofte tyme dieþ / & þ*er*fore if' he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole
16 liȝtly i*n*to þe ioinct' aȝen. & þ*er*fore þ*at*' ioinct' haþ liȝt' meuynge / ffor eueri ioinct' þ*at*' haþ hard meuynge, & he be out' of' þe ioinct', it' wole be hard for to bringe yn aȝen / If' it' so be þ*at*' þe cheke-boo*n* be out' of' ioi*n*nct' hindeward, þan þou schalt' take þe boon
20 first' wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.[4] & if' it' so be þ*at*' his mouþ be closid togid*er*e, þan þou schalt' opene his mouþ wiþ þi*n* hond or w*ith* su*m* oþ*er* instrument', & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it' to his place aȝen. & i*n*
24 þis man*er* þou schalt' knowe wh*a*nne it' is i*n* his pr*o*pre place aȝen, if' his teeþ sitten euene, & if' he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miȝt' not' bringe þe boon to his pr*o*pre place i*n* þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong' boond, & sette it' vndir his chyn, þ*er*e þ*o*u
28 [5]settist' þi fyngris, & anoþ*er* ma*n* mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon, [3 lf. 229, bk.]

or the place gets indurated, and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

if necessary by means of a strong bandage. [5 lf. 230]

[1] Lat.: in masticando.

[2] Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The tokenes of* þe *dislocation inward ben* þat þe *mouþ leneþ opene, & þat* þe *teþ of* þe *neþere chawel goon tofore* þe *teþ of* þe *rppere chawl.* ¶ *The tokenes of* þe *dislocaeioun outward ben* þat þe *mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, &* þe *seeke may not ehewe &* þe *teþ drawe vp toward* þe *palett, &* þer *schewiþ in* þe *vttere party in* þe *place of* þe *dislocaeion an opene outberynge out of mesure, &* þe *speche is bynomen hym.*"

[4] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 *b*: "*The dislocaeion knowe, whether it be to* þe *innere party or* þe *vttere, a wyse leche oweþ to putte his* þ*umbes wiþinne* þe *mouþ of* þe *seeke, & festene hem vpon* þe *wange-teþ of* þe *neþere iowe of* þe *seeke, & wiþ* þe *oþere four fyngeres he schal take* þe *iowe dislocate fro* þe *vttere, &* þat *tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast* þe *heuyd of* þe *seeke.*"

þou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing wiþ þe boond as it is aforseid, al at oonys wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynet.[1]

If the dislocation is forwards, let an assistant draw the bone backwards,

¶ If it be out of þe ioinct forward, þan þou schalt sette a strong boond vpon his chin, þat it hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel & euenly.

and open the mouth by a wedge.

& þou schalt putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he drawiþ þe boon þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at oon tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct. Whanne þe boon is ynne, þan binde it faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre, & lete him haue souping metis, & he schal ehewe no mete til þe place be al fast / ¶ If it so be þat þou were not at þe first bigynnyng, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akynge of his heed, þan schaue his heed & anoynte it wiþ oile of rosis & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & þou schalt [2]anoynte his heed with sum mollificatif, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & þou schalt worche as miche as þou miȝt for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to eure þe feuere, & for to comforte his heed, þat þe frenesie ne come not to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be remeued awei, þan cure him as it is aforseid //

In case of apostema use ointments

[2 lf. 230, bk.]

to remove the apostema and the fever,

and then reduce the dislocated bone.

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe þrote and of þe brest //[3]

¶ iij. co.

The cure is easy if no part of the broken bone is pressed in.

THe forke of þe þrote is elepid of summen patena, & of summen cathena.[4] Sumtyme it is to-broke & nouþer part of þe boon ne is not ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof is liȝt ynow. But if þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat oþer, þan it is ful hard for to bringe it yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie is pressid adoun, þan it is noon oþer nede for to haue no medicyn but stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it vpon þe brekynge of þe boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of þe same side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt þou schalt leie a bal of lynnen clooþ. & þou muste binde his arme þat he mowe not meue his arm [5]toward þe forke of þe brest, & in þis maner he mote

Apply bandages and tie the arm on the injured side to the neck.

[5 lf. 231]

[1] Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

[3] *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 *b*.

[4] *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The furcula, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and patena, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept' til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If' it' so be þat' oon ende of' þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoþer man his oþere arme, & þou schalt' wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif', & wete þerinne a lynnen clooþ, & hile al þe brekyng' of' þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas[1] wiþ white of' an ey, & þan binde him as it' is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /[2]

¶ iiij. co/

Rigge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not' to-broke, but' if' it' be wiþ greet' smytyng', & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat' makiþ greet' akynge. Also þer falliþ manie perels of' þe boonys of' þe necke if' þei ben hurt', lest' nucha be hirt' also, & þan it' is perel of' þe brayn as it' is aforseid / If' þou seest' yuel signes in þat' caas, go awei þerfro. & if' þou seest' noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of' rosis hoot' & leie þervpon wolle, and þanne [3]terbentine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt' vse til þe place be al hool /

If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt. Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noumbre of' a mannes ribbis is aforeseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng' or wiþ fallyng' / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt' knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & doun, & if' his rib be to-broke, þou schalt' heere hym sownie,[4] & he schal haue couȝinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It' is ful hard for to restore a rib þat' is to-broke, for sumtyme þat' oon parti plieþ inward, & þan it' is hard for to bringe him into his propre place aȝen / And summen seien þat' þe pacient' schulde ete metis to swelle him þat' engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place aȝen. & summen seien þat' me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure. Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

[1] *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

[2] Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

[4] Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "*ȝif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchynge, for þei þat of þristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places. þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettynge of breþ, & principally þe tyme of drawynge of wynd.*" The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping. Both are wrong.

[1 lf. 232]

.1. .2.

Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

[4 lf. 232, bk.]

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing þerof þe rib wole rise vp aȝen into his propre place / But I suppose þis wole more make agreuaunce þan helpe þe patient / ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot en[1]postyme / The .ij. it wole drawe to þe place mauie humours / If þou wolt take þis cure, þou schalt do in þis maner : / ffirst þou schalt lete him blood in þe side aforȝens in þe veyne þat is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if þou miȝt take vp þe rib þat is pressid adoun. & þin oþer hond þou schalt sette vpon þe place þat is not pressid adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat is anoyntid arere vp his rib. & loke þat þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat is to-broke come euene togidere, & þan make þe patient to couȝe, for þis þe beste maner for to bringe him yn[2] / If þou dredist nouȝt greet replecioun of his bodi, þou miȝt opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is ioyned. & þan þou schalt binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou schalt leie lynnet or sum oþer neische þing. & þou schalt binde him in sich a maner þat þe rib þat is to-broke ne mowe not remoue ne falle adoun aȝen. & þe patient schal vse liȝt mete as pultes de caudarisio,[3] de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende [4]him fro wraþþe & fro crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat wolen make a man to couȝe. ¶ If it so be þat þe akynge aceese not, & þou ne miȝt not bringe his rib as he schulde be, & if he haþ greet cowȝynge & acces of þe feuere,[5] whanne þou hast lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn aforȝens þe rib þat is to-broke, & vnhile þe same rib of al his fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou schalt cure þe wounde as it is aforseid / // His dietynge schal be as of pluretici til þe feuere & al þe passiouns ben goon awei //

Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. c°. Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert wiþ breking / þe nere þat it be þe ioynet, þe more perilous it is, & þe worse for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what maner þou schalt knowe a brekyng, & in what maner þou schalt restore it aȝen, þat

[2] Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "*make hym eft cowȝe sadly, & vpon þe place þrist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttynge.*"

[3] Sim. de Janua : "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

[5] *acces of þe feuere*, Lat. si febris accideret.

it mowe be an ensample to þee *in* þe brek*ing*,[1] if a ma*n*nes arme
& his leggis & his hipe-boon be*n* broke*n* / In þis maner þou schalt Symptoms:
knowe: / Lete a man holde his arme [2]wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe [[2] lf. 233]
4 schuldre, & he mot holde hi*m* in þat maner þat he mowe nott
meue hi*m*-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore hi*m*, & take his arme
faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir li3tli til þou heere The sound heard on moving the arm.
sownynge of þe boon, & wh*an*ne þou knowist þe place þat it is
8 to-broke.[3] & þis man*er* asaiy*ng* is good wh*an*ne þe brekynge is so
p*ri*uy þat no pa*r*tie of þe boon goiþ *in* no side out / Wh*an*ne þou
knowist where þe brek*ing* is, or þou bigynne ony þi*ng* for to worche First prepare all that you
þe*r*on, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat require:
12 ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat be*n* euene, & wete he*m* *in* hoot the dressing,
wat*er* in winte*r*, & *in* coold wat*er* *in* som*er*, & þan wrynge out þi
stupis þ*er*of & di3te oile of ro*sis* & a defensif of bole, & ij. longe the oil, the bandages,
boondis þat þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & ly*n*nen cloop þat mowe go
16 aboute al his arme, & a strong corde; & þe corde wole be þe bett*er* a strong cord,
if it be playn, & not round. & þou muste di3te smale 3erdis of and splints.
drie tree, þat be strong & sotil. & wh*an*ne þou hast di3t alle þese
þi*ng*is redi, þan sette þe boon *in* his place as li3tli — — —[4] w*ith* Reduce the fracture,
20 þi*n* hond wiþouten greuau*n*ce. & þan take [5]ood soft ly*n*nen cloop, [[5] lf. 233, bk.]
& wete it *in* oile of ro*sis*, and wijnde it aboute his arme. & vpon apply soft linen,
þis leie a cloop wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat schal be seid *in* þe
antidotarie for brekynge of boonys; & þ*er*fore þese .ij. ly*n*nen
24 cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng / And þou muste
haue cloutis *in* .ij. sidis of þe place þat is to-broke, & þ*er*vpon two clouts and wadding,
þou muste leie faldellam *in* boþe sidis euene, & wet *in* gleire of
an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wiþ þi boond, þat tie a bandage round the limb,
28 schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long þat he mowe goon
aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng of þe boond þat he mowe
not vndo / Vpon þis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of
stupis, & he schal oonly be wet *in* wat*er* & leid vpon. & hervpon

[1] MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat.: ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

[3] Lat.: et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37: "*When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchynge in þis: The leche schal drawe þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oþer wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuynge softely his handis, schal heere þe sown of þe broken boon, or he schal feele þe disseuerynge of þe parties of þe broken boon.*"

[4] Some words are wanting. Lat.: quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints secured by a cord, which shall be strained but moderately.

þou schalt leie þi spleⁿtis[1]; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bouⁿden þervpon. & þou schalt streyne middilly,[2] & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynyng þat is in þis place & in opere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat þe place bicome blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther beⁿ sumⁿ þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me[3]uynge, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seeþ þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe pa*tient* wher he haue miche akynge. & þei supposen to do awei þe akynge wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe pa*tient* mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche in þis maner / Whⁿne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, & as miche as þou miȝt do awei þe swellyng & þe akynge. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akynge ne swellynge, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vnbinde it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere aȝen as þow didist first. Whⁿne þe boon is wel soudid, þaⁿ þou schalt take stupis & wete heⁿ in good wijn hoot,[4] & leie þervpon. ¶ Whⁿne it is soudid, if þer leeue ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

[3 lf. 234]

A tight bandage may cause spasm, and prove fatal.

Nota. Keep the limb so bandaged for 10 days; then look if the bone is adjusted, and bandage it again.

[5 lf. 234, bk.]

Sometimes one or both the bones of the fore-arm are broken,

Sumtyme þe boonys of a mⁿnys arme ben to-broke [5]boþe, & sumtyme þat oþer. & whⁿne þei beⁿ boþe broken, it is þe more worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,[6] for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynowȝ / The boonys of a mⁿnes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde hiⁿ wiþ astelles þat beⁿ wel maad þerfore. & þouȝ þe fyngir ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt þou muste haue good kⁿnyng & good witt for to diȝte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

or the bones of the fingers.

Of brekiⁿg of þe boon of þe coxe.

vj°. c° / In case of fracture of the hip-bone or any bone of the leg,

WHanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngris / But þis þou

[1] MS. *spletis.* [2] *middilly*, mediocriter.
[4] Lat.: in bono vino calido.
[6] Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more *per*to, *pat* whanne *þ*ou hast bro*n*ȝt yn *þ*e boo*n* of *þ*e leg, *þ*an *þ*ou muste make an *in*strument, *pat* is clepid albi*um* ou*þer* coutelle; & it schal be schape *in* *þ*e maner of a cros.[1] & *þer*on his leg mote be sett, so *pat* his leg mowe [2]bowe to no side / Also it is necessarie *pat* *þ*e pa*tient* ligge also stille as he mai wi*þ*outen remeuyng, til *þ*e boon be fast // But *þ*ou muste be wel war herof whanne *pat* a manne*s* leg is to-broke, ou*þer* his hipe, *þ*ou muste be war *in* *þ*e soudyng, *pat* oon leg be not schort*er* *þ*an *þ*e o*þer* / But *þ*ou schalt mesure he*m* algate bo*þ*e lich long, & *in* *þ*e same mesure kepe he*m* /

apply a splint formed to the shape of the leg.

[2 lf. 235]

Take care that the leg does not get shortened.

Of *þ*e cure wh*an*ne a ma*n* is smite*n* *in* *þ*e rigbo*n* or ribbis.

¶ vij. c° /

IT bifalli*þ* sumtyme *pat* a man is smyten or a man falli*þ*, & *þ*an tendre boonys as *þ*e cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for *þ*e tendirnes of *þ*es lymes, *þ*ei wolen folde & not breke / In *þ*is maner *þ*ou schalt bringe he*m* aȝen / In *þ*is maner anoynte *þin* hond wi*þ* terbentyne, & take *pat* boon & presse it as it is forseid *in* *þ*e brekyng of a boon.[3] & if it be a rib, *þ*an *þ*ou schalt presse hi*m* vpward, as it is foreseid. & if it be *in* *þ*e arme ou*þer* *þ*e leg, *þ*an *þ*ou muste make ligaturis *per*fore & *in*strume*nt* of tree, *pat* be euene, & *per*to his arme ou*þer* his leg schal be bou*n*den & p*r*essid, for to make him euene. & or *þ*ou do *þ*us, *þ*ou schalt make a [4]vomentaciou*n* of camomille, malue, & bismalue, fenigrec*i*, se*min*is lini soden *in* wate*r*; & *þ*an anoynte hi*m* wi*þ* oile of lilie, or wi*þ* gandris grese, or hen-grese, & *þ*an p*r*esse his arme as it is aforseid. Also *þ*on miȝt vse *þ*is medicyn, *pat* is aproued ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer[5] *in* *pat* side *pat* *þ*e boon is aplied, &

Tender bones, especially those of children, become bent instead of breaking.

Straighten them by pressure,

by bandaging the limb to a wooden splint,

[4 lf. 235, bk.]

or lay a plate of ivory on the limb,

[1] Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

albiola, (alueolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flanes d'un navire."—Dufr.

coutella. κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tomm.

Paul. Ægin., Book VI. Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

[3] Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel picc illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius cleua.

[5] O.Fr. yvoyre.

by whose attraction it becomes straight.

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuousnes of þe rigboon whanne he is out of ioyncte /

¶ iij°. c° / viij

Dislocacioun of þe rigboonys is a greuous sijknes. It is aforseid in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rig. & it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben recching[1] & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuynge of þe heed / þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer rigboonys, & þerfore þei goiþ liȝtly out of þe ioynte, & it is ful greet drede þerof / If þe hiȝeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleeþ a man anoon ; for þat oþer boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man[2]nes breeþ anoon, & in þis maner it sleeþ a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of ioyncte, but if he be þe raþere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng for euermore[3] / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouȝt yn aȝen anoon, & principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, & bringe þe boon into his ioynct aȝen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon[4] is out of his ioynct fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his schuldris [5]& drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful

The ligaments on the neck are weak,

and the bones are easily dislocated.

Dislocation of the 1st vertebra—decollation—

[2 lf. 236] causes death by want of breath.

If the 7th and 8th vertebræ are out of joint, the ways of food and breath are stopped.

The bone must be replaced immediately after the accident.

Nota

Treatment: Press down the shoulders, and draw up the head.

The displacement may be inwards

[5 lf. 236, bk.]

or outwards.

[1] Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

[3] Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "*And of þe spondiles of þe brest, for lettynge brouȝt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully meuynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuynge, & þer falliþ hasty wynd & litel, & vtterlyche deþ. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles. þat ben 4. þer falleþ anoþor grenaunce in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme in þe place, & feuere, & deþ.*"

[4] *rig.* in margin.

seelde, þa*n* sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & p*r*esse adoun hise schuldris / If' it' so be þa*t*' ony rigboon bineþe þe .viij. boon of' þe neeke be out' of' ioynete, if' þe boon go ynward, it' nile take no
4 cure til it' sle hi*m* / And if' it' ne be not' al out' of' þe ioynete, but' it' p*r*essiþ nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuynge / If' it' so be þa*t*' þe boon be out' of' þe ioyncte & go outward, it' is incurable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broke*n*-riggid. Þis
8 is þe cure þe*r*of', if' it' mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & p*r*esse it[1] als so miche as þou miȝt', wiþ þi*n* hond, ouþe*r* p*r*esse it' yn w*ith* a playn tree, & studie þou i*n* þi witt' as miche as þou miȝt' for to p*r*esse it' i*n* aȝen; & leie þe*r*vpon oon of' þe consolidatiuis, & binde
12 it' faste / If' it' so be þa*t*' þe*r*e leeue ony hardnes afte*r* þe tyme þa*t*' þe place is soudid, þa*n* make an enplastre of' mollifieatiuis þerto, þa*t*' þou schalt' fynde i*n* þe antidotarie; & anoy*n*te hi*m* wiþ oynementis, þa*t*' þou schalt' fy*n*de [2]i*n* þe same place i*n* þe chapite*r* of' molli-
16 ficati*uis* /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[2 If. 237]

Of þe schuldre out of his place.[3]

A Mannes schuldre mai go out' of' þe ioynet' i*n* .iij. maners / Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of' þe boon of' adiutorie,
20 þa*t*' is þe poynt' of' þe schuldre, falliþ adoun vndir þe arme-pitt'; & su*m*tyme he goiþ of' þe ioynet' forþward, but' þa*t*' falliþ ful selden / The .iij.: he goiþ out' of' þe ioynet' vpward; & bakward he ne mai not' out' of' þe ioynet', for þe schuldre boon holdiþ itt' faste in.[4]
24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt' liȝtliche knowe bi touching' & bi siȝt', & þou schalt' fele þe boon i*n* his arme-pitt', & þan þe*r*e wole be a greet' pitt' aboue. ¶ If' he be out' of' the ioynet' forþward, þan his arme wole sitte bacward, & tofore þou schalt' se a greet' pitt' / ¶ If' he be
28 out' of' þe ioynet' vpward, þa*t*' þou schalt' knowe i*n* þis maner: his elbowe ne mai not' be drawe along' fro his body. & if' þou wolt' drawe hi*m* along', þou schalt' fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if' it' be a child, þan þou schalt' take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi
32 riȝthond vndir his [5]arme-pitt', & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & p*r*esse þe boon i*n*to his ioynet' wiþ þi riȝthond; & i*n* þis maner þou schalt' bringe in þe boon of' a child wel ynow. ¶ If' it' be a miche

ix ¶ iiij°. c° /

The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the arm-pit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of

[5 If. 237, bk.]

the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

[1] MS. *pressid.*

[3] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

[4] Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "*For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillieum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe spawde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner.*"

Reduction in a grown-up man is effected by means of a wooden ball.

man, lete hi*m* ligge adoun streiȝt, & take a round bal of tree, & folde hi*m* wiþ a cloop, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde hi*m* þ*er*e faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouþ*er* lete anoþ*er* man drawe it adou*n*ward, & helpe þou wiþ þi*n* hond for to bri*n*g yn þe boon, so þat þou schalt p*r*esse, & þe man d*r*awe al i*n* oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast i*n* .ij. wallis of þe hous, ouþ*er* .ij. postis of þe hous; & i*n* þe middil of þe p*er*che make a pitt, & i*n* þe same pitt leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiȝnes of þis p*er*che schal be hiȝer þan a man is long, & þan sette vndir his feet a stool. & loke þat þe same bal sitte vndir his arme, & lete a strong man holde dou*n* his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vndir his feet, & in þis maner þe boon wole come i*n*to his ioy*n*ct / ¶ If it be out of þe ioynct forþward, þan take a strong towail, & leie hi*m* vndir his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, [1] & þat oþ*er* ende forþ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde þe .ij. endis of þe towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoþ*er* boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it anoþ*er* strong man, & lete þese .ij. me*n* holde & drawe al at oonys; þan þou schalt w*i*th þi .ij. hondis, wh*a*nne þei drawiþ, p*r*esse þe boo*n* i*n*to his ioynct / Wh*a*nne þe boon is i*n* his ioy*n*ct, þan þei schulen leeue her drawyng softly. ¶ In þe same maner, wh*a*nne he is oute of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounde*n*, & oon man schal drawe hi*m* abacward wiþ þe towal, & þat oþ*er* man schal drawe his arme adou*n*ward, & þou schalt helpe for to p*r*esse yn þe boon wiþ þin hondis. & wh*a*nne þe boon is i*n* his ioynct, þan wete a pece of ly*n*nen cloop i*n* oile of ro*sis*, & þan þ*er*vpon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & þan leie þ*er*vpon faldellas wet i*n* gleire of eiren, & binde hi*m* faste w*i*th boondis þat his arme ne mowe not out of þe ioynct aȝen, & so he schal be bounde*n* .x. daies. And if þer come ony enpostym or icching, þan þou muste vnbinde hi*m* aȝen, & do awei þe icching ouþ*er* þe enpostym, and binde it aȝen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat [2] þou ne were not at þe firste bigy*n*nyng, þan þou muste make þe pa*tient* a baþ of malue & bismalue, fenigree, lynseed. & wh*a*nne he is wel baþid i*n* þis baþ, þan anoynte hi*m* wiþ an oynement laxatif. & i*n* þis maner he muste be baþid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan bringe þe boon i*n*to his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat þou come at þe firste bigy*n*nyng, wh*a*nne a boon is out of þe ioynct, þan þou schalt not baþe þe lyme i*n* hoot wat*er* i*n* no maner.

Another way of reduction.

2. The shoulder is drawn upwards with a towel, and the arm is drawn downwards.

[1 lf. 238]

3. Reduction is effected in a similar way.

When the bone is reduced,

leave the arm bandaged through 10 days.

[2 lf. 238, bk.]

If you come some time after the accident, the patient must take a bath before reduction is tried.

¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct liȝtlich at þe elbowe,[1] & liȝtly it wole be brouȝt into his ioynct aȝen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding of his arme,[2] & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward — —,[3] & þan lete a strong man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre go out of þe ioynct. & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ oile of rosis, & lete þe ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi .ij. [4]hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leueþ ony greet þing, lete it be til anoþer tyme. & þan anoynte þin hond & presse it in aȝen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis eaas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouȝt into þe ioinct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct aȝen.

Nota.

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.

Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,

of a dislocation backwards.

[4 lf. 239]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recchinge ligaturis,[5] as it was neeessarie for þe grete meuyng of þe hond. þis place wole liȝtly out of þe ioinct, & liȝtli it wole come yn aȝen. ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in aȝen. ¶ In þe firste bigynnyng take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct as it is aforeseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforseid in opere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioynete, it is but liȝt for to putte it [6]in aȝen / In þe same maner þou schalt binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforseid in opere placis / Ther ben

Raceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced.

[6 lf. 239, bk.]

[1] The Original says just the contrary: difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryȝt dredefnl, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drawe with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, onþer wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

[2] Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

[5] Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

manic men þat wha*n*ne a ma*n*nis lyme is out of ioynct, þei wolen sette þe lyme i*n* hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come into his ioinct azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir i*n* þe firste bigy*n*nyng makiþ þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawiþ þerto manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do i*n* þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wiþ oile of ro*sis*, & sette hi*m* into his ioinct anoo*n*, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þere come noon enpostym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste bigy*n*nyng, & þe place bicome hard, þan make hi*m* a fome*n*tacio*un* wiþ a decocciou*n* of þi*n*gis þat makiþ moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Do not put the limb in hot water at the first beginning.

Of the haunche out of his place.[1]

¶ v°. c°.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[2 lf. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[3 lf. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

AL þe coniuncciou*n* of þe haunche is tofore seid i*n* þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioi*n*ct i*n* .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & bacward; & sumtyme it comeþ of causis wiþi*n*neforþ, & sumtyme of causis wi*th*outforþ / [2] Of causis wiþi*n*neforþ: as humours of lo*n*ge tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioinctis / Ther is i*n* þis place a greet box, & conteineþ a greet place, þat beriþ al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet super*f*luite of humo*ur*is, & wha*n*ne þer falliþ manic super*f*luitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & tra*u*eiliþ, þan humours rotiþ i*n* þat place, & þe ligat*ur*is recchiþ along, & i*n* þis maner vertebru*m* goiþ out of his ioinct / And þis caas i*n* diuers men haþ diuers causis / ffor su*m*men hauc þ a box i*n* her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliȝtliche out of þe ioinct / And su*m*me*n* ne hauc þ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liȝtliche out of þe ioincte, & it wole liȝtli into þe ioinct azen, & þan it wole liȝtly out azen. ¶ Of causis wiþoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of su*m* oþer þing þat makiþ vertebru*m* goon out of þe ioynct wiþ violence. ¶ This is þe signe wha*n*ne it is out of ioyncte ynward: wha*n*ne þou myȝt fele þe poynt of þe boon i*n* his flank, & his feet [3] & his knee turned outward, & þe paci*en*t schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goiþ out of þe ioynct forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche schorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grou*n*de, but oonly his toos. ¶ If

[1] Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it be out of þe ioynct baeward, þa*n* his hele wole wexe long, & his toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þi*ng* of his foot to grou[*n*]de, but his hele // and backwards.

4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boonys i*n*to her ioynct azen, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for þis place: take a lo*ng* schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe pa*tient* leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest, & þat o*per* 8 bihinde his rig, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe pa*tient* schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hipe aboue his knee, & þan þe leg softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng be i*n* þe hipe aboue 12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich & harde w*ith*oute ony pluching.[1] & þan þou schalt wiþ þi*n* hondis putte þe boon i*n*to his ioyncte. & wha*n*ne þe [2]boon is y*n*ne, þan bidde he*m* lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere. 16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þat þe boon is i*n* his ioynct. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe ioynct, it is a signe þat þe boon is not i*n* his ioynct / wha*n*ne þe boon is i*n* his ioinct, binde faste his hipe, & lete þe pa*tient* ligge 20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast pleiner teching.[3]

The best way of reduction. A towel put under the thigh is fixed to the wall (to effect counter-extension), whilst extension of the leg is made.

[1 lf. 241]

¶ Dislocacio*un* of þis place þat comeþ of causis wiþi*n*neforþ, it is ful hard for to bringe it i*n* azen. & þouz þe boo*n* be bronzt i*n* 24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þe*r*fore þe*r* is no cure þe*r*of, but avoide his bodi, & make hi*m* cauterijs as it is aforseid i*n* þe chapitre of cauterijs.

There is no radical cure for a dislocation arising from internal causes.

¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & su*m*tyme þe 28 round boon þat is þe*r*vpon goiþ out of his place / Signys wha*n*ne a ma*n*nes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynowz. & if þe round boon be out of his place, þou mizte liztlich knowe it. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt bringe a ma*n*nes knee i*n*to his ioynct azen / Lete 32 a strong man holde faste his hipe, and [4]anoþe*r* man his leg. & þou schalt wiþ þin houdis p*re*sse faste þe boon i*n*to his p*ro*pre place. & if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, & þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out 36 of his place, sette þe boon i*n*to his place, & þan binde faste wiþ boondis, & þan binde his leg faste vp to his hipe bi an ho*ur*, & þa*n*

Sometimes occurs a Dislocation of the knee-joint, and a Dislocation of the Patella. Reduction is accomplished by pressing the boon into its place.

[4 lf. 241, bk.]

In the same way reduce a dislocated patella.

[1] Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

[3] Add. 26.106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his leg' fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe rounde boon þat' it' ne moue not' fro his propre place, & in þat' maner lete it' sitte, for it' wole bicome fast' anoon.

Reduction of Dislocation of the Ankle-Joint.

¶ If' þe ioynct' of' a mannes foot' be out' of' ioyncte or his toos, 4 þou schalt' do þe cure in þe same maner as it' is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fyngris.[1] ¶ Þorugh þe help of' god wiþout' which is no þing' fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þat' schal be clepid þe antidotarie of' this book. // 8

[2 lf. 242]

IN þe fifþe tretis clepid þe antidotarie of' þis book, I þinke to [2]putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat' falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But' I ne mai not' sette alle, for

No man could enumerate all the medicines, only God knows them.

þer is no man þat' can telle alle þe noumbre of' medicyns but' oonli 12 god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat' I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem of' wise doctouris & of' philosophoris, & alle þei ben aproued /

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuis // 16

¶ co jo

Repercussives are used for hot apostemas, especially if they are in a noble limb.

REpercussiuis bifalliþ for hoot' apostymes, & principal whanne it' bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, ouþir in þe brayn, onþir in þe heed, ouþir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It' schal alwei be þin 20 entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt' worche wiþ repercussiuis, þou muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat' ben sett' in þe iij. tretis in þe general chapitre of' enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif' is seid in .ij. maners: 24 as large & streit'[3] / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of' coold herbis for to aquenche hoot' [4]causis. Streit' is seid, whanne it' putt' awei þe mater & is not' swiþe coold // Of' repercussiuis þere ben manie degrees of' cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat' a man 28 mai not' fele his lyme, & þan it' is clepid stupefactiua[5] / & þis þou schalt' vse whanne þer is þing' þat' greueþ more þan þe mater. ¶ Whanne þou ne dredist' not' hoot' qualite oonli, but' þou dredist' þe mater, þan þou schalt' vse medicyns þat' ben coold & drie, þat' 32 þei mowe temperre þe complexioun of' þe lyme, & wiþ þe vertu of' stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,[6] & þese ben propirli clepid repercussiuis / Whanne þou hast' entencioun oonly for to make

Repercussives are understood in a wider or stricter sense.

[4 lf. 242, bk.]

Some are very cold, and are called Stupefactiua.

Some are less cold but dry:

Stiptica.

[1] MS. repeats this sentence. [3] *large & streit.* See p. 305, note 1.

[5] Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "*Stupefactyve.* That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take awaye felynge."

[6] Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.

coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not stiptica / But wh*an*ne þou wolt make ony rep*er*cussiuis, it is necessarie þat þei be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat be*n* coold & rep*er*cussiuis, su*m*me ben simple & su*m*me ben compound / Of simple medicyns, su*m*me ben of herbis, & su*m*me ben of trees, & su*m*me ben leeues, & su*m*me ben rotis, & su*m*me ben seedis, & su*m*me ben flouris, & su*m*me ben greynes[1] of minerals, & su*m*me ben watris, & su*m*me ben oilis. And su*m*me þ*er*of I wole sette i*n* þese bokis þat be*n* [2]greeth i*n* vss toward us / And þ*er*e be*n* medicyns coold & moist þat þou miȝt vse for to ate*m*p*er*e þe complexiou*n* of lymes þat ben distemp[*er*]id i*n* hete & drienes. ¶ Malua, capillus[3] veneris, psillium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,[4] Rapa, cucurbita, Melones, Citruli,[5] Semen malue, se*min*is iiij^or^. frigido*rum*, Semper viua, lactuca ortulana[6] ¶ Iusquiam*us*, Mandragora, Papauere, argentu*m* viuu*m*, f. & h. i*n* iiij.[7] ¶ **Oilis** coold & moist: Oleum violaciu*m*, Oleu*m* nenupharinu*m*,[8] Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleu*m* mirtinu*m*. Istis[9] medicinis potest vti qu*um* intendis infrigidare sine exp*u*lcio*n*e ut d*ictu*m est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist vse wh*an*ne þou entendist for to make coold wiþouten expulciou*n* of þe mater as it is forseid. ¶ Medicyns þat be*n* symple coold & drie, þat ben elepid verry rep*er*cussiuis ben þese / **Solatru*m***, crassula maior & minor,[10] virga pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,[11] Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semp*er* viua, Corigiola,[12] Sang*ui*naria, Edera, Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. **De g*ra*nis**

Repercussive medicines are either simple or compound.

The simple medicines.

[2 lf. 243]

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines that are cold and dry, or Repercussives in a strict sense.

[1] The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

[3] MS. *capillis.*

[4] Add. 15,236, fol. 4 *b.*: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g^e^ mercurie. a^e^ scandany.*"

[5] Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

[6] Halle. *Table*, p. 57: "Lactuca satiua, or Hortensis, þat is gardin letuce."

[7] frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

[8] *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nītufar, nīnūfar (Littré). Nymphæa alba. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 *b.*: "*Nenufar .i. flos vngule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

[9] MS. *istius.*

[10] Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline* vel *orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stonecrop.*"

[11] Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 *b.*: *Epatica .G. coper .A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik* vel *coper .A. liurewort.*"

[12] Add. 15,236, lf. 3 *b.*: *Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Coringiole.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[2 lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructib*us*.** Ordeu*m*, Silligo[1]; auena. [2]Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora mat*ura*, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.[3] ¶ **De florib*us* folijs & corticib*us*** / Balaustie cortices, 4
Cortices mali granata, Cortices arbor*um* stipticorum[4]; Rosa, Nenufar, fflos spine, ffolia piror*um*, pomor*um*, sorbor*um*, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.[5] ¶ **De linis.** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralib*us* & lutis** / Saphir*us*, Bolus arme- 8
nicus, Marmor, Alabaustru*m*,[6] Cathinia, Litargiru*m*, munda[7] ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimoniu*m*. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum[8] omne, cimolea,[9] Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gu*m*ma p*ru*ni,[10] cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opiu*m*. **De olijs.** Oleum 12
rosa*rum*, & eueri oile þ*at*ᵗ is maad of ᵗ coold þingis & drie, of ᵗ flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof ᵗ / Also watir of ᵗ rosis, & wat*er* þ*at*ᵗ is maad of ᵗ alle þ*in*gis þ*at*ᵗ ben coold & drie, and distillid[11] / If ᵗ þou be
A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines. sentᵗ aft*er* *in*to a cu*n*tre, þ*er*e be*n* noon apotecarijs, þan if ᵗ þou canstᵗ 16
make þese medicyns þ*at*ᵗ ben forseid & medicyns þ*at*ᵗ schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝtᵗ fulfille þi p*ur*pos[12] & do þi cure. Þou
[13 lf. 244] miȝtᵗ make [13]of ᵗ þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciou*n*s, pultes, encatismata. Of ᵗ þese names manie 20
men tak*ith* oon for anoþ*er*, & þ*er*fore I wole telle þe diu*er*site of ᵗ
vnguentum. alle. ¶ **vnguentu*m*** is maad of ᵗ .iiij. ʒ of ᵗ oile & ʒ ß. of ᵗ wex in wint*er*, & ʒ j. in somer, & ʒ j. of ᵗ þ*in*gis þ*at*ᵗ þin oynement ᵗ schal
Epithima. serue þ*er*fore.[14] and oynementis schule*n* be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** 24
is þis, wh*an*ne þ*in*gis ben sotilli poudrid & temp*er*id wiþ wat*er* of ᵗ ro*ses*, ouþ*er* wiþ vinegre, ouþ*er* iuys of ᵗ ony herbe, so þ*at*ᵗ itᵗ be temp*er*id i*n* þe þiknes of ᵗ hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ
Cataplasma. ly*n*nen clooþ, ouþ*er* wiþ leþ*er*, þis is clepid epithimu*m*. ¶ **Cata-** 28
plasma is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþ*er* raw, & al þe substaunce of ᵗ þe herbe þ*er*wiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & itᵗ ne schal notᵗ be hard ne neische, butᵗ *in* þe meene, & itᵗ schal be leid

[1] *Silligo*, a kind of very white wheat.

[2] MS. *Spata*, *Spleta*. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "*spaca*"; ed. 1498, fol, 207, "*spica*." The preceding words show that *spica* is the correct reading.

[3] *Capreoli vitis*, the tendrils of vine. [4] MS. *stipticoris*.

[5] MS. *panne*. [6] med. Lat. alabaustrum.

[7] Lat.: murga uel merda. [8] MS. *litum*.

[9] *cimolea*, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found. [10] MS. *Summa pruna*.

[11] Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

[12] Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

[14] et ʒ .i. puluerís rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastrum** is seide, wh*an*ne manie diuers þ*in*gis, as poudris and gu*m*mis & fatnessis, wex, talow, & oile be*n* soden togidere til þei bicome hard, & maad i*n* gobetis & kept. & þan it schal be maad abrood vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe place þat þou wolt [1]haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,[2] oxirocroceum,[3] & o*per*e manie. ¶ Pultes[4] & cathaplasma be*n* al oon, but *pro*pirli pultes ben clepid, wh*an*ne þ*er* is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, wh*an*ne herbis be*n* medlid þ*er*wiþ. ¶ Embroca[tio] is seid, wh*an*ne a ma*n*nes lyme is putt i*n* hoot watir, wiþouten ony decocciou*n* of herbis þ*er*on, & þat hoot watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiȝ, & so it schal be do longe, & þis is clepid embrocare.[5] ¶ Encatisma is seid i*n* .ij. maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & su*m*tyme for a particuler [baþ],[6] anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

Emplastru*m*. [1 lf. 214, bk.] Pultes. Cataplasma. Embroca. Encatisma.

¶ Medicyns þat ben compound togidere: Wh*an*ne þou entendist for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt take iuys of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei ro*sis* oon p*ar*t, of vinegre half a p*ar*t, & medle he*m* togidere. If þat þou wolt þat it worche more stro*n*gely, þan do þ*er*to argilla*m* rubea*m* / til it be as þicke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou must take kepe, þou schalt vse þ*in*gis þat ben able for a ma*n*nes complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold þ*in*gis to a place, [6]& ne hast not þi p*ur*pos þ*er*of, þan þ*o*u schalt leeue þe coold medicyns, & make medicyns þat be*n* competent to þe same complexiou*n* / for sum medicyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite of complexiou*n*. & al þis techi*n*g þou miȝt fynde generalich i*n* þe tretis of enpostyms. / ffor if peter be of complexiou*n* hoot & moist, & poulis complexiou*n* be coold & drie, oon rep*er*cussiou*n* wole not serue he*m* boþe i*n* oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi medicyns; for þis is al dai p*re*ued bi exp*er*iment as þou miȝt se ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good rep*er*cussif for coold mater,

2. Compound Medicines. Choose the medicines [6 leaf 215] according to the patient's constitution. Some medicine is good for Peter and bad for Paul. Nota.

[2] See p. 125, note 3.

[3] *oxirocroceum*. Lat. oxiracroceum. Matth. Sylv.: "oxirocroceum, i. emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco."

[4] *pultes*, Lat. plur. of puls, tis. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "*be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barly.*" Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. pultaceo.

[5] *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocatio*n*, whe*n* we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

[6] Lat.: dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio.

& vmbilicus veneris is coold *in* þe same degre, & ȝitt' it' is not' so good repercussif' for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

This is a good medicyn rep*er*cussif' *þere* *þat'* *þer* is miche discracia hoot' & litil mater / ℞, sandal*i* albi, spodij, acacie, an*a* .ʒ. ij, 4
.℞. camphore .ʒ. j., opij .ʒ. ß, distemp*ere* hem wiþ þe iuys of' a coold
℞. h*er*be, & oile of' violet', & a litil vinegre / **Item anoþ*er*.** ℞, ossa sicca & *com*busta, cerusam,[1] amidu*m*, an*a* .ʒ. ij., temp*ere* hem as it' is forseid / It*em* anoþ*er* *þat'* is comoun *þat* is recordid *in* manie 8
.℞. placis. ℞, boli armenici .℥ j., olei ros. ℥ iij., aceti .℥ j., *þat* is *þat*
[2 lf. 245, bk.] [2]defensif' *þat'* is aforeseid *in* manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcio*n*. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, *þat'* ben forseid *in* doloribus iuncturaru*m* of' hoot' cause ben good. *þer*fore ioyne he*m* wiþ þese. 12

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

¶ Herof' þou muste be war, *þat'* wh*an*ne *þou* leist' rep*er*cussiuis to a place, *þere* *þat'* *þer* is miche mater, & if' þe place bicome ledi, þan *þou* schalt' contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but' do *þer*to iuys of' coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makiþ coold & resolueþ. 16
¶ If' þer be no ledi colour but' þe mater is greet', & nyle not' be doon awei wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, wh*an*ne þe flux of' humours is acesid, þan bigi*n*ne for to medle *þer*wiþ resolutiuis; ȝitt' þou schalt' contynue wiþ rep*er*cussiuis *þere* *þat'* *þer* is greet' akynge / an ensaumple 20

An example how to use repercussives.

hereof' / If' þe akinge be *in* a m*an*nes knee, þan þou schalt' first' leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt' not' leie it' riȝt' vpon his knee, but' a litil aboue his knee, *þat'* þe ende of' þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste p*ar*ti of' þe akynge. 24

Cold matter must be removed with hot and dry medicine.

¶ Coold mater as it' is aforseid, ne schal not be putt' awei wiþ rep*er*cussiuis, but' wiþ medicyns *þat'* be*n* hoot' and [3]drie *in* temp*ere*, *þat'* *þei* mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexiou*n*, & [3 lf. 246]
wiþ her dreines comforte þe vertu of' þe lyme, & defende *þat* *þer* 28
come no more mater to þe lyme, & if' þe mater be litil, putte it' awei, & if' þou ne wolt' not' putte it' awei, defende þe place *þat'* *þer* falle nomore mater *þer*to[4] / And alle þese be*n* hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthiu*m*, squinantu*m*, abrotanu*m*, poliu*m*, sticados, 32
centaurea maior & minor,[5] aristologia longa & ro*tunda*, mauribiu*m*,[6]

[1] MS. *ceresaris.* Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

[4] Lat.: "materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari."

[5] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. Centaurea maior = narca vel gentiana. *Ibid.*

[6] *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. biowryt vel hune.*" Wr.

mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof þou shalt take kepe: manie men seien, & it wole liȝtly be leeued of lewid men, & þat is yuel þing for to leie a repercussif to ony mater for to driue it awei, but it is bettir to drawe out þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if þer comeþ out þerof miche quitture, þei seien þat a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuis & þe enpostym be defendid, þan if þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat it was defaute in þe leche, for if þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif [1] & þe quitture drawe out, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt wite þis certeynli: if þou takist kepe of þe .x. consideraciouns þat ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat ben competent þerfore / It is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng of þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for if þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt awei, & þe man schal not be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

¶ co ijo3

WHanne oon strong, or[2] manye feble of .x. causis lettiþ repercussiuis, ouþir whanne þou hast a repercussif, & þou ne miȝt not putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it is aforseid of repercussiuis, in þe same maner I seie of resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akynge ouþir greet swellynge, þou schalt leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent purgaciou. ¶ fforwhi, as it is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet akynge comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, þan it mote [4] nedis come of repleccioun of þe bodi. & þan if þou leist þerto resolutiuis, þat wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif, þat ne it is hoot / & eueri þing þat is hoot, is attractif / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst þou schalt lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif, ouþir boþe two, as þou seest þat it wole spede / And þan þou schalt bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat been hoot & sotil[5] // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune.*" Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prassium idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

[2] MS. *of.* [3] MS. omits.

[5] Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "Chirurgia parva."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

ynge.[1] ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ viscosite / þerfore it falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist resolutiuis vpon miche mater & greet, it makiþ þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindely hete wiþinne is comfortid wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat medicyns resolutiuis in þis caas makiþ þe mater maturatif / Also if þou leist medicyn maturatif vpon litil mater & sotil it hetiþ þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþinne is comfortid þerwiþ, & so

[2 lf. 247, bk.]

þe heete multiplieþ, & in þis maner þe heete [2]mai be resolued. 8

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

¶ The maner of resoluing: Make a decoccioun of herbis of whiche þow wolt make þi medicyn, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it bicome reed, & þan leie þervpon þe medicyn resolutif. ¶ Herof 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a medycyn resolutif resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicomeþ hard, & þan þe more þat þou art aboute to resolue, þe more it wole bicome hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto mollificatiuis, & þan þou 16 schalt go to resolutiuis, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it be al resolued. ¶ Of medicyns resolutiuis, summe ben simple: as, camomilla, Mellilotum, paritaria, malua siluestris & alia,[3] volibilis,[4] fumus terre, caulis, anetum, vrtica, enula, borago, sambucus, kebu- 20 lus, valeriana, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in tempere,[5] wiþ sotilnes.

Simple resolvent medicines.

¶ De seminibus / Semina caulium, aneti, vrtice, malue. Semina diuretica: cantabrum,[6] omne,[7] farina ordei, orobi, & fabe / Pinguede

[8 lf. 248]

porci & anseri, anatis, galline, aquile. ¶ De gummis / [8]Mastix, 24 olibanum, opoponac, asa fetida, mirra, serapinum, armonicum, bdellium, galbanum, & alle maner sotil gummis: lapdanum, ysopus humida, terbentina, cera, swetynge of bestis, & buttir. ¶ Medicyns resolutif & compound of þe forseid, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28 nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makiþ hoot & accessiþ akynge / ℞, florum camomille recencium, fenigreci seminis ana .℥ ij., leie hem in xx .℥ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it stonde to þe summe .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

℞

[1] Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

[3] The Prints read "siue *alba*." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *altea*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem."

[4] MS. volibilis. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall.* [*corrigi*]*ole, angl. berebinde.*"

[5] Lat. temperate calida.

[6] *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose brene.*" [7] Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

þin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it[1] were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigree & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel *in* a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
4 vndir, & loke *þat* þe wat*er* ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot wat*er* / & wh*an*ne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for þin vss / And *in* þis maner þou mizt make oile of ro*sis*, if þou hast nede, & oile of absinthiu*m*, & of rue, & of o*þer* mo *þat* þou hast
8 nede of // **Anoþ*er* oile** *þat* is resolutif / ℞, olei antiqui .lī. j., se*min*is aneti nouit*er* in vmbra siccati .℥ j., putte hi*m* *in* a viol fourti daies to þe su*m*ne, ou*þer* sette it *in* hoot wat*er* [2]as it is aforseid. Another resolving oil. ℞ [2 lf. 218, bk.]

¶ Anoþ*er* oile *þat* is resoluyng and makiþ hoot & accessiþ akynge, Oil of lilies.
12 & is good for to achaufe a ma*n*nys reynes & a wom*m*ans maris, & it is clepid oliu*m* de lilio compositu*m* / ℞, olij antiqui .℥. xx., flor*um* liliorum albor*um*, & kutte awei þ*er*of al *þat* is ȝelowe, cassilaginis,[3] costi, masticis, carpobalsami an*a* .℥ i.,[4] cinamo*ni* an*a* .℥ ß., putte alle ℞
16 þese *in* a glasen vessel, & lete he*m* stonde *in* þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do awey þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for þin vss. ¶ Anoþ*er* oile *þat* is clepid oliu*m* mastice, & is swiþe resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for Nota
20 akynge of a mannes stomac / ℞, oli*um* oliua*rum* medioceri*ter* matu-rar*um* .lī. ij., masticis .℥. vj., boile he*m* togidere *in* a double vessel, til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for þin vss. ¶ This ℞
þou muste knowe, *þat* wh*an*ne þou wolt make *þat*, *þat* schal be
24 rep*er*cussif & coold & comfortyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile *þat* is not to ripe, as for to make oliu*m* ro*sis*, oliu*m* mirtinu*m*, & o*þer*e mo. If þou wolt make oile *þat* schal be resoluyng, ou*þer* persyng, þan þou schalt chese oile *þat* is ripe / And *in* þis ma*ner* Nota
28 *þ*ou schalt [5]knowe, whe*þer* þe oile be ripe or no. Oile *þat* is not ripe, wole be grene, & *þat* is ripe wole be whit, & *þat* *þat* is *in* þe meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis *þat* ben resolutif ben maad *in* þis ma*ner*: of iiij .℥ of[6] oile of camo- [5 lf. 219] How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil.
32 mille ou*þer* of su*m* o*þer* oile & ℥ j. of wex in somer, & ℥ ß. in winter, & ℥ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of camom*ille*. ¶ Ysopus hu*m*ida is a good oynement resolutif, & is maad *in* þis maner: / **Take** of þe smal wolle *þat* is bitwixe þe ℞ Ysopus humeda.
36 schepis leggis, & take *þ*erof a good quantite, & take as miche wat*er*,

[1] *if it*, above line.

[3] Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.

[4] *carpobalsamum*, "balsames bloed." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).

[6] MS. *of* twice.

& lete þe wolle ligge *in* þe watir adai & anyȝt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole he*m*, & wh*an*ne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a clooþ, & do þe wat*er* þ*er*of into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meeue it wiþ a spature til it bicome þicke as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon Rasis þat resolueþ scrophulas & glandulas, & makiþ carbunculis maturatif & is swiþe comoun / ℞, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias q*uin*q*ue*, litargiri .ʒ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge *in* a mort*er* & do þ*er*to [1]þi*n* oile & medle he*m* togidere, & þan do he*m* *in* a vessel & boile he*m* togidere, & meeue he*m* algatis wiþ a spature, & do þ*er*to de muscillagine se*min*is lini, fenigreci, an*a* .ʒ ij, & muscillagi*n*ne*m* malue visci .ʒ j, & þan boile he*m* til þei bicome þicke, & make þ*er*of gobetis & kepe he*m* to þi*n* vss, & if þou wolt worche þ*er*wiþ, take þ*er*of as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþ*er* or vpon ly*n*nen clooþ, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Ioh*ann*is Mesue is better þan þis / & worchiþ more strongli. Þat þou schalt finde *in* paruo *com*pendio. ¶ Also anoþ*er* plastre þat is resolutif / ℞, maluar*um* siluestru*m*, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ℳ. j., boile he*m* *in* watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe he*m*, & take of þe same watir .iij. p*ar*tis, & of su*m* oile þ*a*t is resolutif oon p*ar*ti, se*min*is caulium, aneti p*ar*tem ß., furfuris, farine ordei, an*a* p*ar*tem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þ*er*of as it were pultes, & þan do þ*er*to of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, su*m*del hoot as it is aforseid, & seke medici*n*s resolut*iu*is [2]þat ben *in* pa*r*uo *com*pendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

A resolving plaster.

℞

[1 lf. 249, bk.]

Iohannes Mesue

℞

Another resolving plaster.

[2 lf. 250]

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

c° iij° 3

If resolving and repercussive medicines have no effect, then bring the matter to maturation.

Maturing Simples:

WHanne þou hast resolued mani daies ouþ*er* leid þ*er*to repercussiuis, & ne is nouȝt worth, saue þe mater wole bicome maturatif, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne][4] for to leie þ*er*to maturat*iu*is / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatif is hoot *in* te*mpe*re wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour to goon out, but it holdiþ hi*m* wiþi*n*ne til it be maturid; & ben þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

[3] MS. om.

[4] Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, *incipe* maturare."

acuti,[1] baucie[2] Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat' ben forseid *in* þe nexte chapitre tofore, if' þat' þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ **This is a good maturatif' compound of' manie þingis þat' makiþ hoot' mater maturatif'.** ℞, folio*rum* malue nigre, i*d est* comou*n* malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radicis malue visci an*a*. ♋ .j., seþe he*m* alle *in* watir & stampe he*m*, & þan do þ*er*to malua visci, & þan take of' þe same watir a pound [3] & freisch grese .℥ ij., & sotil mele of' whete .℥ iij., & sotil mele of' lynseed & of' fenigrec an*a* .℥ j. & ß., medle hem togidere & boile he*m* p*er*fiȝtli, & make þ*er*of' cataplasma, & þan do þ*er*to of' þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grou*n*de, & medle he*m* togidere, & loke þ*at*' þei be not' to þicke / for it' schal be algate þin entencio*un*, þ*at*' cataplasma, þ*at*' schal be resolutif' or maturatif' or mundificatif', ne schal not' be hard ; for if' it' be hard, it' wole make akynge to þe lyme, & þan it' wole anoie more þan p*ro*fite. ¶ Ite*m*, if' þou dredist' woodnes of' mater, þan þou ne schalt' do þ*er*to no fenigrec ; for it' is swiþe hoot', & þ*er*wiþ þe mater wole be as it' were a feuere.[4] & þ*er*fore I counseile þee þ*at*' þou do no fenigrec þerto / If' þou dredist', þ*at*' þe mat*er* is swiþe hoot' / if' þ*er* be wiþ þ*at*' mat*er* ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of' þe forseid cataplasma .ij. p*ar*tis, fermenti de frumento[5] p*ar*tem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ : þ*at*' þis is good for mater þ*at*' is medlid wiþ hoot' cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif' / Take hony & butt*er* an*a*, & medle he*m* w*ith* mele til þei be as þicke as it' were pultes. [6] ¶ Ite*m* embrocac*iou*n*s* i*n* resolucio*un*s & maturacio*un*, & is good for akynge of' wo*un*dis of' co*n*cussio*un* i*n* þe heed / concussio*un* is as miche to seie as smiten wiþ a staf' / ℞, olij ℥ ij., cere al*be* ℥ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie an*a*. ℥ ß., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, an*a* ℥ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere i*n* a morter, & þa*n* do þ*er*to poudre of' comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þ*at*' wole make an enpostym maturatif' : ℞, folio*rum* malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusq*ui*ami an*a* ℥ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan p*re*sse hem & staumpe he*m* wel, & þan medle he*m* wiþ ℥ iij of' þe same watir þ*at*' þei weren soden y*n*ne, & medle þ*er*wiþ ℥ j. of' grese, þ*at*' it' be cold, & barli mele þ*at*' suffisiþ / In þis maner þou schalt' make a coold

A compound maturing medicine.

℞

[3 lf. 250, bk.]

Nota. Caution against Fennil, if there is any danger, that the matter may get inflamed.

Isaac.

℞

[6 lf. 251]

℞

℞

[1] MS. *lappa acuta.*
[2] *baucia. Alphita*, p. 21 : "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."
[4] Lat. : et cito per illum inflammatur materia.
[5] MS. *fermento.*

℞ mater maturatif / ℞, cepe unum[1] album, item de capitibus allij,
& sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wiþ þe .iij. part of
buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an
enplastre. & do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of eiren soden hard, & ℥ j. off 4
malui visci preparati, & ℥ ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of
℞ greet mater & coold & hard. ℞, bdellij, serapini ana ℥ j. & ß, &
[2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / [2]& stampe hem wel, & do þerto .℥ j. of
terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile 8
not, & do þerto oile of lilie .℥ ij., & make it picke wiþ sutil mele
℞ of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item ℥ ß. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to
poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ .lī. ß of hony ; þis wole be
a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12
Basilicum maius. acum,[3] & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,[4] & þus manie men
Auicen. preisiþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, &
Haly þe abbot; & it makiþ enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for
Basilicum minus. woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicome hard / ℞, cere, resine, picis, 16
cepi vaccini,[5] ana, & olij quod suffisiþ / Summen in stide of cepum,
þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of
bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, &
A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas. olium; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20
antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as
I haue aforseid in his place / ℞, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero
℞ .vj., vue passe[6] de corinthio .℥ j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis
grana .xij., salis nitri .ʒ .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile 24
[7 lf. 252] ℥ ij., aceti [7]℥ j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle to-
gidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe
hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of hony is good þerfore &
of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum 28
℞ maturatif / ℞, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum
ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more
strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as mychе as þe haluendel of
oon. & if þou wolt make it more strong, for to make it maturatif, 32
& for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris doung & of hennis
ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

[1] MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 *b*.: "cepe unum album."

[3] MS. *cetrafarozatum*.

[4] Phillips : "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

[5] Lat. : sepi vaccini.

[6] *vue passe*, dried grapes, *i. e.* raisins.

vj. part of oon & ß.; þese .iij. maturatiuis suffisiþ þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat is ful profitable for þee / whanne þou wolt leie ony maturatif to a place: first þou schalt make embrocam[1] to þe lyme
4 wiþ a decocciou*n* of herbis maturat*iu*is, soden *in* watir, & wiþ þat hoot watir þou schalt baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bicome reed, & þa*n* leie þe*r*on a plastre of maturatiuis þat ben forseid oon þe*r*of, for þou hast sufficiently ynowe, & loke þat þe enplastre be not to hard, [2]& [[2] lf. 252, bk.]
8 as hoot as he mai suffre it þou schalt leie it þe*r*to / ¶ Thou hast herd sufficientli of maturatiuis, ynow it is nede to speke of mundificat*iu*is. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif, it is nede for to leie þe*r*to mundificatiuis as it is forseid in þe worchinge of
12 enpostyms /

¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

MUndificatu*m* is as miche to seie as cle*n*syng, & doiþ awei hore. & eueri þi*n*g þat doiþ awei hore *in* woundis & sup*er*-
16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif / A mundificatif may be seid *in* .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat is take*n* bi þe mouþ, ouþ*er* þat is putt *in* bineþe wiþ a clisteric, ouþ*er* wiþ a pessarie[3] for to make clene a ma*n*nes lymes wiþi*n*ne. & of þis kinde ben sirupis maad of
20 seedis þat makiþ clene a ma*n*nes lymes, & weies of þe vrine / And þer ben su*m*me medicyns þat makiþ clene a ma*n*nes blood as cassia fistula, manna,[4] tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mu*n*dificatiuis, & herof is not e*n*te*n*cioun in þis caas /
24 ¶ Anoþir. I wole speke of medicyns mundificatif in cirurgie.[5] & þat is pr*o*pirli seid a medicyn, þat doiþ awei greet sup*er*fluite ouþ*er* gret greuance [6]of quitture, ouþ*er* remeueþ[7] awei harde crustis [[6] lf. 253] *in* woundis, onþir *in* vleeribus, & makiþ clene wou*n*dis & vleera of
28 þat sup*er*fluite / ffor as it is seid *in* anoþ*er* place: In eueri wounde þat is holow, þat is as miche to seie as whanne it haþ lost substaunce of fleisch þe*r*on, þan bi skille[8] þ*er* schulde be engendrid þe*r*on .ij. sup*er*fluites, þat oon schal be greet, & þat oþer schal be
32 sotil. & þese wollen lette þe souding of a wounde, & þei wolen

A mundificative medicine, may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.

[1] Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "*Embroca* id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

[3] Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "*Pessarie.* Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice." [4] MS. *manci.*

[5] Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

[7] MS. *remeued.* [8] Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ Þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of driynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wolliþ speke herafter; 4
þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wiþouten regeneracioun of quitture. Þis medicyn makiþ clene, & drieþ sumwhat, as water & hony 8
whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwiþ, ouþir woundis in which agendriþ miche quitture; & sumtyme it is more strong, as
[1 lf. 253, bk.] whanne þer beþ medlid þerwiþ poudris corosiuis þat han litil [1] vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12
seid for to take awey yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

Therfore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. siþis rehersid liketh a 16
man.[2] ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quitture whanne þer is noon concussioun, neiþer of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akynge þerwiþ / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20
consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akynge, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akynge & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24
chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis
℞ þat ben freisch in which is good quitture. ℞, mellis rosati colati ℥. iij., farine subtillissime ordei ℥ j., & do þerto a litil water, &
[3 lf. 254] seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt [3] meue it 28
wiþ a spature, & þan make it abrood vpon a clooþ, & leie it vpon
Nota þe wounde / This makiþ clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil terbentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32
bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ **Anoþir mundificatif þat makiþ clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe**
℞ **heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac** / ℞, mellis rosati 36
colati ℥ j., olij ℥ ß., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoþer mundificatif

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine.

In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

[2] Add. 26,106. fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

þat makiþ woundis maturatif þat ben to-swolle & ben not to brennyng hoot, but sumwhat toward cooldnes / ℞, mellis rosati colati ℞
.lī. ß., farine fenigreci .℥ ij., farine ordei .℥ j. ¶ **Anoþer mundifi-**
4 **catif for vlcera þat beþ newe in enpostyms** / Take ȝelkis of eiren ℞
rawe, & medle þerwiþ whete mele as miche as wole suffise; þis wole make clene & do awei þe akynge, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also anoþer mundificatif þat wole make maturatif þerwiþ, & is good**
8 **whanne a man wole** [1] kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is [1 lf. 254, bk.]
a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle maner pustulis þat ben venymous aftir þe tyme þat þei ben opened, & it is good for to make clene, vlcera þat ben oold / ℞ mellis albi ℞
12 boni .lī. ß., farine subtilissime tritici .℥ iij, medle hem togidere in a panne. & whanne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of apium .℥ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent fier, & boile hem til þei bicome as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of þe
16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If it so be þat þou dredist of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus þat ben oold, & if þou wolt make a mundificatif þerfore, þan in þe stide of apium do absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ Anoþer mundificatif in vlceribus
20 þat ben rotid, & whanne þer engendriþ þervpon greet rotyng / ℞, ℞
mellis lī .j., farine siliginis .℥ iiij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum, mirre, ana ℥ j., succi absinthij lī .j., medle hem alle togidere, & poudre þingis þat schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be
24 perfiȝtli boilid; & whanne þou doist hem adoun of þe fier, þan do þerto of terbentyn .℥ iiij., [2] & medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese [2 lf. 255]
mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloop of lynnen, & leid vpon vlcus for to make it clene aftir þe tyme þat þei beþ
28 waische, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ A poudre þat is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch þat is engendrid in oold vlceribus, & wiþoute greet violence of fretyng / ℞, succi affo- ℞
dillorum .℥ vj., calcis viue .℥ ij., auripigmenti .℥ j., medle hem
32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of august, & on nyȝtis do it out of þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt do til it be drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe schadowe. & þou schalt kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place þat be not to
36 drie, ne to moist. & whanne þou hast nede þerto, grinde oon þerof, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a good mundificatif for vlcera is vnguentum viride, þat is maad of oon part of vert de grece, & .ij. vngm viride
partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ Also a good oynement for
40 to make clene, vlcera þat ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vleera, & is clepid vng*uentu*m veneris, ou*þer* vng*uentum* ap*ostolo*-
[1 lf. 255, bk.] *rum*. & it is good for to remeue awei fleisch *in* vle*er*is / [1]℞, eere
℞ albe, rasine albe, armoniaci an*a* .ʒ. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani
gu*m*mosi an*a* .ʒ. vj., galbani, mirre an*a* .ʒ. iiij., litargiri .ʒ. viij., 4
opoponac, floris eris an*a*. ʒ. iij.; þe gu*m*mys schulen be maad neische
i*n* vinegre, & dissolued wiþ fier þat be lent, & þan do þ*er*to wex
dissolued wiþ lī. ij. of oile in somer, & iiij. *in* wi*nter*. & wh*a*nne
þei ben molten, do þ*er*to þi poudris, & make þ*er*of an oynement. 8
¶ Anoþ*er* oynement elensiþ wel nerues & drawiþ out þe quitture, &
Mundificatiuum de rasina. it is clepid mundificat*iuum* rasina[2] / ℞, rasine, mellis, terbentyn
an*a* .lī. ß., mirre, sarcocolle, fárine fenigreci, se*min*is lini an*a* ℥ j.,
dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þ*er*to þi poudris, 12
& make þ*er*of pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat ben
more strong, & ben clepid medicine cauteriʒa*n*tes, for to make clene
vlcera þat be*n* yuel i*n* ne*r*uo*us* place. & þe teching herof þou
schalt fynde i*n* þe chapitre de medic*in*is facientib*us* op*us* caute*r*ij. 16

Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidat*iu*is.

Restorative Medicines

[3 lf. 256]

are differently named by different authors.

IT þinkiþ bi þe maner of speche þat þe medicyns þat ben seid
in þis chapitre ben al oon, but þ*er* is miche difference bi-
twixe / ffor [3]of su*m*men alle þei ben clepid consolidat*iu*is. 20
But aggregatiue & consolidatiue be*n* al oo*n* / And regenera-
tiue, & incarnatiue, & facie*n*tes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; &
þ*er* is greet dif'ference bitwixe he*m* þat ben forseid & þese / And
sigillatiuis, & cicatriʒatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24
alle þese names be*n* not p*r*opirli take of alle auctouris / But oon
he*r*of is taken for anoþ*er* ofte tyme / But for to seie þe soþe, a
Auicen. medicyn þat is clepid aggregatu*m* or conglutinatu*m*, & A. in diuers
places take*th* diuersli þese names of medicyns: & I suppose þat it 28
were for defaute of men þat translatid þe seience / But for to seie
þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & haþ
gu*m*mosite *in* hi*m*; & wh*a*nne it is leid to þe lyme, it wole resolue
wiþ his drienes. It d*rie*þ vp superfluite of moistnes þat is bitwixe 32
þe lippis of a wounde, wiþ a litil ligature or sewing it soudiþ
Auicen. togidere.[4] & A. clepiþ þis *in*carnati*uam*, & su*m*men elepen it con-
solidatiua*m*, & ben þese / Sang*uis* drac*onis*, calx, thus masc*u*lin*um*

[2] Lat.: mundificatiuum de rasina.

[4] Add. 26.106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccat humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,[1] arnaglossa, eaulis, folia eipressi, folia vitis [2]albe, nux recens, folia aeetose, puluis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & oþere manie þat ben vnknowen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun**: ℞, frankeneense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, ealeis viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij. lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoþer poudre þat is good for þis entencioun; but in plaeis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to leie þerto þingis to regendre fleiseh, þat we wolliþ speke þerof soone heraftir. ℞, olibani lueidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof poudre. ¶ **Anoþer comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude woundis**: ℞, sarcoeolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustic ana partem vnum,[3] olibani lueidi partem ß, & make herof poudre.

¶ Medieyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto congile blood, þat eomeþ to þe place wiþ temperc drienes, & makiþ þerof [4]fleiseh, & makiþ elenc superfluite þat wexiþ þeron. & þis is in diuers maner / ffor whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe plaee is drie, & þer is miche quitture in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swiþe drijng medieyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quitture & his bodi be moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.[5] ¶ Medieyns þat ben liȝt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quitture yn moist bodies: ℞, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordei, fenigreci. And þese beþ sumwhat more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum, aloes, mirra, pix greea, farina fabarum; & more strong þat þou schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse bityng, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. eausis diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei: as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stiptieam, for whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same

Consolidative medicines. [2 lf. 256, bk.] Simples. Compound Consolidatives. ℞ ℞ Medicines which promote the regeneration of flesh. [4 lf. 257] Simple incarnative medicines, mild medicines, ℞ strong medicines. Nota Substances are burnt for medical use for several reasons. .1.

[1] MS. *pullme.* [3] *sic.*

[5] Lat.: si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

[[1] lf. 257, bk.] man*er* [1]vitriolu*m* lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drienes is not' lost' /
.2. The .ij. is þis, þat' his greet' *su*bstaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
.3. cancri *id est* crabbis þat' ben brent' / The .iij. cause is þis, þat' it' mowe
gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of' eiren, þat' be*n* 4
.4. brent' þat' me mai make lyme of' he*m* / The .iiij. is, þat' it' mowe be
aparailid for to be groun*de*n, as seta sericu*m*[2] / & among' alle
medicyns þat' ben for þe herte þat' mowe be groun*de*, ben þe beste
as gold & siluir[3] / In þis maner þou schalt' diȝte hem for to grinde / 8
Seþe he*m* i*n* sulfur i*n* leed, þat' þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
.5. The .v. cause is þis, þat' þe wickidnes þerof' mowe be take awei:
as of' scorpiou*n*s þat' ben brent', þat' we mowe vse he*m* in medicyns,
.6. þat' ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is þis, þat' his ve*r*tu mowe be 12
maad þe more, as sq*ui*llis wh*an*ne þei ben brent', her vertu wole be
.7. þe more / The .vij. cause is þis, þat' his ve*r*tu mowe be take fro
hi*m*: as psillium, wh*an*ne it' is brent' / his ve*r*tu wole be þe lasse //
In what' maner þou schalt' go fro medicy*n* to medicy*n*, þou hast' it' 16
[[4] lf. 258] pleynerli ynowȝ i*n* þe first' tretis, [4]boþe simple medicyns & also
compound / þe whiche þou miȝt' vse as þou seest' best' to done / If'
The best incarnative medicine is thus. þou wolt' regendre fleisch in a deep put' þat' vlcus is, take poudre
of' thuris, wh*an*ne vlcus is[5] maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þ*er*of', for 20
it' wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it' is moost'
One uses its bark, its gum; competent' to consolidatif' medicyns.[6] & his gu*m*mosite þat' is clepid
thus masc*u*lin*um* ou*þer* olibanu*m*, & þat' is best' for medicyns þat' is
it is further used as a powder, conglutinatif', þat' be*n* forseid i*n* þe bigy*n*nyng' of' þis chapitre. & 24
Minutu*m* thuris þe poudre of' hi*m*, wh*an*ne it' is maad smal & fallip adou*n* of' a
sarce, is clepid minutu*m* thuris, & þat' is best' to regendre fleisch.

Three kinds of consolidating medicines. Bi þis maner distincciou*n* þou schalt' gadere þe difference of' þre
medicyns þat' ben i*n* þis chapitre, & of' su*m*men þei ben clepid alle 28
.1. Conglutinatives, [consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof' þat' is seid conglutinatif', þat'
makiþ þe lippis of' a wou*n*de soude togidere / The .ij. it' drieþ &
.2. Incarnatives, makiþ clene, & helpiþ blood for to turne i*n*to fleisch / The .iij. it'
.3. remedies producing cicatrization. drieþ wiþ ve*r*tu þat' is clepid stiptica, þat' makiþ hard fleisch to 32
arise i*n* þe stide of' sky*n*. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to rege*n*d*r*e
[[7] lf. 258, bk.] fleisch, þat' is clepid litargiru*m* nutritum, þat' is norischid [7]as it' is

[2] Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

[3] Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquuntur cum sulphure . . .

[5] *is*, above line.

[6] Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex. & illud est siccius omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

aforseid i*n* þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engendriþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci an*a*, fiat puluis. Þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it makiþ for to haue a good sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** / ℞, litargiri nutriti ℥ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,[1] an*a* ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement. ¶ **Anoþer poudre,** ℞, radiceem malui visei, þat summen clepen[2] sanaticlam,[3] & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it & make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ oþere þingis / **Also** take of þe forseid poudre ℥ .j, of thus þat be smal ℥ ß, vernicis,[4] aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci an*a* ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile & wex; & do ℥ j. of þe poudre in ℥ .iiij. of oile, & ℥ ß. of wex. [5]And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste leie þerou oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makiþ þe poudre peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ out quitture** / ℞, oliȝ lī. ß, resine ℥ .j, cere ℥ .ß, minute thuris, fenigreci an*a* ℥ .ß, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also anoþer oynement þat is good for þis entencioun.** ℞, consolide maioris & minoris, einoglosse, piloeelle,[6] plantaginis maioris & minoris, an*a*. ꝏ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbriei, lī. ß; kutte alle þes smale,[7] & leie hem in lī. j & ß. of oile of oliue, & lete hem ligge þere .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad elene *id est* molten & colid, pieis naualis lī. ß, pieis greee ℥ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, terbentine, mastieis communis minuti, an*a* ℥. ß. In þis maner

An incarnative powder and ointment.

℞ ☞ ℞ ℞ ℞ ℞ ℞ [5 lf. 259]

[1] *colofonie*, see *Alphita*, p. 42.

[2] *clepen*, above line.

[3] *sanaticla*. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle. i. wudemerch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."

[4] Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares, in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."

[6] Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.

[7] MS. *þesmale*.

℞ þou schalt make hem: Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, &
[1 lf. 259, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis[1]solue hem in caziola.[2] &
wh*an*ne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do
þerto alle þe o*pe*re þat ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4
hem for þin vss. ¶ If þou leist þis oynement in þe botme of a
wounde, it wole drawe out þe quitture & aswage þe akynge, & it
wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste
knowe, þat þouz I sette pr*o*porcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex, 8
neþeles þou schalt pr*o*porcioun þi þi*n*gis more or lasse as þou seest
þat þou hast nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quitture, &
be in a drie place, þan þou schalt do þerto þe more poudre, & þe
lasse oile & wex / If it so be þat a wounde be in a moist place, 12
þan þou schalt do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile &
of þe wex, as it is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua,
& sigillati*ua* ben al oon; & þat ben medicyns þat drieþ þe moisture
of a wounde, & makiþ a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makiþ a 16
strong keueryng for[3] to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ,
[4 lf. 260] þat in vlcera þat is holow, þat þere [4]ne schal neuere be no skyn
engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe sp*er*mis
of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe p*ar*tijs of a man þat ben 20
engendrid oonli of sp*er*me, & þei be kutt awei, þei schulen neuere
wexe azen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of
sp*er*me, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis; & þerfor & þer be
ony gobet kutt awei of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24
azen, as .A. seiþ, & it is sooþ / But in þis caas medicynes mowe
helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of
skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward[5] / ¶ Simple
medicyns þat ben in þis caas makyng skyn vpon a soor þat is 28
clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta,
ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi,
psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terestris adusti,
cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32
comedentis ossa siccatum,[6] aristologia longa & rotunda combuste, es
[8 lf. 260, bk.] vstum lauatum, & ius medicina[7] / [8]Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Auicen

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

Auicen

It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

[2] Matth. Sylv.: "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* [3] MS. *fro.*

[5] Lat.: "medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

[6] MS. *sucatum.*

[7] Lat.: "et omnis (abbr. *oīs*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."

conglutiuas wiþ a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns *in* þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnynge for to proporcioune hem, & summe þerof þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem *in* powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as oleum rosaceum & mirtinum. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse *in* somer *in* woundis & in vlceribus þat ben hote, & *in* euery place þere þe skyn is aweie *in* a mannes bodi, of riding, eiþir of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis, þat is maad *in* þis maner: ℞, oli*j* ro. ℥ iiij, cere ℥ ß, in þese regiouns þat ben hoot &[1] *in* somer ℥ .ij, & aftir þe regioun þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ℥ .j, camphore ʒ .j, þe whitis of ij. eggis. Þou schalt make it *in* þis maner / ffirst þou schalt grinde .ij almaun[2]dis blaunchid & stampid *in* a morter, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe morter, & make clene þe morter; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be / Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makiþ coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ **This is a good poudre for þis entencioun** / ℞, aloes, balaustiarum, cathinie argenti, eris vsti triti,[3] & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat is more strong þan þis** / ℞, aloes, cucurmie, vermium terestrium combustorum, balaustiarum, mirre, gallarum. ¶ **A good oynement** / ℞, fecem argenti ʒ .xxx, merdam ferri, cymolie ana ʒ .vij [4]& ß, cathinie argenti, ceruse, litargiri, plumbi vsti ana ʒ .v, argille rubie ʒ .x; medle hem alle wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ **Also anoþer þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele** / ℞, adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a clooþ / oli*j* lī. j & ß,

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

vngm Rasis

℞

Direction how to make it.

[2 lf. 261]

Two powders.

℞

℞

[4 lf. 261, bk.]

Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien.

℞

[1] MS. om. &. [3] MS. *certis*.

litargiri lī. ß, calamenti[1] ℥ .iiij ; make it in þis maner : grinde
℞ litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also : ℞, spatulam id est quæ fit de
palma viridi, & þe middil þerof aboue kutt smal to gobetis, & do it 4
in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half of þe oþere medicyns medle þis
medicyn ; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ **Anoþir**
A regenerative ointment prescribed by Johannes Mesue.
medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &
soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8
℞ **þis maner** / ℞, pistatiue & resine,[2] panni albi vetusti ℥ .j, opopo-
nacum ℥ .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini ℥ .x, litargiri, aloes,
sarcocolle, mirre, ana ℥ .ß, make herof an oynement ; þis wole
[3 lf. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat ben [3]wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
medicyn is as good as þat, þat is sett in þe chapitre de vlceribus
virulentis ; þis makiþ clene, & drieþ & regendriþ fleisch, þerfore
ioyne þat & þis togidere. ¶ **Also an oynement þat Maister**
℞ **william someris[4] made** / ℞, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16
Ointment of resin.
acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &
anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it wel in þin hondis, & kepe it, &
if it be in somer do þerto half so miche of whit wex ; make þis
abrood vpon a lynnen clooþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
℞ drie wel. ¶ **Item** : ℞, olij ro. ℥ .iij, rasine ℥ .ij, cere ℥ j, nucis
cipreissi, cucurmie ana ℥ .j, make herof a gobet & kepe it ; þis
Direction for the application of consolidative and regenerative medicines.
is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching
of þese medicyns, þat of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat a wounde is maad, & þou
hast brouȝt þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ
sum oþer maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat is clepid
conglutinatif, vpon þe place þat is sewid, & leie þerof ynowȝ ; & 28
[5 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen clooþ [5]wet in whitis of eiren, & þan leie
þerto defensiuis & oþere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be
soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat is clepid regenera-
tiuum, þat schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32
regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt leie consolidatiuis, or þe
fleisch wexe to hiȝe ; & but if þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
for to frete awei þat fleisch þat is woxe to hiȝe, & þat is double
traueile & also vnkunnyng of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

[1] *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips : "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

[2] Lat. : rasure vel pistature.

[4] I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Practica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I., p. 710.

where & wh*an*ne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & i*n* þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns woliþ worche as þei schulde /

¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

Corosinis & cauteriȝatiuis we vsiþ in eirurgie i*n* manie causis, & of corosiuis su*m*me ben feble, & su*m*me ben strong, & su*m*me beþ more stronger / These be*n* feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,[1] vitriolu*m* adustu*m*, & þese haueþ moost vertu i*n* moist bodies. ¶ More strong be*n* þes: vitriolu*m* not combustu*m*, tapsia, pecs milui,[2] [3] apiu*m* rampnum,[4] cortex viticelle[5] / And þese be*n* more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstu*m*, arsenicu*m*, sulphur. ¶ Also þese be*n* more strong: ealx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicu*m* sublimatu*m*, & watir maad of þese þi*n*gis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse wh*an*ne þon wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þ*er*to. ¶ Of medici*n*s þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt *com*pou*n*d manie. ¶ **A poudre þat wiþouten ony greuau*n*ce & liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch** / ℞, viride eris, hermodactulor*um*, aristologia rotu*n*da, make þ*er*of poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & wh*an*ne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiþer ly*n*nen clooþ, & wete it *with* þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp & dou*n*, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende sup*er*fluite of fleisch[6] in .ij. maners / In oon maner sup*er*fluite of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wou*n*de, & þis is [7]clepid sup*er*fluite of good fleisch / In an oþ*er* maner we clepiþ sup*er*fluite of fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quitture, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, wh*an*ne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony þing til it be p*er*fitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quitture wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþ*er* medicyn, but a simple corosif[8] þat fretiþ wiþouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ **In þe .ij.** cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

Simple caustics.

Mild caustics.

Strong caustics.

[3 lf. 263]

Compound caustics.

℞

Innocent excrescences.

[7 lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant excrescences.

Each requires its own treatment.

[1] Lat.: gentiana. [2] MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."

[4] *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus* uncus.—Dufr.

[5] Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wiþwinde." [6] *fleisch* in margin.

[8] MS. *corosiþ*.

A corrosive powder of caustic lime and arsenic.

℞ aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatinis. ¶ **Anoþir good poudre þat remeueþ awei superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons**[1] / ℞, calcis viue ℥. ij, arsenici ℥. ij., succi affodillorum radicis ℥. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat is clepid vnguentum viride & is a liȝt corrosif, & makiþ [2]superfluite of rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner. ℞, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vng^m viride [2 lf. 264]

℞

An ointment to cleanse ulcers.

℞ ¶ **Also anoþer vnguentum viride þat makiþ clene & regendriþ good fleisch in vlceribus þat ben olde, & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch wiþouten violence** / ℞, celidoyne radicis, alleluya,[3] folia centrum[4] galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ℳ. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wiþ .lī. j. of schepis talowe & .lī. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ℥. ij., colofonie ℥. j., masticis, olibani, ana ℥. ß., viridis eris ℥. j. þat schal be do in in þe ende of þe boilyng, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement.

An ointment to be applied on fistulous and cancerous sores.

℞ ¶ **If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre** / ℞, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ℥ ß., auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof poudre, & distempere hem wiþ strong vinegre & lacte anabulle[5] til it be as þicke as it were hony, & sette it to þe sunne [6]in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wiþ lent fier, and whanne it is drie poudre it aȝen, & tempere wiþ þe forseid licour, & þan drie it aȝen, & þus þou schalt do .iij. siþis ouþir .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it in a drie place. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat drieþ a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of fleisch** / ℞, radices brionie ℥. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ℥. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, affodillorum radicis .ʒ j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistice agrestis, buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana ℥. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat licour þat comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme

[6 lf. 264, bk.]

A corrosive powder.

℞

[1] *crustons*, O.Fr. *crouston*.

[3] *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *wodesour*."

[4] *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli* gallitricum . . . nux muscata." Wild Sage. Cancerweed.

[5] *Matth. Sylv.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

poudrid sotilli lī. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at þe laste do
þerto auripigmenti ℥. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof
gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto,
4 grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou
wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anoþir poudre of þe same kynde.** ℞, arsenici ℞
rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis[1] de pluma, gallarum nouarum
ana, grynde hem with vinegre [2] & medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem [2 lf. 265]
8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong medicyn þat is as strong as oni fier, & Nota bene. Escharotics, medicines as strong as fire.
vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etiþ it, & oon herof is
riȝtt strong & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. ℞, limature ferri, ℞
vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ℥., ij. salis armoniaci, A corrosive sublimate.
12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui[3] extincti cum saliua, & tempere hem
wiþ vinegre, ouþir wiþ watir, ouþir wiþ strong lye, & þe lie wole be
þe bettir if it be maad wiþ bene scelis, & þan drie it & putte it in
alutel[4] & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou Nota The process of sublimation.
16 haue a strong vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier,
ouþir a vessel of erþe wel glasid wiþinne, & loke þat þe couercle
þerof & þe bodi be wel closyng, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wiþ
good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make liȝt fier half adai, & þan
20 do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene it, & þat, þat leueþ in
þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe
couercle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ þou
muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole [5] brenne as strongli as fier, [5 lf. 265, bk.]
24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. Þis poudre wole cor-
rumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar
sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre
of it & distempere it wiþ þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be
28 in þickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye
tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole
worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke A burning ointment made of quick-lime.
fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it
32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leeue þere vlcus. Manie men vsiþ þis in
diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite
of fleisch. ℞, **quik lyme** as miche as þou wolt, & resolue it in ℞

[1] *Halle Table*, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = Alumen Liquidum.
[3] a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—
fllos eris ana ℥ j ſß
calsis viue G ℥
argenti viu. ℥ j. [in margin.]
[4] Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strong' lie þat' is aforseid, and make þerof' þe maner of' an oynement', & wh*an*ne it' is maad, al freisch leie it' þ*er*to, for þe more freisch þat' it' is þe bettir it' is / In þis maner þou schalt' make þe lie / ffille a vessel ful of' askis of' bene scelis, & þe .iij. p*art*' of' q*ui*k 4
[1 lf. 266] lyme, & poudre he*m* alle togidere & leie he*m* in [1]a vessel & p*r*esse he*m* þat' þei bicome fast' togid*er*e, & make a put' *in* þe middil aboue, in þe same put' caste hoot' watir seþing', & þis vessel schal be holowe þat' þe lie mowe passe þoruȝ. & vndir þis vessel sette anoþir 8
℞ vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ **Also anoþir good ruptorie** / ℞,
A caustic ointment made of quick-lime and arsenic. calcis viue, p*ar*tem vnam, arsenici, p*ar*tem ß., poudre hem & medle hem wiþ sope & hony, & su*m*men doiþ þ*er*to lī .ß. of' tartre / Also mel anacardi is swiþe strong' for to make vlcera. & if' it be do to 12
oþ*er*e medicyns it' worchiþ þe more strongli / In þis maner þou schalt' do / wh*an*ne þou ne miȝt' fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde anacardos greet' & leie he*m* *in* vinegre adai & anyȝt', & þan boile he*m* wel, & þ*an* p*r*esse out' þe licour þ*er*of', & þat', þ*at*' goiþ out' 16
þerof' is a medicyn þat' wole make vlcera. / Ouþir take anacardos & seþe he*m* *in* hoot' tenaclis þat' smiþis vsen, & streyne he*m*, & þer
Cantarides. wole distille þ*er*of' hony. ¶ **Also** take þe wo*m*bis of' cantarides & grinde he*m* wiþ leueyne & leie he*m* in what' place þou wolt' & it' 20
wole make vlcera / But' herof' þou muste be war þat' *in* what' place
[2 lf. 266, bk.] The application of cantharides excites strangury. dubiu*m* Treatment. þou settist' cantarides þer [2]wole come greet' bre*n*nynge of' vrine, & su*m*tyme it' makiþ so greet' bre*n*nyng' þat' a mannes vrine is stoppid
þerwiþ. & þe cure þerof' is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet', watir- 24
cressen i*n* watir, & lete þe pa*tient* sitte þ*er*on anoon to þe nauele, & herwiþ þe akyng' schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine liȝtlich / & herof' þou schalt' take hede, þat' in what' place of a mannes bodi þou makist' a cauterie, anoon þ*er*aftir þou schalt' leie 28
a mitigatif' þat' schal make þe cruste falle awei þat' was brent', & þou ne schalt' in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, but' þou schalt' leie þ*er*to a mitigatif', & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli.
¶ Medicyns þ*at*' wole*n* make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32
aki*n*g', ben þese: ȝelkis of' eiren wiþ oile of' ro*sis*, þ*at*' is þe beste of' alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeues & grinde wiþ grese, ouþ*er* wiþ buttir & leie þ*er*vpon / Also grese ouþir buttir is good þerfore. ¶ Also pultes maad of' mele, oile & watir, ben good þer- 36
fore & accessiþ wel þe akynge & makiþ þe crustis falle. ¶ Also
[3 lf. 267] wiþ þe cauterie of' an hoot' iren þou miȝt' [3]do awei deed fleisch, ouþir wiþ oon of' þe medicyns þat' ben forseid. ¶ Also if' þou wolt'

[3] MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis caas / In feble men & *in* a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns, & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne noon arterie wiþ þi cauterie, ne wiþ þi medicyns þat makiþ cauterijs. ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor in euery medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and great blood-vessels must not be cauterized.

Use caustics according to the patient's strength.

Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

WE vsiþ þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.[1] Oon cause is þis, wha*n*ne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard, for þan oonli wiþ resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole resolue, & þat oþir part wole bicome hard, & þan þou muste make mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, wh*an*ne ony lyme is to-broke ouþir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt [2]yn aȝen, þe place wole be hard, & þe pa*tient* mai not meue þ*er*wiþ, þan þou muste do[3] þ*er*to mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iij. cause is þis, wh*an*ne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct lo*n*ge tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen, þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is, wh*an*ne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makiþ al þe lyme foul, as wh*an*ne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þa*n* þou muste breke þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his p*ro*pre place as it schulde be / In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þ*at* ben mollificatiuis, as ben þese: camomille, mellilotu*m*, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner fatnes, & marowe, & manie gu*m*mis, & eu*er*y medicy*n* þat is hoot & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composiciou*n* for þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. p*ar*tis, wex p*ar*tem .j., & make þ*er*of an oynement, and anoynte þ*er*wiþ a lyme þat þou wolt resolue þe mater þat is þ*er*on / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, & make þe poris [4]open to resolucio*n* // **Anoþ*er* þat is more strong** / R, radicis malua visci ℥ .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte hem i*n* a mort*er* wiþ ℥ .iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis vessel of glas i*n* hoot boilyng watir, & þ*er*e it schal stonde til þe iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wiþ þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe place, & leie þ*er*vpon lanam succidam i*d est* wolle vnwaischen. & þis

.1. Emollients are used if other medicines prove insufficient, to relieve tension ensuing

.2. the fracture [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3. or dislocation of a limb,

.4. and if re-breaking becomes necessary.

An ointment of oil and wax.

R

[4 lf. 268]

A stronger emollient.

R

[1] Lat.: Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

[3] *do*, above line.

Directions for fomentation.

þou schalt wite, þat wh*a*me þou wolt make þese oynementis, first þou shalt make a fomentaciou*n* wiþ hoot watir til þe place bicome reed. & if þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat is clepid lapis molaris, & make hi*m* hoot *in* þe fier, ouþir a greet gobet of iren, & do it in strong vineg*re*. & þe place of a ma*n*nes lyme þat is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat comeþ out of þe vinegre, & þan anoynte hi*m* aftirward / Þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollificatif, & þer ben .iij. maners.[1] Þe .j. maner is þis : þou schalt make a decocciou*n* of flouris of camomille, mellilote, fenigree, semen lini, & rootis of malua visci, soden *in* wat*er*. & þ*o*u schalt [2]make a fomentaciou*n* to þe lyme *in* þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of þese oynemen*t*is / ℞, auxu*n*gie porci antique s*ine* sale ℥ .iij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline an*a* ℥ .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole he*m*, & do þ*er*to ℥. j. of wex. Þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if þou wolt make it for to be good for drienes of a ma*n*nes brest, & good for men þat ben etik, do þ*er*to ℥ .j of clene dragag*an*ti, & þan it wole be a good oynement restoratif. ¶ **Anoþir oyneme*n*t.** ℞, adipis porci antique s*ine* sale ℥ .iiij., fecis oli*j* de semine lini, bdellij an*a* ℥ .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanac*is*, armo*n*iaci, an*a* ℥ .j. putte þe gu*m*mys *in* wiju for to te*mper*e, & wh*a*me þei ben temp*er*id, putte he*m* *in* a morte*r*, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenau*nt*, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togid*er*e. ¶ **Also an oynement mollificatif & comfortiþ** / ℞, auxu*n*gie porci ℥ .iij., pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, an*a* ℥ .j. oli*s* co*mmun*is antiq*ui* ℥ .iiij. farine fenigreci, se*min*is lini, an*a* ℥ .j., bdellij, oppoponacis, masticis, thuris ℥ .ß., te*mper*e þe gu*m*mis [3]*in* wiju, & þan aftirward medle he*m* wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole hem. & of þese þingis þat schule*n* be grou*n*de make poudre þ*er*of, & medle it þerwiþ & kepe it for þin vss. & wh*a*me þou hast maad a stuwe as it is aforseid ouþir a fomentaciou*n*, þan anoynte hi*m* bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentu*m* Rasis. & I it haue ofte p*reu*ed ener-more goddis g*rac*e goinge tofore wiþout which grace is no þing fulendid ne no sijknes do awei / But eu*er*i good ende & eueri good dede al it comeþ of þe miȝt of god / And þe help of god I bad in þe firste bigy*n*nyng of þe book / ffor of goddis grace I am þat I am, & goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of þis book was fulfillid þe noumbre of ȝeeris from goddis beyng .M.CC. nonagesimo sexto. & god of his swete g*rac*e ne wernede me not to make

An ointment to be applied on consumptive people.

[2 lf. 268, bk.]

[3 lf. 269]

vngm Ras*is*

God has helped me throughout my work, and this book has been finished in 1296.

[1] Lat.: modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

an ende of[1] þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þ*er*to / wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis book & alle werkis þat[1] ben wrouȝt[1] i*n* his name / [1] And god for his miche g*r*a*c*e lete he*m* wel worche þat[1] takiþ þis werk on honde, & bringe erro*ur*is out[1] of[1] her herte, & bringe he*m* & us to a good ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit[1] of[1] his seruauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of[1] my synnes, god it[1] graunte et[1] imp*er*at[1] per omnia secula seculoru*m* AmeN.

God may bless this book and those who use it.

[1 If. 269, bk.]

Explicit[1].

Here endiþ þe book of lankfr*a*nk.[2]

[2] In red ink, but nearly erased.

Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of lankfrank // [leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]
The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
The .iij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]
The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kutting / [p. 50]
The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postyms, & yuel discrasiam / [p. 54]
The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauyschyng hound, or oþir venymous beest / [p. 59]
12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowiþ brekyng of boonys / [p. 62]
The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
The .x. c°. is of dietyng of woundid men / [p. 72]
16 The .xj. c°. is of vlceris / [p. 77]
The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]
The .xiij. c°. is of canceris / [p. 92]
The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdynge of woundis & vlceris / [p. 97]
20
The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o summe .x. c°.

The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]
24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben conteyned in hem / [p. 141] [leaf 270, bk.]
The .iij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
28
The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in hem / [p. 161]

The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium. [p. 166]
The .vij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia / [p. 167] 4
The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie / [p. 171]
The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe ȝerde and placis aboute it [p. 173]
The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & anothamie / [p. 176] 8

The .iij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

The .i. c°. is of makyng of fair heer / [p. 178]
The .ij. c°. is of lesynge of heer, or calowȝnes or allopucie [p. 180] 12
The .iij. c° is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis / [p. 188]
[leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of cloop and fraclis, & gowte roset & ȝolowisch / [p. 189]
The .v. c°. is of smirtyng, scabbe, & icche / [p. 191] 16
The. vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine / [p. 193]
The vij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre / [p. 196]
The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene / [p. 199]

The .iij bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapitris. 20

The .i. c°. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis / [p. 201]
The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermouns þerof / [p. 204]
The .iij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe hedis of children / [p. 214] 24
The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris [p. 216]
The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe neeke, and of þe þrote / [p. 217]
The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtitilico / [p. 222] 28
The .vij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia / [p. 223]
The .viij. c°. folowiþ of þe same tofore / [p. 224]
The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak / [p. 226] 32
The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.[1] grindis. [p. 226]
The .xj. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche & ¶ of þe core / [p. 227] 36
The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe ȝerde & ballok / [p. 228]
[leaf 271, bk.] The .xiij. c°. is of scrophulis & glandulis / [p. 229]

[1] = *i. e.*

The .xiiij. c°. is of þe cure of þe cane*re* no*n* vlce*r*at / [p. 231]
The .xv. c°. is of Boos / [p. 232]
The .xvj. c°. is of akyng of ioynetis. [p. 233]
4 The .xvij. c°. is of akynge of haunchis / [p. 238]
The .xviij. c°. is of dieti*ng* of me*n* þatt han ache in ioynetis / [p. 240]

The .iij. boke and the .iij. doctri*n*, and co*n*teyneþ xix.
8 chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of egrenes of yȝen / [p. 240]
The .ii. c°. is of egrenes of eeris / [p. 254]
The .iij. is of disese of þe nose / [p. 258]
12 The .iiij. c°. is of disese of þe mouþ / [p. 260]
The .v. c°. is of disese of þe brest, and off swellyng and greetnes / [1]and coagulasion off milke.[1] [p. 265]
The .vj. c°. is of ruptorie of þe siphac, and releuynge aȝen /
16 [p. 268]
The .vij. c°. is of hernia of þe ballokis / [p. 269]
The .viij. c°. is of þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]
The .ix. c°. is of an yuel þat is elepid he*r*mofrodito[2]
20 The .x. c°. is of watri dropesies. [p. 281]
The .xj. c°. is of canc*er* & vlcers i*n* þe ȝerde / [p. 287]
The .xij. c°. is of emoroidis & fistula i*n* ano. [p. 289]
The xiij. c°. is of canerene & mormals / [p. 293]
24 The .xiiij. c°. is of vngribus and stykynge in handis and feet. [leaf 272]
¶ Elephancia / [p. 295]
The .xv. c°. is of wertis i*n* handis & feet / [p. 296]
The .xvj. c°. is of blood letyng / [p. 298]
28 The .xvij. is of kutti*ng* & bledi*ng*, & wate*r* lechis [p. 303]
The .xviij. is of cauterie large & of streite / [p. 305]

The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /

The firste doctrine of þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //

32 The .i. c°. is of brekyng of boonis, or o. word
¶ for al / [p. 312]
The .ij. c°. is of breki*ng* of þe face / [p. 314]
The .iij. c°. is of brekyng of þe forkid boo*n* of þe brest / [p. 316]
36 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng of boonys off þe spaudis // [p. 317]
The .v. c°. is of brekynge of þe adiutorie / [p. 318]

[1—1] added in different hand.
[2] This chapter is omitted: see note 8 on p. 281.

The vj. c°. is of brekyng of boonys þat is clepid coxe // [p. 320]
The .vii. c°. is of brusyng or brekyng of tendir boonys wiþ þe .viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4 chapitris //

[leaf 272, bk.] The first c°. is of failyng of place, word for al /
The .ij. c°. is of failyng of place of þe chekeboon / 8
Tho .iij. c°. is of lacking of place of þe spaude /[1]
The .iiij. c°. is of goyng out of þe ioynt of þe schuldre / [p. 323]
The .v. c°. is of þe coniunccioun of þe goyng out of þe haunche / [p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12 chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of repercussiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 328]
The .ij. c°. is of þe maner of resolutif medicins / [p. 333]
The .iij. c°. is of þe iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 336] 16
The .iiij. c°. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof // [p. 339]
The .v. c°. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]
The .vj. c°. is of corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]
The .vij. c°. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng medicyns // [p. 353] 20

[1] These three chapters are left out.

Riley Dunn & Wilson Ltd
EXPERT CONSERVATORS & BOOKBINDERS